

# New

# Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

# Hello! 2

الصف الثالث الإعدادى الفصل الدراسي الأول



0  
2  
4

دار غزة  
للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع



QR CODES  
Listen to Vocabulary  
& Texts

3<sup>rd</sup>  
Prep.  
First Term

التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقي - الفجالة - القاهرة. ت : 25919165  
للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والاقتراحات - الإدارة : تليفون : 25880102



## Writing Skills



يحتوي هذا الجزء على

كيفية الإجابة عن أسئلة الورقة الامتحانية مع تدريبات عليها.

- Dialogue
  - Read and complete the text with words from the list
  - Reading Comprehension
  - Writing (biography - short story - review)
- تجميع لأهم بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes الواردة في المنهج.

## 1 Dialogue

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال المحادثة

المحادثة هي السؤال الأول في الامتحان وهي عبارة عن حوار نكملة باتباع الآتي:

- 1- نقرأ الموقف المذكور قبل المحادثة جيداً لفهم عما يدور الحوار.
- 2- نقرأ المحادثة كلها قبل الحل لفهم الموضوع ومحاولة تخمين الأسئلة والإجابات.
- 3- التركيز في زمن المحادثة والحرص على استخدام نفس زمن الإجابة في تكوين السؤال.
- 4- نقرأ الحوار مرة أخرى بعد الحل للتأكد من أن الإجابات مناسبة.

كيفية تكوين السؤال لاستخدامه في حل سؤال المحادثة

ينقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

1 السؤال بـ (هل.....؟) Yes / No question

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على Yes, / No تبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه «هل.....؟»  
- الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تعد جزءاً أساسياً في تكوين أي سؤال

## Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة

am - is - are - was - were -  
have - has - had

## Modals الأفعال الناقصة

can - could - shall - should - will -  
would - may - might - must

إذا كان بالجملة أي من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة نستخدمه غالباً في السؤال كالتالي:

- A Is he a doctor?  
B Yes, he is.
- A Can you speak English?  
B Yes, I can speak English.

إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم do / does / did حسب زمن الجملة.

- A Does she speak English?  
B Yes, she speaks English.
- A Do you play tennis?  
B Yes, I play tennis.

- A Did she go to school?  
B Yes, she went to school.

## Writing Skills

## 2 السؤال بكلمة استفهام Wh-question

- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام في السؤال عن (مكان - زمان - شخص - شيء - طريقة ....)

- A Where does your father work?  
B My father works in a bank.

## Question words?

What	ما / ماذا (للأشياء)	What colour	ما لون
Where	أين (للمكان)	What age	ما عمر
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للمن)	How long	ما المدة / كم طول
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	كم يزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن / كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة / للحال)	How often	كم مرة
What class	ما الصف الدراسي	How far	كم يبعد للمسافة
What time	ما الوقت		



1 إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أي فعل أساسي آخر باستخدام do - does - did

- A What do they have?  
B They have a nice car.
- A When does he have lunch?  
B He has lunch at 2 o'clock.

2 إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أي فعل أساسي آخر.

- A When does mum do her housework?  
B Mum does her housework in the morning.

- A When did Sama do her homework?  
B Sama did her homework an hour ago.

3 عند السؤال عن الفاعل: نحذف الفاعل ونضع كلمة الاستفهام (Who / What) مكانه ونكمل الجملة:

- A Who helps you?  
B Ahmed helps me.
- A What caused the accident?  
B A horse caused the accident.



أما عندما نسال عن المفعول نكوّن السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام الأفعال المساعدة أو النافعة بعد كلمة الاستفهام.

**A** Who did you meet?

**B** I met Munir.

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام (How many / How much)

يأتي بعدهما مباشرة الاسم الذي نسال عنه ثم الفعل المساعد / الناقص ثم الفاعل.

**A** How many books did you buy?

**A** How much flour have you got?

**B** I bought 5 books.

**B** I have got a lot of flour.

السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام [Whose]

يأتي بعدها غالباً الاسم المراد السؤال عن ملكيته:

**A** Whose book is that?

**B** That is Ali's book.

عند السؤال عن الوقت الذي تستغرقه (مواصلة) للوصول لمكان:

**A** How long does it take ....?

**B** About half an hour.

ملاحظات على الرد على أسئلة أو جمل بالمحادثات

**A** I always feel proud of my parents.

**A** Can I ask you a question?

**B** Me too. / so do I.

**B** Yes, you can.

الاجابة التقليدية في الاثبات [yes, ....] لكن تعلم الصيغ الأخرى المناسبة للإجابة

[Sure. / Go ahead. / Go on. / Of course.]

### Hints from previous exams?

تلميحات من أسئلة وردت في امتحانات المحافظات

1- Adham : What interests you most in Egypt?

البحيرة 2022

يسأل Adham هنا عما أثار اهتمام السائح أكثر أثناء زيارته لمصر.

2- Tourist : Excuse me, sir. Would you kindly tell me the way to the Pyramids?

حضر الشيخ 2022

السؤال السابق سؤال غير معتاد ان يأتي وجاء في امتحان كفر الشيخ وهنا كلمة kindly تحل محل please

3- A teacher is talking to a student who is late.

**Student** : Good morning, sir. May I come in, please?

البلدية 2022

**Teacher** : Good morning. Yes, stand here. ① .....

**Student** : Sorry, sir, it is the bus which makes me late.

في الغالب الاجابة عن السؤال بـ Why تبدأ بـ To... / Because...

لكن لاحظ ان السؤال في الفراغ لابد ان يبدأ بـ Why رغم ذلك ، ويظهر ذلك من سياق الإجابة عليه.

### Common questions?

أسئلة شائعة في المحادثات

1- At a restaurant

في مطعم

- Can I have the menu?
- Would you like to order?
- Can I have your order, sir?
- What's your favourite dish?
- What about the dessert?

3- At a clothes shop

في محل بيع الملابس

- Can I help you?
- What colour / size do you want?
- How much does it cost?

5- At a railway station

في محطة سكة حديد

- Can I book a ticket to ....., please?
- Which platform does the train leave from?
- How long does it take to go there?
- When does it arrive?

2- At a hospital or a doctor's

في مستشفى أو عيادة

- What's the matter with you?
- What do you complain of?
- How long have you been feeling ill?
- What's wrong?

4- At a hotel

في فندق

- Can I book a room, please?
- How long will you stay here?
- How much is the room a night?
- Have you enjoyed your stay here?

6- Meeting a tourist

مقابلة سائح

- Where do you come from/ Where are you from?
- Is it your first visit to Egypt?
- What places have you been to?
- How can I get to the Pyramids, please?
- Excuse me, sir. Would you kindly tell me the way to the Pyramids?

### Common questions?

1- What do you do? / What is your job?

للسؤال عن الوظيفة

2- Where were you born?

للسؤال عن مكان الميلاد

3- When were you born? What's your date of birth?

للسؤال عن تاريخ الميلاد

4- What is your nationality?

للسؤال عن جنسية شخص

5- Where do you live?

للسؤال عن عنوان شخص

6- What is the weather like? / How is the weather?

للسؤال عن الطقس

7- What does ..... look like?

للسؤال عن مظهر إنسان/ وصف شيء

8- What is/are ..... (used) for?

للسؤال عن الغرض من استخدام شيء/ أشياء

9- Single or double?

للسؤال عن نوع غرفة في فندق

10- Single or return?

للسؤال عن تذكرة الركوب (ذهاب ام ذهاب وعودة)



- 11- What would you like to have?  
 12- Where have you been?  
 13- How often do you .....?  
 14- What happened?  
 15- What is your opinion of ...?  
 16- What is wrong with .....?

للسؤال عن ماذا يريد شخص أن يأكل / يشرب  
 للسؤال عن أين كان شخص  
 للسؤال عن عدد مرات فعل شيء  
 للسؤال عما حدث  
 للسؤال عن رأي شخص في شيء / شخص  
 للسؤال عن عطل في جهاز

## Model question?

Finish the following dialogue:

Magid meets a tourist from the USA at the Egyptian Museum.

Magid : Welcome to Egypt. Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : ① .....

Magid : ② .....

Tourist : Because I enjoy its fine weather and great monuments.

Magid : How long have you been here?

Tourist : ③ .....

Magid : ④ .....

Tourist : At the Sheraton.

Magid : ⑤ .....

Tourist : Thank you.

المزاح رقم (1)

- مطلوب إجابة للسؤال التالي:

Magid: Is this your first visit to Egypt?

السؤال هنا يبدأ بـ (Is) وهو فعل مساعد ويعطى معنى «هل» والإجابة إما أن تكون بـ Yes أو بـ No.  
 وفي المحادثة السابقة يتضح أن السائح زار مصر قبل ذلك فتكون الإجابة:

Answer Tourist: No. It isn't. / No. This is my second visit.

المزاح رقم (2)

- الفراغ ينتهي بعلامة استفهام، مطلوب تكوين سؤال في نفس زمن الإجابة التالية مع اختيار كلمة الاستفهام المناسبة:

Tourist: Because I enjoy its fine weather and great monuments.

- الإجابة هنا تبدأ بـ (Because) أي تعبر عن «سبب» فلا بد أن نسأل عن هذا السبب بكلمة الاستفهام (لماذا) (Why).

- نأخذ جزء من الإجابة «إن وجد» لتكوين السؤال مع الحفاظ على زمن الإجابة في السؤال «مضارع بسيط»

Answer Magid: Why do you visit Egypt?

- وسوف نقدم شرحاً مفصلاً لكلمات الاستفهام وكيفية تكوين السؤال لاحقاً.

المزاح رقم (3)

- مطلوب إجابة للسؤال التالي:

Magid: How long have you been here?

- هنا يسأل عن «مدة» ولا بد أن تكون الإجابة مضارع تام، ليتوافق مع نفس زمن السؤال.

Answer Tourist: I have been here for two weeks.

المزاح رقم (4)

- مطلوب سؤال للإجابة التالية بمعنى (أين تقيم .....?).

Tourist: At the Sheraton.

- الإجابة هنا تحتوي على ذكر المكان الذي يقيم فيه السائح:

- فلا بد أن يحتوي السؤال على كلمة استفهام (أين) (Where) مع استخدام زمن المضارع المستمر (لأنها تعبر عن حدث مؤقت).

Answer Magid: Where are you staying?

المزاح رقم (5)

- مطلوب عبارة يكون الرد عليها بـ (Thank you).

- من موضوع المحادثة نفهم أن Magid يتمنى وقتاً سعيداً للسائح فيمكن أن تكون الإجابة كالآتي:

Answer Magid: Have a nice time.

## Exercises

Finish the following dialogue:

Marlam is talking to Nada who has bought a new smart TV.

الوادي الجديد 2022

Marlam : What a nice TV! When did you buy it?

Nada : ① .....

Marlam : How much is it?

Nada : ② .....

Marlam : ③ .....

Nada : I bought it from Cairo Mall.

Marlam : ④ .....

Nada : Yes, it has a 30% discount.

Marlam : Can you come with me to get one?

Nada : ⑤ .....

Ahmed is meeting a British tourist who is visiting Egypt.

مطروح 2022

Ahmed : Hello, it's a pleasure to meet you.

A tourist : ① .....

Ahmed : ② .....



A tourist : I'm from Britain.

Ahmed : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

I came here last year.

A tourist : ① .....

Ahmed : ② .....

A tourist : I visited the Egyptian Museum and the Pyramids.

Ahmed : ③ .....

A tourist : Thanks.

Ali and Samir are talking about the favourite sport.

شمال سيناء 2022

Ali : What's your favourite sport, Samir?

Samir : ① .....

Ali : ② .....

Samir : Because it's exciting.

Ali : ③ .....

Samir : Mohammed Salah is my favourite footballer.

Ali : Do you watch his matches?

Samir : ④ .....

Ali : Why are you proud of him?

Samir : ⑤ .....

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the list

..... كيف لجيب عن سؤال اقرأ واكمل بكلمات من القائمة:

السؤال عبارة عن نص مكون من ٥٠ إلى ٦٠ كلمة وبه أربعة فراغات وأعلى النص قائمة من ست كلمات.

مطلوب من الطالب أن يكمل الفراغات الأربعة (٣ كلمات - قاعدة لغوية) من القائمة المعطاة له أعلى النص.

## Model question?

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

goes - from - borrow - with - favourite - go

Marwa's ① ..... hobby is reading, so she ② ..... to her school library every Sunday. She likes going there ③ ..... her friends. There, they ④ ..... different books. Marwa thinks that reading is very important because it gives her useful information.

Answer 1- favourite 2- goes 3- with 4- borrow

## Exercises

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

two - better - spend - twice - best - hobbies

My name is Sama. I am a third-year prep school student. My ① ..... are drawing and making small models of things. I do not have many friends. So I prefer to ② ..... most of my time studying. My grandmother is my ③ ..... friend. So I visit her ④ ..... a week. I'm not very good with social media, so I don't use the internet so much.

شمال سيناء 2022

pollution - plant - will - along - going - work

We must have more trees in our cities. People in my city do their best to ① ..... evergreen trees ② ..... the streets. This is to reduce the level of ③ ..... Trees decorate our city and attract more visitors to enjoy its beauty. People who are interested in this project are ④ ..... to be awarded by the government.

شمال سيناء 2022

attractive - country - public - have - population - has

Luxor is a city in Upper Egypt. The ① ..... of Luxor is 422,407 people. Luxor ② ..... been described as the "world's greatest open-air museum". There are a lot of ③ ..... places that tourists can visit such as the Temple of Karnak, the Valley of the Kings and the Valley of the Queens. It has a great system of ④ ..... transport. You can get anywhere easily.

شمال سيناء 2022

## 3 Reading Comprehension

..... كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال قطعة الفهم

- يعطى الطالب نص مكون من حوالي ١٤٠ إلى ١٦٠ كلمة.

- مطلوب من الطالب أن يجيب عن ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد وثلاثة أسئلة مقالية.

خطوات تساعدك على إجابة قطعة الفهم:

① اقرأ الأسئلة أولاً قبل قراءة القطعة نفسها لأن هذا يعطيك فكرة عامة عن موضوع القطعة.

② انتبه إلى ما تطلبه هذه الأسئلة من معلومات.

③ اقرأ القطعة كلها بتمعن مرة ثانية قبل أن تقوم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة.

④ عندما تجد جملة فيها إجابة سؤال ضع خط تحتها وأيضاً إذا وجدت أرقام انتبه لها لأن واضح الامتحان عادة يسأل عنها.

⑤ إذا صادفت كلمة لا تعرف معناها حاول تخمين المعنى.



## كيف تخمين معنى كلمة لا تعرفها معناها

1 قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة بسبب وجود عبارة أو كلمة دالة على التناقض مثل:

ولكن **yet** - ولكن **but** - في المقابل **in contrast** - على العكس من... / على خلاف **Unlike**

• Some people think that sports are **unimportant**, but I think they are **vital**.

- لو أنك لا تعرف معنى كلمة **vital**، يمكنك تخمين معناها حيث أن الجملة تقول "اعتقد بعض الناس أن الرياضة شيء غير مهم، لكنني أعتقد أنها...". من خلال السياق نفهم أن **vital** عكس **unimportant** وبهذا يكون تخمين معنى الكلمة سهل وهو (ضروري) أو (مهم).

2 قد تخمين معنى الكلمة أيضاً من خلال بادئات الكلمات أو لواحقها المضافة لأصل الكلمة

مثال: نفهم من خلال البادئة **im-** في كلمة **impossible** (التي تعني "غير" أو "ليس" العكس) كلمة **possible** فيكون معناها (غير ممكن/مستحيل).

مثال آخر: نفهم من خلال اللاحقة **-less** في كلمة **homeless** (التي تعني (بدون/بلا) أن معنى الكلمة (بلا مأوى/مشرد).

3 يمكنك تخمين المعنى من سياق الجملة من خلال الكلمات التي تسبق الكلمة أو التي تليها.

• It has rained hard through the night so the ground was **wet**.  
- ماذا تعني كلمة **wet**؟ إذا كنت لا تعرف معناها بمفردك تخمينه من خلال الجملة التي سبقتها "كانت السماء تمطر بغزارة خلال الليل لذلك الأرض كانت... لقد كانت تمطر بشدة مما يعني أن الأرض لابد أنها كانت (مبتلة)..."

4 هناك طريقة بسيطة جداً: ترجم الجملة كلها واترك فراغ مكان الكلمة التي لا تعرفها ثم فكر أي كلمة باللغة العربية تتماشى مع معنى الجملة فمثلاً أنت قرأت جملة تقول:

• The work is **boring**. There is nothing I find interesting about it.  
- حاول تخمين معنى "**boring**" هنا.

## ما هي الأنماط الأكثر شيوعاً في أسئلة قطعة المفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

قد يطلب واضح الامتحان منك الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

• The main idea of the passage is.....

• The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

## كيف تجد المكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.

- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.

- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.

- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتي:

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat has blue lines and red sleeves.

My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man, I will wear my coat to school.

2 قد يقوم واضح الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول: الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

• The underlined word '.....' refers to .....

تانياً: الأسئلة المقالية (open-ended questions)

1 قد يكون هناك في القطعة رأي / نصيحة وبسالك هل أنت موافق على هذا الرأي/ هذه النصيحة أم لا مع ذكر السبب:

• Do you agree with this opinion / advice in the passage? Why / Why not?

2 قد يرتبط موضوع القطعة بك فيسالك مثلاً: هل تحب أو هل تكره .....؟ نعم؟ ولم لا؟

• Do you like /dislike....? Why / Why not?

3 قد يطلب منك أن تعطى عنواناً مناسباً للقطعة أو تذكر الفكرة الرئيسية لها:

• Give a suitable title for the passage.

4 قد يطلب منك تلخيصاً (summarise) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

• Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

## كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان الاساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

2- حدد أهم شيء يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك ويمكن استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى

3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية

4- اكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود عشر كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

## Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية.

Summarise the first paragraph of the text in two lines

النص: 2022

Tourists have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the wonders of the ancient world such as the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful experience for them. Tourists have also come to experience the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

## تسج الخطوات السابقة:

1- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسي بالسائحين **tourists**

2- أهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **come / see /visit**

3- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة مثل **(for hundreds of years)**

4- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

## Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the wonders of the ancient world such as the Pyramids and to experience the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.



## Exercises

السرفية 2022

- 1- Summarise the following paragraph in one sentence of your own words.
- My father enjoys playing chess with his friends. He believes in regular exercise and has also taught us the same. He wants me to excel in whatever I do. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

Notes

مطلوب في السؤال أن تكون جملة التلخيص تحتوي على مفردات من الطالب، ولذلك يجب استخدام كلمات بديلة عن الموجودة في الفقرة وتعطي نفس المعنى مثل:

(believe = think/ excel = be clever)

- 2- Summarise the following paragraph of the text in one sentence.

When I was young, I always loved both drawing and painting, but I could neither read nor write well. As a result, I didn't understand the lessons at school and got bad marks.

5 قد يطلب منك الإستدلال / الإستنتاج Inference من القطعة عن معلومة معينة

- 1- يبدأ السؤال بكلمة استدلال / استنتاج من النص على..... Infer from the text.....
- 2- تتطلب الإجابة على أسئلة الإستدلال / الإستنتاج بشكل صحيح القدرة على أخذ المعلومات الواردة في النص ثم استخلاص استنتاجات منطقية منها.
- 3- تطلب أسئلة الإستدلال / الإستنتاج معنى سطر أو فقرة أو حتى فقرة كاملة.

## Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Do you have a computer at home? Do you use the internet? I'm sure the answer is "Yes". I can't believe there is a house without a computer in our modern time. Computer users increase every day. But why?

The computer is a world where you can fly anywhere and everywhere. Through the computer, you can play games, store information, write what you want in any language and print it out. You can also use the internet through the computer. The internet is a great store of knowledge in all fields. You can learn about medicine, engineering, health and so many other sciences. It can also help us communicate with people in any part of the world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- The passage is mainly about .....
- a. the internet      b. the computer      c. engineering      d. communication

- 2- The underlined word, "store" means .....
- a. learn      b. read      c. keep      d. study
- 3- We can use computers to ..... paper.
- a. drive      b. ride      c. answer      d. print

B. Answer the following questions:

- 4- How do computers help us?
- 5- Infer from the text what we can learn about from the internet.
- 6- Summarise the first paragraph into one sentence.

## Answers

- 1- b. the computer      2. c. keep      3- d. print
- 4- We can use it to play games, store information and communicate with people.
- 5- We can learn about medicine, engineering, health and so many other sciences.
- 6- Many people use computers nowadays.

## Exercises

1- Read the following, then answer the questions:

حفر السبخ 2022

Travelling is many experiences in one. It enables you to do things different from your daily routine. It's a way to learn and grow within oneself and grow with other people by learning about something or someone new. Travelling is an opportunity to communicate with different persons. Through communication and understanding, travelling can provide a way to bring people together. Travelling is important for human happiness. Studies show that travelling can be great for mental health. It helps people get a greater understanding of themselves and to build relationships. One of the best things about visiting a new place is the food. Travelling is a great way to learn about different dishes. When travelling to a country, it is important to learn some necessary words such as: hello, goodbye, please, thank you, and bathroom. It's a great way to show cultures with one another. Travelling gives a great amount of information about different cultures.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- The passage is mainly about .....
- a. food      b. culture      c. travelling      d. mental health
- 2- Travelling can bring people together through .....
- a. surfing the internet      b. communication
- c. understanding      d. b and c



- 3- How can travelling be great for mental health?
- It's a great way to share cultures with one another.
  - It is important to learn some necessary words.
  - It helps people get a greater understanding of themselves.
  - It enables you to do different things.

### B. Answer the following questions:

- 4- Infer from the text what it is necessary for people to learn when they travel.
- 5- Summarise the importance of travelling in three sentences.
- 6- Would you prefer to travel abroad in the future? Why / Why not?

### 2- Read the following, then answer the questions:

ديسمبر 2022

When I was young, I always loved both drawing and painting, but I could neither read nor write well. As a result, I didn't understand the lessons at school and got bad marks.

My parents thought that I wasn't very clever. For this reason, they took me to some tests.

They discovered that I suffered from dyslexia which means it was difficult for my brain to read and spell. To help me, my parents asked a teacher to give me special lessons which made me have good results. Later, at school, I was better and did well in exams. Also, I got a prize for my art. Then, I decided that I would like to be an artist one day. Now, I volunteer at a charity for other children with dyslexia to offer help and teach them about art.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of this passage is .....
  - the problem of charities
  - the problem of exams
  - the problem of dyslexia
  - drawing and painting
- The writer's parents helped me with the problem when they .....
  - took me to a doctor
  - gave me a lot of money
  - volunteered at a charity
  - asked a teacher to give me special lessons
- The writer was good at .....
  - either reading or writing
  - neither drawing nor painting
  - both reading and writing
  - both drawing and painting

### B. Answer the following questions:

- 4- What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
- 5- Summarise the first paragraph of the text in one sentence.
- 6- How do you think the writer will help other children?

## 4 Writing (Biography – Short story – Review)

كيف نكتب (سيرة ذاتية - قصة قصيرة - مقال نقدي)

### Writing Rules

- اتبع قواعد الترفيع التي درستها عند الكتابة ومنها:

- أترك مسافة صغيرة بمقدار كلمة في أول السطر.
- أكتب حرف كبير "capital letter" من بداية كل جملة.
- أترك مسافة بين كل كلمة والأخرى.
- ضع في نهاية الجملة نقطة "Full stop".

### 1) How to write a biography

كيف تكتب السيرة الذاتية لشخص

- هناك مجموعة من المعلومات التي لابد أن تكون ملماً بها قبل كتابة السيرة الذاتية لشخص مثل

(المولد - النشأة - الدراسة - التعليم - العمل - الانجازات - الصفات)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| - I'm writing about "....."                              | أكتب عن «اسم الشخصية»                            |
| - He / She is a very important person.                   | إنه / إنها شخصية مهمة.                           |
| - He / She is a famous.....                              | إنه / إنها مشهور (ة).                            |
| - He / She has a positive effect on my / our life.       | له / لها تأثير إيجابي في حياتي / حياتنا.         |
| - He / She was born in (date / place).                   | ولد / ولدت في (تاريخ / مكان).                    |
| - He / She has lived in .....                            | لقد عاش / عاشت في.....                           |
| - He / She was born into a poor / rich family.           | ولد / ولدت لأسرة فقيرة / ثرية.                   |
| - He / She has a great dream.                            | كان له / لها حلم عظيم.                           |
| - He / She faced many problems.                          | واجه / واجهت مشكلات كثيرة.                       |
| - His / Her..... tried to help him / her.                | حاول ..... مساعدته / مساعدتها.                   |
| - ..... supported him / her.                             | قام بدعمه / بدعمها.                              |
| - He / She was very poor, but he / she didn't stop.....  | كان / كانت فقير (ة) لكن لم يتوقف / تتوقف عن..... |
| - He / She didn't give up his / her dream.               | لم يتخلي / تتخلي عن حلمه / حلمها.                |
| - He / She asked his / her teacher about difficulties.   | سأل / سألت معلمه / معلمها بخصوص الصعوبات.        |
| - He / She helps the poor.                               | يساعد / تساعد الفقراء.                           |
| - He / She tries to thank all who helped him / her.      | يحاول / تحاول شكر كل من ساعده / ساعدها.          |
| - I love him / her a lot. I'd like to be like him / her. | أحبه / أحبها كثيراً. أود أن أكون مثله / مثلها.   |
| - He / She is my role model.                             | إنه / إنها قدوتي / مثلي الأعلى.                  |



## Example

Mohamed Salah is the person I admire most. He was born in a village in Gharbia. He went to a primary school in his village. As a child, he liked playing football very much. He played for Al- Mokawloon, a team in Egypt. Then he played for many teams abroad. Now he is playing for Liverpool in England. He scores many goals. He is one of the best players in the world. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He is very active and fast. Mohamed Salah is a role model for a lot of young people. He has got a lot of important awards. He donates a lot of money for building hospitals and schools. To conclude, Mohamed Salah is a great man. I'd like to be like him in the future.

## ② How to write a short story

## كيف تكتب قصة قصيرة

- اتبع الآتي عند كتابة القصة القصيرة:

١. حدد اسم القصة، الكاتب، الشخصية الرئيسية، الحدث الرئيسي، متى وأين حدثت وهكذا.

٢. ابدأ الحديث عن أحداث القصة وتسلسل الأحداث.

٣. ابدأ الحديث عن النتائج.

٤. تحدث عما حدث في نهاية القصة، الحلول وشعور الشخصيات وهكذا.

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية قبل كتابة القصة:

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| - I have read a lot of stories.        | لقد قرأت قصصاً كثيرة.          |
| - Some stories are very interesting.   | بعض القصص شيقة جداً.           |
| - Some stories are boring.             | بعض القصص مملة.                |
| - I think this story is very exciting. | أعتقد أن هذه القصة مثيرة جداً. |
| - It has a lot of exciting actions.    | تشتمل على أحداث مثيرة كثيرة.   |

## Example

I was travelling to Cairo. I sometimes travel by bus or taxi but I love travelling by train. This time I travelled by train. I took two bags. One bag was full of my books. The other one was full of my clothes. While I was travelling, I slept for 10 minutes. When I woke up, I didn't find one bag and I was very worried. I looked for the bag everywhere. I asked the passengers. They said that no one saw it. I was very sad. Suddenly, my mother phoned me. She told me that I had forgotten my bag at home. I was very happy. I have learned an important lesson. I should be careful. I shouldn't sleep on transport. I should decide what I need before leaving my house.

## ③ How to write a review

## كيف تكتب مقال نقدي

- اتبع الآتي عند كتابة مقال نقدي:

١. حدد الموضوع الذي تكتب عنه المقال النقدي.

٢. حدد متى تم الحدث وأين.

٣. تحدث عن الحدث (الذي يدور حوله المقال النقدي) مميزات، وعيوبه، وهكذا.

٤. اكتب عن رأيك الشخصي في هذا الحدث.

## • مكونات المقال النقدي •

## • Introduction مقدمة

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| - I have read an article about..... | لقد قرأت مقال عن .....           |
| - I write this review to .....      | اكتب هذا المقال النقدي لكي ..... |

## • Advantages المميزات

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| - "....." has many advantages.       | "....." له/لها عدة مميزات.              |
| - It is very useful.                 | إنه/إنها مفيد(ة) جداً.                  |
| - We can use it in many things.      | يمكننا استخدامه/استخدامها في عدة أشياء. |
| - It can make our life easier.       | يمكنه/يمكنها أن يجعل/تجعل حياتنا أسهل.  |
| - We should use it in the right way. | يجب استخدامه/استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة.    |
| - It can help us to.....             | يمكنه/يمكنها مساعدتنا في أن.....        |

## • Disadvantages العيوب

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| - "....." has some disadvantages. | "....." له/لها بعض العيوب.                |
| - It can cause some problems.     | يمكن أن يسبب/تسبب بعض المشكلات.           |
| - Some people use it wrongly.     | بعض الناس يستخدمونه/يستخدمونها بشكل خاطئ. |
| - It sometimes makes us worried.  | أحياناً يصيبنا/تصيبنا بالقلق.             |

## • Conclusion الخاتمة

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| - In my opinion, .....              | في رأيي, .....                       |
| - We should cope with its problems. | لا بد أن نتعامل مع مشكلاته/مشكلاتها. |
| - I advise you to.....              | أنصحك بأن.....                       |

## Example

Last week, I read an article in the newspaper about transport in the future. This article said that transport would be easier and different in the future. There will be flying cars, flying taxis, driverless vehicles etc. They will help us move in the streets. Flying cars and flying taxis will not move on the road but they will land on the roofs of the buildings. They will help us keep the environment clean. They also will help us save energy because they will be electric. I think that transport will be easier and cheaper than it is today. It will also be faster and safer. Technology is great and useful. It helps us greatly.



## Exercises

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

1- A biography of a famous person.

2- A short story about a day you spent on the beach.

3- A review of a visit to an interesting place.

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

- في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على بادئات الكلمات "prefixes" ولواحق الكلمات "suffixes"

## 1- Prefixes بادئات الكلمات

- البادئة هي عبارة عن مقطع يضاف إلى بداية الكلمة سواء كانت اسم / صفة / فعل / ظرف، يغير في معنى الكلمة.

مثال : كلمة happy تعني سعيد، إذا أضيفت لها البادئة "un-" تصبح unhappy بمعنى غير سعيد أي تعطي العكس opposite.

- الجدول التالي فيه عدد من البادئات Prefixes الأكثر شيوعاً في اللغة الإنجليزية والمستخدم في لهج الصف الثالث الإعدادي.

Prefix	Usage	Example
a-	adjective تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	awake مستيقظ
aqua-	water تتعلق بالماء	aquarium متحف الأحياء المائية
dis-	opposite تعطي العكس	disagree / disabled يرفض / معاق
im- / in-		impossible / informal مستحيل / غير رسمي
mis-		mistake خطأ
un-		uncomfortable / unhappy / unwell غير مريح / غير سعيد / مريض
astro-	space تخص الفضاء	astronaut رائد فضاء
e-	electronic تضاف للاسم وتعني «إلكتروني»	email بريد إلكتروني
en-	verb تحول الاسم إلى الفعل	encourage يشجعه
inter-	between تعطي معنى بين	international دولي
re-	again تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى	recycle / return يعيد تدوير / يعود
trans-	move across تعطي معنى «يلقى»	transport النقل
bio-	life تشير إلى «حياة»	biography سيرة ذاتية
hyper-	too much تفيد معنى «فائق / لائق عن الحد»	hyperloop كبسولة فائقة السرعة
cyber-	internet تتعلق «بالإنترنت»	cyberbully يتلوم عبر الإنترنت
micro-	small size تفيد «صغر الحجم»	microwave جهاز ميكروويف
handl-	by hand تستخدم بمعنى «باليدين»	handicrafts مصنوعات يدوية



## لواحق الكلمات Suffixes

- اللاحقة هي عبارة عن مقطع يضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة سواء كانت اسم/صفة/فعل/ظرف، يغير في معنى الكلمة.  
**مثال:** الاسم **comfort** يعنى راحة إذا أضفنا له اللاحقة (**-able**) أصبحت **comfortable** بمعنى مريح (صفة).

- الجدول التالي فيه عدد من اللواحق **suffixes** الأكثر شيوعاً في اللغة الإنجليزية والمستخدم في منهج الصف الثالث الإعدادي.

Suffix	Usage	Example
-able / -ible	تحول الاسم / الفعل إلى الصفة adjective	comfortable / accessible مريح / يمكن الوصول إليه
-ing		interesting / boring شيق / مممل
-ed		excited / trusted متحمس / موثوق فيه
-ful		useful / colourful / peaceful / careful مفيد / زاهي الألوان / هادي / حريص
-ive		positive / attractive / sensitive إيجابي / جذاب / حساس
-al	تحول الاسم إلى الصفة adjective	botanical / traditional / musical نباتي / تقليدي / موسيقي
-ic		electric كهربائي
-ous		anxious / famous قلق / مشهور
-y		noisy / lucky / foggy صاخب / محظوظ / ملب بالضباب
-en		woolen / wooden صوفي / خشبي
-ant		pleasant جميل / لطيف
-ance / -ence	تحول الفعل إلى الاسم noun	appearance / difference مظهر / اختلاف
-y		delivery توصيل

-er / -or	person	تكوّن اسم الفاعل	user / speaker / passenger / gardener / spectator مستخدم / متحدث / راكب / بستاني / مشاهد
-ant			assistant مساعد
-ist			scientist / tourist عالم / سائح
-ment	noun	تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	pavement رصيف شارع
-sion / -ition / -ion			conclusion / competition / pollution / exhibition / information خاتمة / مسابقة / تلوث / معرض / معلومات
-ure			pleasure سرور
-an / -ian	place	تعبّر عن شخص/شيء ينتمي لمكان	Egyptian مصري
-ness	noun	تحول الصفة إلى الاسم	illness / kindness مرض / عطف
-ly	adverb	تحول الصفة إلى الحال	especially / suddenly خصوصاً / فجأة
-ology	science	تفيد دراسة علم ما	technology التكنولوجيا
-ise	verb	تحول الاسم إلى الفعل	advertise يُعلن
-ache	pain	تفيد الألم	headache صداع
-ics	activity	تفيد علم/فن/نشاط	gymnastics رياضة الجمباز
-ish	nationality / language	تفيد الجنسية/اللغة	Polish بولندي



## A Language Functions 5 Marks

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A dialogue of TEN (10) exchanges with FIVE (5) deletions is provided (2 stimuli & 3 responses). The topic of the dialogue should be related to the students' everyday life, interests, hobbies, events and so on. The situation in which the dialogue takes place is described briefly but clearly. The students are required to fill in the deletions completely with the appropriate language forms without providing them with any part of the answers. The first exchange should be in full. (One mark each)

## B Reading Comprehension 10 Marks

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

(4 Marks)

An unseen text from 50 to 60 words with FOUR (4) gaps is provided. Students are asked to fill in the FOUR (4) gaps (3 vocabulary & 1 structure) from a list of SIX (6) words (4 vocabulary & 2 structures). (One mark each)

### 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

(8 Marks)

An unseen text from 140 to 160 words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, or an email. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are asked to answer:

A. THREE (3) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills:

- Determine the main idea of a text. (1 question)
- Skim and scan grade appropriate text. (2 questions)

B. THREE (3) open-ended questions on the following reading comprehension skills:

- Make inference about grade appropriate text. (1 question)
- Summarizing a text. (1 question)
- Make prediction about upcoming events in a story or information in a text. (1 question)

(One mark each)

## C Vocabulary & Structures 8 Marks

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2 Marks)

SIX (6) vocabulary multiple-choice questions based on what students studied before are provided. They are asked to choose the correct answer out of the FOUR (4) options given. The questions should test students' knowledge of:

- Definitions (3 questions)
- Synonyms & Antonyms (1 question)
- Suffixes & Prefixes (1 question)
- Guessing meaning from the text (2 questions)

(One mark each)

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(5 Marks)

FIVE (5) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs etc. related to what students have studied.

(One mark each)

## D Writing 7 Marks

### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(7 Marks)

Students are asked to write from 100 to 110 words on a specific topic related to the Set Books in ONE of the following writing forms:

- A review
- A short story
- A biography

(One mark for organization - Two marks for relevance of ideas - One mark for related vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar "Three mistakes are accepted. Repeated mistakes are marked once only")



## A Language Functions

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

(3 Marks)

A dialogue with three gaps is introduced. Students are asked to supply the missing parts.  
(One mark each)

### 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

(2 Marks)

Two situations are given. Students are asked to respond to each situation.  
(One mark each)

## B Usage

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(5 Marks)

Five multiple-choice items are given. Students are asked to choose the correct answer.  
(One mark each)

## C Reading Comprehension

### 4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(5 Marks)

A short text is given. Students are asked to read it and answer the questions. Three open-ended questions and two multiple-choice questions.  
(One mark each)

## D Writing

### 5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

(5 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph of six sentences based on the material in the Set Book.

# Check Your English!

مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب | WB pages 70 & 71

### 1 Complete the questions with these words:

a lot of - how to - If - located - mustn't - quietly - used to - which

1. What mustn't you do in an exam?
2. What should you do ..... you feel ill at school?
3. What do you call someone who knows ..... paint very well?
4. Which city is ..... on the Suez Canal?
5. Who ..... think that an animal's eye helped blind people?
6. What fast food has ..... fat in it?
7. What do you call the material ..... people often use to make clothes?
8. In which building do people usually sit and read .....

### 2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. <input type="checkbox"/> cotton                 | e. <input type="checkbox"/> a library                   |
| b. <input type="checkbox"/> the Ancient Egyptians  | f. <input type="checkbox"/> pizza                       |
| c. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> talk loudly | g. <input type="checkbox"/> You should tell the teacher |
| d. <input type="checkbox"/> Port Said              | h. <input type="checkbox"/> on artist                   |

### 3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

استمع إلى النص



### 4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the mistakes:

1. As we walk into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.  
As we were walking into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.
2. My sister bought a cotton, new, pretty dress.  
.....
3. Tarek wants the blue shoes, but I prefer the brown one.  
.....
4. Look at those dark clouds! I think it is raining soon.  
.....
5. Hundreds of fish caught by the fishermen every week.  
.....



## 5 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى النص



- The boy is .....  
 a. describing a photo  
 b. selling clothes  
 c. going to the shops  
 d. buying something
- The man is .....  
 a. buying tickets at a museum  
 b. helping a woman  
 c. asking for information on the phone  
 d. describing a visit to a museum yesterday
- The woman is .....  
 a. making a salad  
 b. eating lunch  
 c. saying how to make a salad  
 d. saying how to make an omelette
- Sara is .....  
 a. cooking food for Leila  
 b. inviting Leila to her house  
 c. making a film  
 d. going to Leila's house this evening
- The woman in the shop .....  
 a. buys a red dress  
 b. wants a larger dress  
 c. doesn't buy a dress  
 d. buys a blue dress

## 6 Read the text, then answer the questions:

What clothes do you like to wear? Most people can choose the clothes that they wear each day, but in some jobs you must wear special clothes. For example, firefighters must wear clothes that are made of special material that does not burn. If you are a doctor, you should sometimes wear special clothes and masks that stop you from becoming ill. Many other people, such as engineers and builders, must wear hats and big boots when they are working.



- What is different about the clothes firefighters wear?  
 They are made of a special material that does not burn.

2. How do the clothes that doctors wear help them?

3. What do engineers and builders often wear?

4. Why do you think they wear these clothes?

5. In which other jobs do people wear special clothes, and why?

## 7 Write in your notebook about a person with a great job.

- What makes this job special?
- Why do you think the person does this job?
- Say if you would like to do this job and why.

Audioscript

استمع إلى النص



## • Exercise 3

1- Speaker 1 : What mustn't you do in an exam?

Speaker 2 : talk loudly.

2- Speaker 1 : What should you do if you feel ill at school?

Speaker 2 : You should tell the teacher.

3- Speaker 1 : What do you call someone who knows how to paint very well?

Speaker 2 : an artist.

4- Speaker 1 : Which city is located on the Suez Canal?

Speaker 2 : Port Said.

5- Speaker 1 : Who used to think that an animal's eye helped blind people?

Speaker 2 : the Ancient Egyptians.

6- Speaker 1 : What fast food has a lot of fat in it?

Speaker 2 : pizza.

7- Speaker 1 : What do you call the material which people often use to make clothes?

Speaker 2 : cotton.

8- Speaker 1 : In which building do people usually sit and read quietly?

Speaker 2 : a library.



## • Exercise 5

1 Boy

: In the foreground, I can see some shops. There is a man selling clothes on the right.

2 (On the phone)

Woman : Good morning. How can I help you?

Man : Hello, can you tell me what time the museum opens?

Woman : Of course. It opens at 9 am.

Man : Can I buy tickets there?

Woman : Certainly, or you can buy them online.

3

Woman : Beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Add some salt. Pour the eggs into a frying pan and cook them in a little butter. When it is ready, serve it with salad.

4

Sara : Hi, Leila. I was wondering if you would like to watch a film at my house this evening?

Leila : Thanks, Sara. What time should I come?

Sara : About 7.

Leila : Shall I bring anything?

Sara : Could you bring some orange juice?

Leila : Of course. See you later.

5

Assistant : Can I help you?

Woman : Yes. I like this red dress. Could I try it on?

Assistant : Of course. The changing room is there..... Does it fit?

Woman : No. Do you have a smaller size?

Assistant : We don't have smaller red dresses, but we have a smaller one in blue.

Woman : Thanks. I'll take it.

Prep.  
3

## Where I live

1  
UNIT

## Around town



## Objectives

## Reading:

A description of Ismailia; maps, posters and timetables; accounts of forms of transport, a botanical garden's brochure; an email about meeting a friend

## Writing:

A fact file; a paragraph about your city; a reply to an email: a text invite

## Listening:

Giving and following directions; people talking about their city; a discussion at a train station; making suggestions for a day out

## Speaking:

Giving directions; talking about your city or village; discussing timetables and public transport; making suggestions

## Language:

Prepositions of time and place (revision); the present simple for scheduled events

## Life Skills:

Decision making; respect for diversity





# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

## Key Vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	café	مقهى [كافيه]
library	مكتبة [للقرأة واستعارة الكتب]	market	سوق
museum	متحف	sports centre	مركز رياضي
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	station	محطة
bank	مصرف / بنك	monument	أثر «تاريخي»
lake	بحيرة	traffic	حركة المرور
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	especially	خصوصاً / خاصة
peaceful	هادئ		

استمع إلى المفردات



## Vocabulary

ruins	أطلال / آثار	around	حول / حوالي
boring	ممل	historical	تاريخي
corner	ركن - ناصية [شارع]	shopping centre	مركز تسوق
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	save (d)	يوفر / يدخر
directions	إتجاهات	turn (ed) (n)	يتجه - دور
lunchtime	وقت الغداء	reach (ed)	يصل إلى
perhaps	ربما	borrow (ed)	يستعير
pollution	التلوث		

## Cities and Famous Places

Port Said	مدينة بورسعيد	Lake Timsah	بحيرة التمساح
Ismailia	مدينة الإسماعيلية	the Suez Canal	قناة السويس
Suez	مدينة السويس	the Natural Science Museum	متحف العلوم الطبيعية

## Definitions

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب.

peaceful	هادئ	calm and quiet
traffic	حركة المرور	cars, lorries, motorbikes, etc. that use a road
museum	متحف	a building where historical objects are kept and shown
sports centre	مركز رياضي	a place where you can do different sports

## Lessons 1 & 2

monument	أثر «تاريخي»	something that people build to remember <sup>1</sup> an important person or event	1- يتذكر 2- منطقة
lake	بحيرة	a large area of water with land around it	
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	a large park or open area <sup>2</sup> where scientists study plants and trees, which people can visit	
especially	خصوصاً	more than usual	
station	محطة	you can catch a train from here	
corner	ناصية - ركن	the place where two roads meet	
bank	مصرف - بنك	you can borrow and save money there	
library	مكتبة	a place where we can borrow or read books	

## Synonyms & Antonyms

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب.

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
near	قريب - بالقرب	close		far / distant	بعيد
careful	حريص	cautious		careless	مهمل
peaceful	هادئ	quiet / calm		noisy	صاخب / مزعج
interested in	مهتم بـ	keen on		uninterested in	غير مهتم بـ
attractive	جذاب	beautiful		unattractive	غير جذاب
famous	مشهور	well-known		unknown	غير معروف
modern	حديث	new		ancient	قديم جدًا / أثري

لاحظ الكلمات والعبارات المستخدمة في صيغة السؤال:

- Synonym مرادف = the same meaning as = similar in meaning to = (be) replaced by = close in meaning to
- Antonym مضاد = opposite

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

- n = noun	اسم	- v = verb	فعل
- adj = adjective	صفة	- adv = adverb	حال



## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

يوجد تجميع لبادئات ولواحق الكلمات في مقدمة الكتاب. قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب.

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
aqua-	water	aquarium متحف الإحياء المائية
un-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	unattractive غير جذاب
-ful	تحول الاسم / الفعل إلى الصفة	careful / helpful / peaceful / useful حريص / متعاون / هادئ / مفيد
-ive	n / v → adj	attractive جذاب
-ous		famous مشهور
-al	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	botanical / historical / natural نباتي / تاريخي / طبيعي
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	especially خصوصاً
-ion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	pollution التلوث

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

take a road	يسلك طريق	have tennis lessons	يأخذ دروس في التنس
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	there is much to do	يوجد الكثير للقيام به
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	run through	يمر خلال
go straight ahead	سر للأمام	on the lake	في البحيرة
give directions	يعطي اتجاهات	on the map	على الخريطة
look like	يشبه	go past	يذهب مروناب
come home	يأتي للمنزل		

## Conjugations of

## Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب.

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
take	took	taken
go	went	gone
run	ran	run
win	won	won
hear	heard	heard
spend	spent	spent

## Language Notes

## ① (where / which) for places

* where	حيث (ضمير وصل يشير إلى المكان)	* which	الذي / التي (ضمير وصل يشير إلى المكان عندما تشير إلى المكان كشيء)
Ex. This is the school where I learn.		Ex. I live in Ismailia, which is so beautiful.	

## ② good at / good for / good to

• good at جيد في

Ex. Sara is good at painting.

• good to طيب مع

Ex. My dad is good to our neighbours.

• good for مفيد

Ex. Fresh vegetables are good for you.

## ③ reach / get to / arrive in / arrive at

• reach يصل إلى مكان (بدون حرف جر)

Ex. We reached London late at night.

• get to يصل إلى

ليها المكان المقصود

Ex. The tourists got to the airport at 8 o'clock.

• arrive in

يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة / عاصمة / دولة)

Ex. Hassan arrived in Paris yesterday.

• arrive at

يصل إلى مكان صغير (سينما / مسرح ... إلخ)

Ex. The girls arrived at the zoo early in the morning.

## ④ since

• since منذ

تستخدم مع زمن المضارع التام ويأتي بعدها وقت محدد أو جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex. I haven't visited Aswan since 2015.

Ex. We have lived in this house since I was a child.

• since لأن

since = because = as

ويأتي بعدها السبب

Ex. Since traffic is slow, there isn't much pollution.

## ⑤ another / other / others

• another + اسم مفرد (شيء إضافي)

Ex. Would you like to move to another country?

• other + اسم جمع

Ex. Osama has always loved fish and other sea animals.

• others آخرون = other + اسم جمع (بدون اسم بعدها)

Ex. Some people like playing chess. Others (Other people) don't.

## Check on Language Notes

للتدريب فقط وليس من مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I visited Alex ..... my dad was born.  
a. which      b. where      c. when      d. what
- Exercise is good ..... your body.  
a. for      b. at      c. out      d. away



3. The family the station at nine.  
 a. arrived b. got at c. reached d. came
4. Omar answers all the questions since  
 a. 2020 b. he was lazy c. his death d. he is clever
5. This shirt is dirty. I want one.  
 a. others b. another c. other d. an other

## Audioscript

SB Page (3)

استمع إلى النصوص



- Mona** Hello, Dalia. I'm at the library<sup>(1)</sup>. Where are you?
- Dalia** Hi, Mona. I'm next to the station<sup>(2)</sup>. How do I get to the library?
- Mona** It's easy. From the station, go straight on<sup>(3)</sup>.
- Dalia** How far?
- Mona** For about 20 metres.
- Dalia** OK. Do I go past the sports centre<sup>(4)</sup>?
- Mona** Yes, but then turn left<sup>(5)</sup>.
- Dalia** OK.
- Mona** Walk past the botanical gardens<sup>(6)</sup>.
- Dalia** I'm walking past them now.
- Mona** Great! After the botanical gardens, turn right.....
- Dalia** Turn right after the botanical gardens.... OK.
- Mona** Then take the second road on the right. Can you see a restaurant<sup>(7)</sup>?
- Dalia** I think I can see it. It's on the corner<sup>(8)</sup>.
- Mona** Walk past the restaurant. The library is between<sup>(9)</sup> the restaurant and the museum, opposite<sup>(10)</sup> the bank.
- Dalia** Thanks, Mona. See you soon!



- ١- المكتبة  
 ٢- محطة  
 ٣- سر بشكل  
 مستقيم  
 ٤- المركز الرياضي  
 ٥- اتجه يساراً  
 ٦- حدائق نباتية  
 ٧- مطعم  
 ٨- على الناصية  
 ٩- بين  
 ١٠- مقابل

SB Page (5)

- Nader** My name is Nader. I live in Alexandria with my mum, my dad and my two brothers. Alexandria is a very "historic" city, with lots of famous buildings, ruins<sup>(2)</sup> and monuments<sup>(3)</sup>, but it's a modern city too, and there are lots of things to do here.
- At the weekend, I like to spend time with my family. On Friday afternoons, we usually go to the park, but sometimes we go to a museum or to the aquarium<sup>(4)</sup>. I



- ١- تاريخي  
 ٢- أطلال  
 ٣- آثار  
 ٤- متحف أحياء مائية

love watching the fish!

On Saturdays, I visit my grandparents. They live in Alexandria, too. I enjoy playing chess with my granddad. He's very good at it, but sometimes I win!

**Judy** : My name's Judy and I live in Aswan. It's a busy city with about one and a half million people, and there's always a lot to do at the weekend.

On Friday mornings, I sometimes go shopping. Aswan is a great place for this! There are lots of interesting shops and I love going to the famous market. I also like to go to the botanical gardens or the nature reserve<sup>(5)</sup>.

On Saturdays, I do my homework and in the afternoon, I go to the sports centre for my squash lesson. It's my favourite sport.

-٥- محمية طبيعية



Say it correctly

ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت a في كلمة aquarium square

### Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. What's the main idea of the text? ما هي الفكرة الأساسية في النص؟  
 2. Infer from the text why Alexandria is a historical city. استنتج من النص لماذا تعد الإسكندرية مدينة تاريخية؟  
 3. Summarise Judy's speech in two sentences. لخص حديث جودي في جملتين.

### Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (اجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الإنشائي)

1. Alexandria is a historical city. الإسكندرية مدينة تاريخية.  
 2. Alexandria is a modern city too. الإسكندرية مدينة حديثة أيضاً.  
 3. Aswan is a busy city. أسوان مدينة مزدحمة.  
 4. Aswan has a lot of interesting shops. في أسوان العديد من المحلات الشيقة.

3. Judy lives in Aswan which is a busy city. She goes shopping in its famous market.  
 2. There are famous buildings and monuments.  
 1. Talking about your city.

Answers

## Reading

SB page (4)

### New Message

I am Sherif and I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal<sup>(1)</sup> runs through the city before it reaches<sup>(2)</sup> the sea.

Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive<sup>(3)</sup> buildings<sup>(4)</sup>, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. Around<sup>(5)</sup> 350,000 people live here, but since traffic<sup>(6)</sup> is slow, there isn't much pollution<sup>(7)</sup>.



- ١- قناة السويس  
 ٢- يصل إلى  
 ٣- جذاب  
 ٤- مباني  
 ٥- حوالي  
 ٦- حركة المرور  
 ٧- تلوث



Ismailia is peaceful<sup>(8)</sup>, but it isn't boring! There are lots of things to do here, especially<sup>(9)</sup> at the weekends. On Friday afternoons, I often go to Lake Timsah<sup>(10)</sup>, which is near the city, with my family. It's a beautiful lake with beaches around it.

On Saturday mornings, I have tennis lessons at the sports centre at 9 am. Sometimes I go swimming in the afternoon with my friend, Sayed.

There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum<sup>(11)</sup> because I'm interested in<sup>(12)</sup> animals. It's a good place to go at the weekend

- ٨- هادئ  
٩- خصوصاً  
١٠- بحيرة التمساح  
١١- متحف العلوم الطبيعية  
١٢- مهتم بـ

## WB Page (73)

I live in a small village in the south of Egypt. At the weekend, I usually do the same things. On Saturdays, I get up at 7 am, then I always do my homework after breakfast. At lunchtime, I visit my cousins. We like to eat together. Then, in the afternoon, I often play games with my cousins. What do you do?

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

يوجد تمرينات اضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمرينات لطلاب الازهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

## Definitions

- A / An ..... is something that people build to remember an important person or event.  
a. station    b. traffic    c. monument    d. aquarium
- A/An ..... is a place where we can borrow or read books.  
a. library    b. bookshop    c. aquarium    d. museum
- A ..... is a building where historical objects are kept and shown.  
a. bank    b. museum    c. sports centre    d. library
- A/An ..... is a place where you can do different sports.  
a. lake    b. aquarium    c. library    d. sports centre
- ..... is cars, lorries, motorbikes, etc. that use a road.  
a. Monument    b. Traffic    c. Station    d. Library
- A/An ..... is a large area of water with land around it.  
a. lake    b. garden    c. aquarium    d. bank
- A ..... garden is a large park or open area where scientists study plants and trees, which people can visit.  
a. usual    b. modern    c. botanical    d. peaceful
- A/An ..... is a place where you can catch a train.  
a. aquarium    b. station    c. museum    d. lake

الواقي الجديد 2022

جنوب سيناء 2022

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

- Please be careful when you carry those eggs. The opposite of "careful" is .....  
a. careless    b. useless    c. peaceful    d. helpless
- Cairo has a lot of ancient monuments. "Ancient" is the opposite in meaning to .....  
a. very old    b. unimportant    c. friendly    d. modern
- I'm interested in reading. "Interested in" here is similar in meaning to .....  
a. sure about    b. unhappy with    c. keen on    d. full of
- The park is very peaceful in the morning. You can only hear the birds singing. The synonym of "peaceful" is .....  
a. noisy    b. terrible    c. careful    d. quiet
- "Careful" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. careless    b. expensive    c. cautious    d. close
- There are lovely shops near my house. The opposite of "near" is .....  
a. distant    b. close    c. from    d. under

الدفعه 2023

- When did your uncle reach Cairo Airport? In this question, "reach" means

- a. arrive    b. arrive in    c. arrive at    d. leave

Longman

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

- We turn the verb "help" into an adjective by adding the suffix .....  
a. -ous    b. -ful    c. -al    d. -ly
- This aquarium has different kinds of fish. The prefix "aqua-" in the word "aquarium" refers to .....  
a. land    b. sky    c. desert    d. water
- We turn the adjective "especial" into an adverb by adding the suffix .....  
a. -al    b. -ly    c. -ful    d. -ous
- The suffix "-ive" turns the verb "attract" into a/an .....  
a. adjective    b. adverb    c. noun    d. preposition
- We add the prefix ..... to give the opposite of "attractive".  
a. de-    b. dis-    c. im-    d. un-

## Guessing the meaning

- Ayman is waiting for the bus now. This means that he is at the bus ..... now.  
a. station    b. museum    c. market    d. traffic
- There are a lot of old statues in the museum. This means that the museum contains a lot of .....  
a. reserves    b. books    c. monuments    d. pollution



## Language

## 1- Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

in / at / on / for

in

- 1- قبل شهور السنة **in** May  
 2- قبل فصول السنة **in** winter  
 3- قبل السنين **in** 1999  
 4- قبل العقود والقرون **in** the 1900s  
**in** the 21<sup>st</sup> century  
 5- قبل فترات اليوم المسبوقه **in** the morning  
 6- قبل تعبيرات زمنية معينة بمعنى (في خلال) **in** three days  
**in** five minutes

at

- 1- قبل وقت محدد **at** 9 o'clock / **at** night  
**at** the same time  
**at** the moment / **at** present  
 2- قبل الإجازات والأعياد **at** the weekend / **at** Christmas  
 3- قبل أسماء الوجبات **at** lunchtime / **at** dinner  
 4- قبل ذكر العمر / السن **at** the age of.....

on

- 1- قبل أيام الأسبوع **on** Monday  
 2- قبل التواريخ **on** 10<sup>th</sup> November  
 3- عندما نذكر جزء من اليوم **on** Tuesday morning  
 4- قبل كلمات birthday / holiday **on** holiday / my birthday  
 5- قبل (time) بمعنى "في الوقت المحدد" **on** time

Check ✓

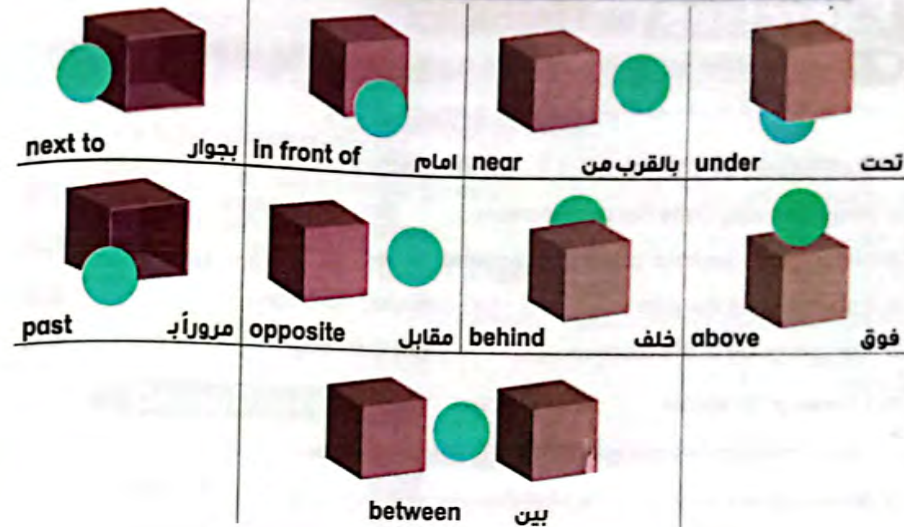
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I usually get up ..... (in) six o'clock.
- We celebrate Mother's Day ..... (at) 21<sup>st</sup> March.
- Al Azhar Park is the best place to go ..... (on) the weekend.
- ..... (In) Tuesday mornings, we have an English lesson.
- We walk to school ..... (for) the morning, but we come home by bus.

SB

## 2- Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



at / in / on / an

at

at 15, Althawra Street - قبل العناوين المحددة برقم المنزل

in

- 1- قبل المدن والدول والقارات **in** Giza / **in** Egypt / **in** Europe.  
 2- قبل وسائل المواصلات التي لا يمكن الحركة / الوقوف فيها. **in** a taxi / **in** a car

on

- 1- قبل الأسطح **on** the bed  
 2- مع تعبيرات معينة **on** the left / **on** the right  
**on** the corner  
 3- مع وسائل المواصلات التي يمكن الحركة / الوقوف فيها. **on** the bus / **on** the train

on

on Nahda Street - امام العناوين

Notes

1- مع العناوين نستخدم حرف الجر (on) للإشارة إلى الشارع ونستخدم حرف الجر (at) لمزيد من التحديد كرقم المنزل مثلاً

- Ex. I live **on** Orman Street.  
 Ex. I live **at** 50, Orman Street.

2- لا نستخدم حروف الجر (in/on/at) قبل كلمات مثل:

(last/next/every/this/all)

- Ex. We travelled abroad **last** month.



# Exercises on Vocabulary

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

## SB, WB & Exams

- Sometimes I go swimming ..... (at) the afternoon.
- Nagwa usually visits her grandparents ..... (for) the weekend.
- I have tennis lessons at the sports centre ..... (on) 9 am.
- I always go to the park ..... (at) Saturday mornings.
- Are you going to the museum ..... (in) Saturday?
- I never go to school ..... (at) Fridays.

## Longman Exercises

- My house is ..... (opposite) to the park.
- She went to work ..... (by) her car.
- The first lesson starts ..... (in) eight a.m.
- Does Hatim go shopping ..... (at) the afternoon?

## Bit by Bit Exercises

- We usually go out ..... (at) holidays.
- We travelled to Tanta ..... (in) the bus.
- We visited the museum ..... (on) 2020.
- The café is ..... (in) the corner of the street.
- The screen is ..... (behind) the box. So the box is under the screen.
- My father went to Assiut ..... (on) a taxi.
- The bank is ..... (next) the cinema.
- The zoo is ..... (on) the café and the bus station.
- The botanical gardens are ..... (for) to the museum.
- The National Bank is ..... (on) 55, Adly Street.
- The museum is ..... (between) to the botanical gardens.
- I think he will visit us ..... (at) three or four days.
- We are going to meet ..... (in next week).

2022



## Speaking

### 1) Asking for and giving directions

السؤال عن وصف الطريق والاتجاهات  
نسال عن الاتجاهات بأحد الصيغ الآتية:

- Where is the (place), please?
- How do I go / get from (place) to (place)?
- How do I go / get to (place), please?
- Could you tell me the way to (place), please?
- How far?

- أين (الاسم مكان) من فضلك؟

- كيف أذهب / أصل من ..... إلى .....؟

- كيف أذهب / أصل إلى ..... من فضلك؟

- هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن الطريق إلى ..... من فضلك؟

- كم بعد؟

### Giving Directions

تستخدم العبارات الآتية لوصف الطريق والاتجاهات:

turn right / left	انعطف يميناً/يساراً	go straight on	اذهب بشكل مستقيم
go / walk past ....	اذهب / سر ماراً بـ	take the second road	اسلك الطريق الثاني
on the right / left	على اليمين / اليسار	on the corner	على الناصية

- Ex. From the sports centre, go straight on for about 20 metres.
- Ex. Take the first road on the left .
- Ex. Go past the botanical gardens and the aquarium and then turn left.
- Ex. Go past the restaurant and the library. The museum is on the left, opposite the zoo.

### 2) Talking about your city or village

التحدث عن مدينتك أو قريتك

#### Question

- Where do you live?  
أين تعيش؟
- Where is Ismailia?  
أين تقع مدينة الإسماعيلية؟
- How many people live in Ismailia?  
كم عدد السكان الذين يعيشون في مدينة الإسماعيلية؟
- What places can we visit near Ismailia?  
ما الأماكن الذي يمكن أن نزارها بالقرب من مدينة الإسماعيلية؟

#### Answer

- I live in Ismailia.  
أعيش في مدينة الإسماعيلية.
- It's between Port Said and Suez.  
تقع بين مدينتي بورسعيد والسويس.
- Around 350,000 people.  
حوالي ثلثمائة وخمسون ألف نسمة.
- Lake Timsah.  
بحيرة التمساح.



## General Exercises

## on Lessons 1 &amp; 2



يوجد تمرينات أصلية للواجب المنزلي وتمارين لطلاب الإعراب الشريف في ملحق الكتاب  
ارجع إلى شرح كيفية الإجابة عن الأسئلة المختلفة في مقدمة الكتاب

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A tourist is talking to a policeman.

Tourist : Could you help me, please?

Policeman : 1 .....

Tourist : How can I get to the museum?

Policeman : 2 .....

Tourist : 3 .....

Policeman : No, it isn't very far.

Tourist : Can I go there on foot?

Policeman : 4 .....

Tourist : 5 .....

Policeman : It takes about ten minutes to reach there.

Tourist : Thank you very much

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**museums - market - special - especially - in - at - special**

Egypt has many beautiful cities. You can visit Aswan 1 ..... in winter.  
You'll like it as soon as you arrive 2 ..... its railway station. There are a lot  
of 3 ..... there. You can also go shopping in its wonderful 4 .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There are a lot of attractive gardens in our city. The word "attractive" means

Longman

a. large      b. interested      c. ugly      d. beautiful

2 "Peaceful" means

a. calm and quiet      b. more than usual  
c. quick and fast      d. noisy and terrible

3 The Nile runs through the city of Aswan. "Runs" here means

البحيرة 2022

a. walks      b. flows      c. jumps      d. travels

4 This man told me how to go to the bank. This means he gave me

a. traffic      b. directions      c. shopping      d. road

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

5. "Unknown" is the opposite of

a. attractive      b. modern      c. natural      d. famous

6. The prefix ..... gives the opposite of a word.

a. a-      b. aqua-      c. un-      d. super

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father got his degrees ..... (on) 1990.

2. I couldn't see the dog although it was standing ..... (in front) me.

3. It was strange when the famous man came ..... (at) a taxi.

4. I got this expensive present ..... (in) my birthday.

5. We moved to live ..... (at) Zahraa Street.



## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of your city"

WB

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- In which city do you live? Where is it?

- Is your city interesting? Why / Why not?

- What places can you go to in your city?

- What about the traffic?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I live in .....

- My city has attractive buildings and .....

- There is/isn't a lot of traffic, so there is/isn't much pollution.

- There are lots of things to do here.

- My favourite place is ..... because .....



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6-8 WB pages 74-75

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

## Key Vocabulary

map	خريطة	ferry	عبرة / معدية
exhibition	معرض	platform	رصيف محطة قطار
valley	وادي	passenger	راكب / مسافر
space	فضاء	electric	كهربى
timetable	جدول مواعيد	floor	طابق (بمبنى - بوسيلة مواصلات)
tram	ترام (قطار قصير يسير داخل الشوارع)	comfortable	مريح

## Vocabulary

engineering works	أعمال هندسية	energy	طاقة
railway	السكة الحديد	type	نوع
rails	قضبان السكة الحديد	transport	وسائل النقل
guard	حارس	including	مشملاً على
central	مركزي	objects	أشياء
environment	البيئة	cross (ed)	يعبر
metro	مترو الأنفاق		

## Definitions

metro	مترو الأنفاق	You can use this to travel in a city, sometimes it travels <b>underground</b> <sup>(1)</sup>	١- تحت الأرض ٢- مسترعى
comfortable	مريح	making you feel <b>relaxed</b> <sup>(2)</sup>	٣- قضبان السكة ٤- تلال
passenger	راكب	someone who travels on a plane, train, etc. and is not driving it	
platform	رصيف	the area in a station where you get on or off a train	
timetable	جدول مواعيد	- You can use this to find when a train or bus leaves - a list of times or dates that show when something will happen	
tram	ترام	a form of transport that uses <b>rails</b> <sup>(3)</sup> like a railway to travel along roads, usually in cities	
valley	وادي	an area of land between two <b>hills</b> <sup>(4)</sup> or mountains	
ferry	معدية	a form of transport that carries people or cars across water	

exhibition

معرض

a place where people can go to see **paintings**<sup>(5)</sup>, photographs, etc.

٥- لوحات فنية  
٦- الاتجاهات

map

خريطة

You can use this to follow **directions**<sup>(6)</sup>

## Synonyms & Antonyms

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
comfortable	مريح	relaxing / easy		uncomfortable	غير مريح
easy	سهل	simple		difficult	صعب
fast	سريع	quick		slow	بطيء
good for the environment	جيد للبيئة	green		polluting	ملوث للبيئة
special	مميز / خاص	particular		normal / usual	عادي
expensive	غالي الثمن	pricey / costly		cheap	رخيص الثمن

## Prefixes & Suffixes

يوجد جميع الجذبات ولواحق الكلمات في مقفلة الكتاب. قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب.

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
un-	opposite تعطي العكس	uncomfortable غير مريح
trans-	move across تعطي معنى «ينقل»	transport وسائل النقل
-ion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	exhibit <sup>ion</sup> معرض
-er	person تكوّن اسم الفاعل	passeng <sup>er</sup> راكب / مسافر
-ic		electric كهربى
-able		comfort <sup>able</sup> مريح
-ing	تحول الاسم / الفعل إلى الصفة n / v → adj	interest <sup>ing</sup> / bor <sup>ing</sup> / pollut <sup>ing</sup> شيق / ممل / ملوث
-ly		nois <sup>ly</sup> صاخب

## Expressions & Prepositions

take + time	تستغرق (وقت)	look out of.....	ينظر للخارج من
get / take a train	يستقل قطار	travel around	يسافر حول
sit at the top	يجلس على القمة	on a train	بالقطار
catch a train	يلحق بقطار	travel on railway	يسافر بالسكة الحديد
follow directions	يتبع الاتجاهات	such as	مثل
leave from	يغادر من (رصيف مثلاً ...)	by metro / train	بالمetro / بالقطار
get back	يعود		



## Conjugation of

## Irregular Verbs

## Present

show	يبين / يعرض
leave	يغادر / يترك
sit	يجلس
catch	يلحق بـ (قطار مثلاً)

## Past simple

showed
left
sat
caught

## Past Participle

shown
left
sat
caught

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب



## Language Notes

## 1) see / hear / feel

يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال إما مفعول ثم فعل مضاف له (ing) أو فعل في المصدر مع اختلاف المعنى كما يلي:

see / hear / feel + object مفعول + v-ing      see / hear / feel + object مفعول + inf.

عند استخدام مفعول يليه فعل بالمصدر بعد هذه الأفعال فهذا معناه أن الفاعل رأى أو سمع أو شعر بشيء من الحدث بالحدث كاملاً.

Ex. I saw Ahmed carrying a heavy box.

Ex. I saw the boys play football.

## 2) platform / pavement

platform      رصيف محطة  
(المكان المخصص لركوب القطار)

Ex. My train leaves from Platform 6.

pavement      رصيف شارع  
(المكان المخصص للمشاة)

Ex. I was waiting for the bus on the pavement.

## 3) trip / journey / voyage / flight

trip (n)      رحلة قصيرة

Ex. We went on a school trip to the Egyptian Museum.

voyage (n)      رحلة بحرية

Ex. It was the first voyage for the young sailor.

journey (n)      رحلة طويلة

Ex. I love going on long journeys.

flight (n)      رحلة جوية

Ex. Hot-air balloon flights are really exciting.

## 4) look forward to

look forward to + (v-ing / noun)      يتطلع إلى / يتوق إلى

Ex. My uncle is coming back from Canada, that's why I'm looking forward to meeting him.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Yesterday, we saw Mahmoud ..... in my street.  
a. walks      b. walked      c. walking      d. to walk
- Let's go to the ..... to take the train to Luxor.  
a. platform      b. pavement      c. stop      d. street
- He went to the tourist company to book a ..... to London.  
a. picnic      b. flight      c. trick      d. platform
- I'm looking forward ..... a good job in the future.  
a. get      b. getting      c. to get      d. to getting



## Reading

[SB page (6)]

استمع إلى النص



Khaled : Hi Fawzi. Would you like to come to the Space Exhibition<sup>(1)</sup> tomorrow? My dad is taking me.

Fawzi : Yes, please! 😊 What time does it start?

Khaled : It starts at 9.30. We're going by metro<sup>(2)</sup>.

Fawzi : Which train shall we get?

Khaled : The first metro train leaves at 8.20 and arrives at 8.30.

Fawzi : That's an hour before the exhibition starts!

Khaled : 😞 Perhaps<sup>(3)</sup> we can leave later.

Fawzi : What time does the exhibition finish?

Khaled : It finishes at 2 pm.

Fawzi : OK. Can we get a train in the afternoon to get back?

Khaled : Yes, one leaves at 1.15 pm and arrives at 1.25 pm.

Fawzi : Great! Let's take that.



١- معرض الفضاء  
٢- مترو الأنفاق  
٣- ربما

Say it correctly

\*exhibition

١ ينطق الجزء المملوء من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (كس) مع عدم نطق h





I love travelling by train because it's **interesting**<sup>(1)</sup> to look out of the window. In one **journey**<sup>(2)</sup> you can see **ferries**<sup>(3)</sup> crossing the Nile, green **valleys**<sup>(4)</sup>, peaceful **villages**<sup>(5)</sup> and busy cities. Trains are often fast and **comfortable**<sup>(6)</sup>, too. Egypt has the oldest **railway**<sup>(7)</sup> in Africa. More than 800 million **passengers**<sup>(8)</sup> travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of railway! I take the train when I visit my grandparents in **Edfu**<sup>(9)</sup>. It's my favourite journey.



Riham

Lots of people in Alexandria use the **tram**<sup>(10)</sup> to travel around the city. It's a great **way**<sup>(11)</sup> to travel! It's **easy to use**<sup>(12)</sup> and it isn't **expensive**<sup>(13)</sup>. Trams are **electric**<sup>(14)</sup> so they are better for the **environment**<sup>(15)</sup> than other types of **transport**<sup>(16)</sup>. Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual: they have **two floors**<sup>(17)</sup>! I like sitting at the **top**<sup>(18)</sup> and watching the streets below.

Hana

## Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

- The passage is mainly about ..... القطعة تتحدث عن ..... في الأساس.  
a. trains                      b. travelling                      c. electricity                      d. railway
- Infer from the text which means of transport is electric. استنتج من النص أي وسائل المواصلات تسير بالكهرباء.
- Summarise Hana's speech in two sentences. لخص كلام هانا في جملتين.

## Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (أجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

- Travelling by trains is interesting and comfortable. السفر بالقطار شيق ومريح.
- Egypt has the oldest railway in Africa. مصر لديها أقدم خط سكة حديد في أفريقيا.
- People in Alexandria use the tram. يستخدم الناس في الإسكندرية الترام.
- It's better for the environment because it is electric. إنه أفضل للبيئة لأنه كهربائي.

- The tram in Alexandria is easy to use and cheap. Some trams has two floors.
- The tram.
1. b) Travelling.

Answers

- 1- شيق
- 2- رحلة طويلة
- 3- عبارات
- 4- وديان
- 5- قرى
- 6- مريح
- 7- السكة الحديد
- 8- مسافرون
- 9- مدينة إدفو
- 10- الترام
- 11- طريقة
- 12- سهل الاستخدام
- 13- غالي
- 14- كهربائي
- 15- البيئة
- 16- وسائل النقل
- 17- طابقين
- 18- القمة / الأعلى

**Man** : Good morning. Where does the train to Aswan leave from?

**Guard**: It leaves from **platform**<sup>(1)</sup> four.

**Man** : Thanks. What time is the next train?

**Guard**: The next train leaves **in five minutes**<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Man** : Great. What time does it arrive in Aswan?

**Guard**: The train usually **takes six hours**<sup>(3)</sup>, so the next train arrives in Aswan at about 4.30.

- 1- رصيف المحطة
- 2- في خلال خمس دقائق
- 3- يستغرق ست ساعات

Some people think that **Sydney**<sup>(1)</sup> in Australia has the best transport in the world. Why? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all parts of the city. Comfortable buses go to the nearest beaches such as **Bondi**<sup>(2)</sup>. If you want to get somewhere quickly, fast trains leave from **Central Station**<sup>(3)</sup> to many places, **including**<sup>(4)</sup> the airport. It is quiet on the water, so ferries are peaceful and they are also easy to use. It is interesting to see the famous buildings from the water, too.



- 1- مدينة سيدني
- 2- شاطئ بوندي
- 3- بالمسترايا
- 4- المحطة المركزية
- 5- بما في ذلك

## Audioscript SB Page (7)

**Nadia** : Which train do we need for Tanta?

**Mother**: We need the train to Alexandria. Look, it stops at Tanta.

**Nadia** : Oh yes. So the next train is at 11:30.

**Mother**: That's right.

**Nadia** : And when does it arrive?

**Mother**: It arrives at 13:00.

**Nadia** : Which platform does it leave from?

**Mother**: It's the Alexandria train, so it leaves from Platform 7.

Good morning. This is the 11:30 train to Luxor. It leaves in five minutes. The train stops at Giza, Assiut and Qena. It doesn't stop at **Al Balyana**<sup>(1)</sup> today because there are **engineering works**<sup>(2)</sup>. The train arrives in Luxor at 23:15.

- 1- مدينة البليانا
- 2- أعمال هندسية



# Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

1. A / An ..... is someone who travels on a plane, train, etc. Longman  
a. platform b. passenger c. valley d. exhibition
2. A ..... is a form of transport that carries people or cars across water.  
a. ferry b. map c. tram d. metro
3. A ..... is the area in a station where you get on or off a train.  
a. timetable b. passenger c. platform d. tram
4. A / An ..... is a place where people can go to see paintings, photographs, objects, etc. Longman  
a. library b. aquarium c. platform d. exhibition

## Synonyms & Antonyms

5. You can find comfortable shopping on the internet. "Comfortable" here is like .....  
a. easy b. slow c. boring d. difficult
6. Travelling by plane is very expensive. The adjective "expensive" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. comfortable b. pricey c. cheap d. fast
7. Do you think this dictionary is easy to use? "Easy" is a synonym for ..... Longman  
a. big b. correct c. simple d. difficult
8. Energy from the sun is good for the environment. This kind of energy is not .....  
a. polluting b. boring c. interesting d. noisy
9. My teacher gave me special advice. "Special" is the opposite of .....  
a. specific b. particular c. noisy d. normal
10. Oh! It's a very expensive mobile phone. The opposite of "expensive" is ..... Longman  
a. far b. simple c. cheap d. costly

## Prefixes & Suffixes

11. The prefix ..... means "move across".  
a. trans- b. super- c. dis- d. un-
12. The suffix "-er" in the word "passenger" refers to the .....  
a. place b. time c. person d. thing
13. We can change "comfort" into an adjective by adding the suffix ..... Longman  
a. -ity b. -able c. -ness d. -ful
14. We add the suffix ..... to get the noun from "exhibit".  
a. -ic b. -able c. -ion d. -y
15. To get the adjective from "electricity", we use the suffix .....  
a. -ic b. -ful c. -ion d. -er

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمرينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

16. To get the opposite of "comfortable", we add the prefix .....  
a. im- b. co- c. ir- d. un-
17. We add the prefix ..... to refer to planes, buses, trams etc.  
a. trans- b. over- c. de- d. in-

## Guessing the meaning

18. We travelled underground to get to the museum. This means we travelled by .....  
a. metro b. plane c. ship d. tram
19. They were able to get to the island easily. This means they used a/an .....  
a. space b. timetable c. object d. map
20. It's nice to sit on this chair. This means that it's .....  
a. unable b. uncomfortable c. disabled d. comfortable
21. His job is to show people, or tourists, our places of interest. He's a/an ..... Longman  
a. officer b. pilot c. guide d. tourist

## Language

### The present simple tense

• زمن المضارع البسيط

#### Form التكوين

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع

inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

inf. مصدر الفعل + s / es / ies

Ex. Sara usually goes to school on time.

Ex. We always get home early.

#### Usage الاستخدام

Ex. The sun rises in the east.

1- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط ليعبر عن حقائق:

2- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط ليعبر عن عادات في المضارع ويستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية:

• always دائماً • usually عادة • every كل  
• sometimes أحياناً • never أبداً • often غالباً

- تذكر أن ظروف التكرار تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (v. to be).

Ex. I usually go to school on foot.

Ex. He is always late for school.

3- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حدث في المستقبل مرتبط بجدول مواعيد محددة مثل مواعيد الطائرات والقطارات والحافلات والسينما والمسرح والتلفاز والامتحانات ومباريات كرة القدم وكل ما هو مرتبط بجدول مواعيد.

Ex. The train leaves at 9 pm.

Ex. What time does your bus arrive?

#### Negative النفي

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع

don't + Inf.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

doesn't + Inf.

Ex. They don't go out on Mondays.

Ex. Ali doesn't work hard.



## Question السؤال

• للسؤال بـ «هل...؟» في زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم **Do / Does** كما يلي:

**Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع** → **inf...?**

**Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد** → **inf...?**

Ex. Do you usually watch TV after nine?

- Yes, I do. الإجابة في الإثبات. - No, I don't. الإجابة في النفي.

Ex. Does he sometimes text his friends?

- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة السابقة مع وضع كلمة الاستفهام في أول السؤال.

Ex. When do you get home? - I get home at 7.

• للسؤال بـ **What time** انتبه للآتي:

Ex. What time is the film?

Ex. What time does the film start?

## Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تعريجات اضافية للواحد المبزلى وتعريجات لطلاب  
الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

- The library ..... (open) at 8.30 in the morning. **SB**
- When ..... (do) this plane arrive in Cairo? **SB**
- The film hasn't finished. It ..... (ended) at nine o'clock. **SB**
- Our train ..... (to arrive) at 7 am tomorrow. **السبوت 2022**
- We ..... (usual) watch television in the evening. **الصنوعة 2022**
- You must watch this film. It ..... (start) at nine this evening. **نيسونيف 2022**

## Longman Exercises

- Let's hurry! The train ..... (leave) at 8.00.
- What time ..... (is) the first lesson start?
- When ..... (does) the next fashion exhibition?
- The train ..... (isn't) stop at Al Minya today because there are engineering works.
- Which platform does the train to Alexandria ..... (leaves) from?

## Bit by Bit Exercises

- Noha ..... (don't) play music.
- What time ..... (does) the flight to Paris?
- They ..... (doesn't) go to school on Fridays.
- Mai ..... (always is) lazy in the morning.
- A: When ..... (do) the lesson finish? B: Tomorrow at 10.

- They usually ..... (arrives) at school late.
- ..... (Is) Nada stay up late on holidays?
- The sun ..... (never) rises in the east.
- What time ..... (does) the end of the film?
- We often ..... (visits) our aunt at the weekend.
- We usually ..... (watching) a movie on Saturday night.
- He ..... (don't) speak French. He only speaks English.
- A: When ..... (did) the train to Cairo leave? B: Tomorrow at nine.
- During the science lessons, we usually ..... (does) experiments.
- A: How often ..... (are) you go to the aquarium? B: Once a month.
- The film ..... (does) tomorrow at eight on Channel Two.
- Dad ..... (doesn't) plays chess.

## Speaking

## 1) Discussing the best way to travel

مناقشة أفضل وسيلة للسفر

## Question

Which way do you like to travel?  
Why?

بأي طريقة تود أن تسافر؟ لماذا؟

## Answer

I like the train because it's comfortable  
and it isn't expensive.

أحب القطار لأنه مريح وغير مكلف.

I prefer the tram. It's more fun.

أنا أفضل الترام. إنه أكثر متعة.

## 2) Discussing timetables and public transport

مناقشة جداول المواعيد والمواصلات العامة

## Question

- What time does the train to Luxor  
leave? في أي وقت يغادر القطار إلى الأقصر؟

- Which platform does it leave from?  
من أي رصيف يغادر؟

- How long does the journey take?  
كم تستغرق الرحلة؟

- When does it arrive in Luxor?  
متى يصل إلى الأقصر؟

## Answer

- It leaves at 6:00 a.m.

يغادر في السادسة صباحاً.

- It leaves from Platform 5.

يغادر من الرصيف رقم خمسة.

- It takes around 6 hours.

تستغرق الرحلة حوالي ست ساعات.

- It arrives at 12 p.m.

يصل الساعة الثانية عشر ظهراً.



## General Exercises

### on Lessons 3 & 4



يرجع إلى شرح كيفية الإجابة عن الأسئلة المختلفة في مقدمة الكتاب

① Finish the following dialogue:

Malak is talking to Hagar about transport.

**Malak** Which way do you like to travel, Hagar?

Hagar : 0

**Malak** : Why do you like travelling by train?

Jawab : 2

Malak : 3

**Hagar :** In the mid-year holiday, I usually travel to Luxor and Aswan.

**Malak :** Great! ④ \_\_\_\_\_?

**Hagar :** It takes about six hours to arrive in Luxor.

**Malak :** Where does the train usually leave from?

Hogar : 6

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**train - platform - arrive - passengers - timetable - arrives**

I travel to Alexandria every summer. I usually travel by ① ..... When I

② ..... at the station, I have a look at the ③ ....., then I book a ticket. There are many ④ ..... travelling, too. The journey takes around three hours from Cairo.

**3** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/an ..... is a list of times or dates that show when something will happen.

a. exhibition      b. timetable      c. tablet      d. map

2. "Special" gives the same meaning as \_\_\_\_\_

a. usual      b. normal      c. particular      d. ordinary

3. To get the adjective from "noise", we add the suffix \_\_\_\_\_.

a. -er      b. -ic      c. -ful      d. -y

4. The camels are walking between the two mountains, This means they are walking in a .....

a. valley      b. river      c. floor      d. bus

### Lessons 3 & 4

4 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. Ali's father ..... (doesn't) an engineer. He's a teacher.

2. Old's mum ..... (goes sometimes) shopping in the evening.

3. What ----- (do) your uncle do?

4. What time does the school bus ..... (leaves)?

5. He always gets up early. He is \_\_\_\_\_ (usually) lazy.

**5** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of your visit to Tanta"

**SB** محاب عنه في آخر الوحدة



# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9-11 WB pages 76-78

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.



استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

indoors	في الداخل (أي داخل مبنى)	pottery
jewellery	مجوهرات	century

أواني فخارية / الفخار  
قرن (١٠٠ عام)

## Vocabulary

park	متنزه / حديقة عامة	gardener	بستاني «جنايني»
review	مقال نقدي	wild	بري
online	عبر الإنترنت	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
invitation	دعوة	share (d)	يشارك
weekdays	أيام الأسبوع	practise (d)	يتدرب / يمارس
lovely	جميل - محبب	disagree (d)	يرفض
politely	بأدب	open (ed) (adj)	يفتح - مفتوح
forest	غابة	protect (ed)	يحمي
bridge	جسر (كوبري)	prefer (red)	يفضل

## Definitions

indoors	في الداخل (أي داخل مبنى)	inside a building	١- جميل ٢- خاتم
jewellery	مجوهرات	pretty expensive things that people wear, such as rings, necklaces, etc.	٣- قلادة - عقد ٤- أواني
pottery	أواني فخارية / الفخار	pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay	
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	a period of one hundred years	

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
indoors	في الداخل (أي داخل مبنى)	inside		outdoors	خارج (مبنى)
lovely	جميل	beautiful		terrible	سيئ / فظيع
politely	بأدب	gently		impolitely	بوقاحة
protect	يحمي	guard / keep		destroy	يدمر
disagree	يرفض	refuse		agree	يوافق

## Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	disagree
im-	تكوّن اسم الفاعل	impolite
-er	تحوّل الاسم / الفعل إلى الصفة	gardener
-ful	n/v → adj	careful
-ly	adj → adv	politely

## Expressions & Prepositions

make sure	يتأكد	don't mind + V-ing.	لا يمانع .....
make lunch	تجهز الغداء	meet up	يتقابل
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	find out	يكتشف - يعرف
plant a forest	يزرع غابة	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
Be careful!	كن حريصاً	learn about	يتعلم عن
take a boat	يستقل قارب	on an island	على جزيرة
practise English	يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية	on weekdays	في أيام الأسبوع
get married to	يتزوج	on this time	في هذا الوقت

## Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
get	got	got
wear	wore	worn
send	sent	sent
bring	brought	brought
hurt	hurt	hurt
become	became	become

## Language Notes

① would prefer / would like / would love + to + Inf.	• would ('d) like / love = want يريد
• would ('d) prefer يفضل	Ex. We d like / want to meet the manager now.
Ex. I'd prefer to go to the sports centre.	



## 2) take / spend

• take + a period of time + to + inf  
يستغرق ..... لكي

Ex. It takes about an hour to get to Giza by car.

• spend + a period of time + V-ing.  
يقضي ..... في

Ex. We spent three hours playing outside.

## 3) Indoor / indoors – outdoor / outdoors

• Indoor (adj) داخلي } + noun اسم  
• outdoor (adj) خارجي

Ex. Handball is an indoor sport.

• Indoors (adv) بالداخل (بداخل مبنى)  
• outdoors (adv) بالخارج (بداخل مبنى)  
لا تتبع هذه الأحوال بإسم.

Ex. We played football outdoors.

## 4) century / decade

• century (100 years) قرن (100 عام)  
Ex. This museum was built in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

• decade (10 years) عقد (10 أعوام)  
Ex. Ali is 32 years old. He is in the third decade.

## Check on Language Notes

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I'd like ..... fish with rice, please.  
a. have                      b. to have                      c. to having                      d. has
- It took one hour ..... the living room.  
a. clean                      b. cleans                      c. to clean                      d. cleaning
- I met my friends .....  
a. outdoor                      b. door                      c. indoor                      d. outdoors
- The Eiffel Tower was built in the 19<sup>th</sup> .....  
a. century                      b. age                      c. decade                      d. day

## Audioscript

SB Page (9)

استمع إلى النصوص



Basel : Hi, Taher. Would you like to meet up<sup>(1)</sup> tomorrow?

Taher : Hi Basel. That would be great. Shall we go to the sports centre?

Basel : I'm not sure. I hurt<sup>(2)</sup> my leg, so I can't play sport at the moment.

Taher : Oh dear! Shall we go to the park, then?

Basel : Maybe, but it's a long way to walk. I'd prefer to go somewhere<sup>(3)</sup> indoors.



١- تتقابل

٢- يجرع

٣- مكان ما

Taher : Oh, OK. How about the museum?

Basel : Perhaps ... but it's always busy on Saturdays.

Taher : OK, so what would you like to do?

Basel : I think it would be nice to play a computer game. There's a new one which lets you practise<sup>(4)</sup> your English.

Taher : That sounds like a great idea. Why don't you come to my house?

Basel : I'd love to! Thanks, Taher. See you tomorrow!

WB Page (76)

Injy : Would you like to meet up tomorrow, Lina?

Lina : That would be great, Injy. Shall we go to the museum?

Injy : I'm not sure. I think the museum's closed tomorrow.

Lina : OK. Shall we go to the shops, then?

Injy : I'd prefer to go somewhere outside. How about the park?

Lina : I like the park, but I think it would be nice to go on a ferry on the river. Would you like to do that?

Injy : Yes, I'd love to! Why don't we meet by the bridge?



## Reading

SB page (10)

Visit El-Orman Garden!<sup>(1)</sup>

- Learn about how Khedive<sup>(2)</sup> Ismail asked a famous French<sup>(3)</sup> gardener<sup>(4)</sup> to plant a forest<sup>(5)</sup> in the nineteenth century<sup>(6)</sup>.
  - Find out how the Orman Garden became famous in 1910.
  - Learn how the gardens protect<sup>(7)</sup> many important plants and trees.
  - See plants, trees and flowers that grow nowhere else in Egypt.
- El-Dokki Street, Giza



١- حديقة الورمان  
٢- خديوي  
٣- فرنسي  
٤- بستاني  
٥- غابة  
٦- القرن التاسع عشر  
٧- يحمي



## New Message

Hi Azza

I am looking forward to our trip to the El-Orman Garden! The garden opens at 9 am, and it takes about an hour to get there by car. What time shall we come to get you?

The online reviews<sup>(1)</sup> are fantastic. The garden is very big and there's lots to see. Make sure<sup>(2)</sup> that you wear comfortable<sup>(3)</sup> shoes!

I'm sending you a map of the garden. You can see wild<sup>(4)</sup> flowers and plants from all over the country. There is also a small lake and a museum. What would you like to see first?

We could bring some food with us or we could go to a nearby café for lunch. What would you prefer? There is also a lovely shop near the garden that sells pottery<sup>(5)</sup> and jewellery<sup>(6)</sup>!

See you on Saturday,

Reem

- ١- مقالات نقدية  
٢- تأكد  
٣- مريح  
٤- برقي  
٥- ألواني فخارية  
٦- مجوهرات

## Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابات أسفل)

1. The passage is about .....

- a online reviews      b comfortable shoes  
c El-Orman Garden      d pottery and jewellery

2. Infer from the text what the garden has.

استنتج من النص ماذا لدى الحديقة.

3. Summarise the second paragraph in one sentence.

لخص الفقرة الثانية في جملة واحدة.

## Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (اجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. El-Orman Garden has lots to see.

هناك العديد لتراه في حديقة الأورمان.

2. You can see wild flowers and plants there.

يمكنك رؤية زهور ونباتات برية هناك.

3. There's a small lake and a museum.

يوجد بحيرة صغيرة ومتحف.

4. There is a lovely shop that sells pottery and jewellery.

يوجد محل جميل يبيع الألوان الفخارية والمجوهرات.

3. We should wear comfortable shoes because the garden is very big.

2. Wild flowers - plants - a small lake and a museum.

1. c) El-Orman Garden.

Answers

## New Message

From : Munir

To : Hazem

Dear Hazem

Thank you for asking me to visit the lake. I would love to go there! I will be ready at 7 am, so you can come to get me anytime after that.

Yes, I have some comfortable shoes. I don't mind<sup>(1)</sup> walking round the lake. I like walking in the country. To answer your question,

perhaps we should take a boat on the lake first, before it is too hot!

My mother is going to make me some lunch to take with us, but she always makes lots. I'm sure there will be enough for us to share<sup>(2)</sup>!

See you on Saturday.

Yours, Munir

- ١- لا يمانع  
٢- يشارك

I'm Tarek and I live in a small village. On weekdays, there are two buses a day to the nearest city. The first bus is at 7 am and the second one leaves late in the afternoon. My father doesn't take the early bus because it is very slow. The traffic is always bad in the mornings. At the weekend, there is only one bus, which goes at 8 am. There is not much traffic then, so it arrives in the city at 8.30 am. There is a market in the city at this time, so I often take this bus with my mother.

## Videoscript

Aswan is a beautiful city in the south of Egypt. The River Nile runs through the city and there are lots of things to see and do.

Many people visit the Aswan Botanical Garden when they are in the city because it is very peaceful here. The garden is on El Nabatat Island<sup>(1)</sup>, opposite the famous Elephantine Island<sup>(2)</sup> in the River Nile.

It's open every day from eight o'clock in the morning to five or six o'clock in the afternoon. To visit, you can go by ferry or even by felucca<sup>(3)</sup>.



- ١- جزيرة النباتات  
٢- جزيرة فيلة  
٣- الفلوكة (قارب صغير)



Another place to visit in Aswan is the Nubian Museum<sup>(4)</sup>. It is between Al Fanadek Street and El Sadat Road. Some visitors to Aswan take a taxi to visit the museum.

You can visit the museum every day. It opens in the morning at nine o'clock and it closes at one o'clock for lunch. It opens again at five o'clock until nine or ten o'clock in the evening.

People come here to learn all about the life, culture<sup>(5)</sup> and history of the people in Nubia<sup>(6)</sup>. After they visit the museum, some people take a boat to visit a real Nubian village near Aswan. What can people see and do in your town or city? Are there any botanical gardens or other interesting places to visit?

٤- متحف النوبة  
٥- ثقافة  
٦- النوبة

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

- ..... is pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made of clay.  
a. Jewellery b. Pottery c. Gardens d. Reviews
- ..... is the expensive things people wear, such as rings, necklaces, etc.

Longman

- Jewellery b. Wood c. Mud d. Clay
- A / An ..... is a period of one hundred years.  
a. age b. decade c. century d. journey

Longman

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- The children play indoors. The synonym of "indoors" is .....  
a. inside b. beside c. outside d. side
- I disagree with you. The word "disagree" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. agree b. refuse c. greet d. accept
- It's important to protect our gardens. The synonym of "protect" is .....  
a. love b. damage c. keep d. destroy
- The view of the Nile is lovely. The antonym of "lovely" is .....  
a. nice b. careful c. useful d. terrible
- Omar talks to his teachers politely. "Politely" is the opposite of .....  
a. impolitely b. lovely c. carefully d. hardly

### Prefixes & Suffixes

- We add the prefix ..... to the word "agree" to give the opposite.  
a. mis- b. im- c. dis- d. ir-
- We all like Rami; he's very polite. We add the prefix ..... to get the antonym for "polite".  
a. im- b. un- c. dis- d. -in
- We turn the verb "care" into an adjective by adding the suffix .....  
a. -ly b. -ful c. -ive d. -ous

Longman

- To get the noun for a person who looks after gardens, add the suffix .....  
a. -er b. -or c. -ist d. -ian

Longman

- The suffix "....." gives the adverb from "polite".  
a. -ly b. -er c. -ery d. -ful

### Guessing the meaning

- ..... means inside a building.  
a. Outdoor b. Outdoors c. Door d. Indoors
- We've got someone to plant flowers and trees in our garden. This means we've got a .....  
a. governor b. carpenter c. gardener d. guard
- Soha wears nice gold things. This means she wears .....  
a. pottery b. jewellery c. shoes d. scarves
- This museum contains things made of clay. This means it contains .....  
a. jewellery b. paintings c. forests d. pottery
- This old man is a hundred years old. This means he has lived for a/an .....  
a. century b. history c. age d. year

## Speaking

### Making suggestions

- Would you like to + inf. ....?
- Shall we + inf. ....?
- How / What about + n / v-ing. ....?
- Why don't you + inf. ....?
- It would be nice to + inf. ....

### Suggestion

- Would you like to meet up this evening?  
هل تريد أن تتقابل هذا المساء؟
- Shall we go to the swimming pool?  
هل نذهب إلى حمام السباحة؟
- How / What about the park / going to the park?  
ما رأيك في الذهاب إلى الحديقة؟
- Why don't you come to my house?  
لما لا تأتي لمنزلي؟
- It would be nice to play some sport.  
سيكون من اللطيف أن نمارس بعض الرياضة.

### Response

- Agreeing الموافقة
  - I'm sure. / That sounds like a great idea.  
أنا متأكد / تبدو كفكرة عظيمة.
  - That would be great.  
سيكون ذلك رائعاً.
  - Yes, I'd love to.  
نعم، أود ذلك.
- Disagreeing عدم الموافقة
  - I'm not sure.  
لست متأكد.



## General Exercises

## on Lessons 5&amp;6



يوجد لغويات إضافية لتلاميذ المدارس وتحتوي على أسئلة متنوعة في مختلف النواحي  
ارجع إلى شرح كيفية الإجابة عن الأسئلة المختلفة في مقدمة الكتاب

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ramy is talking to Basel.

Basel : Would you like to meet up tomorrow?

Ramy : What a good idea! ① .....

Basel : I'm not sure. I'd prefer to go somewhere outside.

Ramy : What about going to the sports centre?

Basel : ② .....

Ramy : Where shall we meet?

Basel : ③ .....

Ramy : ④ .....

Basel : We can meet at 6.

Ramy : ⑤ .....

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

was - jewellery - protect - centuries - is - destroy

The Egyptian Museum ① ..... very famous all over the world. It contains objects from ② ..... ago. It also contains ③ ..... made by ancient Egyptians. Egypt puts ancient things in museums to ④ ..... them.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Disagree" is the synonym of .....

- a. agree      b. refuse      c. destroy      d. protect

2. The prefix "dis-" is added to a word to form the .....

- a. opposite      b. synonym      c. meaning      d. adjective

3. To get the adjective from a noun or a verb, we use the suffix .....

- a. -er      b. -ly      c. -ful      d. -ist

## 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about a visit to El-Orman Garden"

تكتب عند في آخر الوحدة

Handwriting practice lines for the story.

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What do you want to visit?      - When will you go there?
- Who will you go with?      - What will you see there?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm looking forward to visiting .....
- My family and I .....
- I'm looking forward to seeing .....



# Review

## Vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	café	مقهى (كافيه)	map	خريطة
museum	متحف	market	سوق	exhibition	معرض
peaceful	هادئ	sports centre	مركز رياضي	especially	خصوصاً/خاصة
bank	مصرف/بنك	station	محطة	space	فضاء
lake	بحيرة	monument	أثر تاريخي	timetable	جدول مواعيد
pottery	أواني فخار / الفخار	valley	وادي	passenger	راكب
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	indoors	في الداخل (أي داخل مبنى)	electric	كهربائي
comfortable	مريح	jewellery	مجوهرات	platform	رصيف محطة قطار
library	مكتبة	traffic	حركة المرور	floor	طابق
tram	ترام	aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية
ferry	عبارة/معدية				

## Language

### 1- Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

in	in May / in winter / in 1999 / in the 1900s / in the 21 <sup>st</sup> century / in the morning / in three days / in five minutes
at	at 9 o'clock / at night / at the weekend / at Christmas / at lunchtime / at the moment / at present / at the same time / at dinner / at the age of .....
on	on Monday / on 10 <sup>th</sup> November / on Tuesday morning / on holiday on birthday / on time

### 2- Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

next to	بجوار	under	تحت	behind	خلف
in front of	أمام	past	مروءاً بـ	above	فوق
near	بالقرب من	opposite	مقابل	between	بين
at	at 15, Althawra Street				
in	in Giza / in Egypt / in Europe / in a car				
on	on the bed / on the right / on the corner / on the bus				

### 3- The present simple tense (من المضارع البسيط)

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	(كلمة استفهام) Do + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf. + s / es / ies	(كلمة استفهام) Does + فاعل + inf.?

Ex. The Earth goes around the sun.

Ex. Habiba always gets up early.

Ex. The plane arrives at 8 pm.

## Speaking

### 1 Asking for and giving directions

السؤال عن وصف الطريق والاتجاهات

- Where is the (place), please?
- How do I go / get from (place) to (place)?
- How do I go / get to (place), please?
- Could you tell me the way to (place), please?
- How far?

- نسأل عن الاتجاهات بأحد الصيغ الآتية:

- تستخدم العبارات الآتية لوصف الطريق والاتجاهات:

turn right / left	on the / right / left ...	take the second road
go / walk past ....	go straight on	on the corner

### 2 Talking about your city or village

التحدث عن مدينتك أو قريتك

#### Question

#### Answer

- 1- Where do you live?
- 2- How many people live there?

- I live in .....
- Around ..... people live there.

### 3 Discussing the best way to travel

مناقشة أفضل وسيلة سفر

#### Question

#### Answer

Which way do you like to travel?  
Why?

I like the train because it's  
comfortable and it isn't expensive.  
I prefer the tram. It's more fun.



## 4 Discussing timetables and public transport

مناقشة جداول المواعيد والمواصلات العامة

## Question

- What time does the train to Luxor leave?
- Which platform does it leave from?
- How long does the journey take?
- When does it arrive in Luxor?

## Answer

- It leaves at 6:00 a.m.
- It leaves from Platform 5.
- It takes around 6 hours.
- It arrives at 12 p.m.

## 5 Making suggestions

تقديم الاقتراحات

- لتقديم اقتراحات نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- Would you like to + inf. ....?
- Shall we + inf. ....?
- How / What about + n / v-ing ....?
- Why don't you + inf. ....?
- It would be nice to + inf. ....

## Response الرد

## Agreeing الموافقة

- I'm sure. / That sounds like a great idea.
- That would be great.
- Yes, I'd love to.

## Disagreeing الرفض بأدب

- I'm not sure.

## General Exercises on Unit 1

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Shaimaa is asking Leila how to go to Al-Azhar Park.

Shaimaa : Hello, Leila. Can you help me?

Leila : Sure. ① .....

Shaimaa : I want to go to Al-Azhar Park.

Leila : ② ..... You can't go on foot.

Shaimaa : What do you suggest?

Leila : ③ .....

Shaimaa : I don't like buses. ④ .....

Leila : A taxi is a good idea. It's more comfortable and fast.

Shaimaa : ⑤ .....

Leila : You're welcome.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 went - restaurants - bank - go - café - aquarium

When you ① ..... to Alexandria, you will be able to do many things. You can eat at nice ② ..... Also you can have a drink at a ③ ..... There are lots of them. You can see wonderful fish at the ④ ..... Alexandria is a fantastic city.

2 watching - aquarium - go - home - are going - catching

Longman

I like to spend a nice time with my family at the weekend. We usually ① ..... to the park, but sometimes we go to the ② ..... I love ③ ..... the fish there. We usually return ④ ..... in the evening.

3 reserve - busy - lives - live - shopping - the shopping

Longman

I have a nice friend called Judy. She ① ..... in Aswan. Aswan is a ② ..... city, with about one and a half million people. At the weekend, Judy usually does different activities. She goes ③ ..... Also, she likes going to the natural ④ .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A / An ..... is a list of times or dates that show when something will happen.

- a. exhibition      b. timetable      c. platform      d. map

2. A ..... is a form of transport that uses rails like a railway to travel along roads, usually in cities.

- a. ferry      b. bus      c. tram      d. motorbike

3. We should wear comfortable shoes when we go to gardens. "Comfortable" is a synonym to .....

- a. uncomfortable      b. relaxing      c. hard      d. boring

4. The antonym of the word "indoors" is .....

- a. outdoors      b. inside      c. beside      d. outline

5. I'd prefer to live in a peaceful village. "Peaceful" is similar in meaning to .....

- a. noisy      b. dirty      c. calm      d. polluted

6. Munir is a polite boy. We use the suffix ..... to turn "polite" into an adverb.

- a. -ive      b. -er      c. -ing      d. -ly

7. To get the adjective from "peace", we add the suffix .....

- a. -al      b. -ive      c. -ful      d. -ous

الترجمة 2022



8. The prefix ..... gives the opposite of "agree".  
a. trans- b. en- c. un- d. dis-
9. In Luxor, tourists enjoy seeing ancient places. This means they enjoy seeing .....  
a. monuments b. stations c. aquariums d. gardens
10. A lot of people were waiting for the next train. This means there were a lot of .....  
a. timetables b. passengers c. drivers d. carriages

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You must watch this film. It ..... (start) at nine this evening. بلى سوفيف 2022
2. The museum is a good place to go to ..... (in) the weekend. مبا 2022
3. I couldn't find a seat ..... (by) the train yesterday.
4. Mona ..... (ever) plays video games.

#### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to an interesting place" محاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What place did you visit? - How interesting was the place?
- What did you see / enjoy there? - How long have you been there?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I visited .....
- It was a very interesting place because.....
- I saw / enjoyed ..... there.
- I have been there for.....

## Al Azhar Exercises



### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ali are talking about the tram.

Ali : What do you use to travel around the city?

Omar : ① .....

Ali : ② .....

Omar : No, it is cheap.

Ali : Why do you prefer the tram?

Omar : ③ .....

### 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your brother says to you, " Shall we go to the park"? You like the idea.  
.....
2. Your friend suggests going to the botanical gardens. You don't like the idea.  
.....
3. Your friend suggests going to the museum and you agree.  
.....
4. Your friend asks you which way you like to travel from Cairo to Alex.  
.....
5. You are at a museum. Someone asks you how they can go to the park.  
.....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### A Vocabulary

#### SB & WB Exercises

1. Can you see all those boats on the .....?  
a. air b. lake c. sky d. floor
2. A ..... takes people across water.  
a. ferry b. tram c. map d. floor
3. The children played ..... today, because it was very hot outside.  
a. abroad b. overseas c. indoors d. outdoors
4. Trams are ..... , so they are better for the environment than other types of transport.  
a. ancient b. noisy c. messy d. electric



5. The Suez Canal runs ..... the city before it reaches the sea.  
a. through      b. for      c. after      d. over
6. Are you going to the museum ..... Saturday?  
a. at      b. on      c. in      d. for

### Longman Exercises

7. He played very well, but he lost the game. He was .....  
a. lucky      b. unfriendly      c. friendly      d. unlucky
8. To find the nearest bank, go ..... on. It's next to the park.  
a. street      b. opposite      c. straight      d. long
9. .... cars are environmentally friendly means of transport.  
a. Electrician      b. Electricity      c. Electrical      d. Electric
10. Some of the trams in Alexandria have two .....  
a. floors      b. flours      c. flies      d. flowers
11. Squash is my ..... sport. I like it very much.  
a. worst      b. favourite      c. bad      d. favour
12. Ahmad was late ..... school because he got up late.  
a. with      b. from      c. for      d. at
13. On my way to school, I go ..... the post office every day.  
a. next      b. between      c. front      d. past
14. We use the ..... to cross the lake near our school.  
a. car      b. ferry      c. plane      d. bike
15. Always try to be ..... to avoid making mistakes.  
a. unattractive      b. attractive      c. careful      d. careless
16. I'd like ..... cup of coffee, please.  
a. other      b. other's      c. others      d. another
17. At home, my brothers usually ..... turns doing the housework.  
a. take      b. make      c. do      d. give
18. A nature ..... is a safe place where we keep and protect animals and plants.  
a. farm      b. soil      c. reserve      d. desert
19. We like our new house; it's really .....  
a. uncomfortable      b. comfortable      c. crowded      d. excited
20. Hurry up or you won't ..... the train.  
a. catch      b. miss      c. lose      d. make
21. Let's ..... to the beach and have a nice time.  
a. going      b. gone      c. go      d. goes
22. We usually play football ..... We play it in the open air.  
a. indoor      b. indoors      c. outdoor      d. outdoors
23. Tourists usually use a ..... to follow directions.  
a. map      b. cap      c. metro      d. driver
24. I like to play ..... games. I don't like going out.  
a. outdoor      b. indoor      c. outdoors      d. indoors

25. My friend has ..... a suggestion to spend the weekend in the village.  
a. done      b. agreed      c. made      d. gone
26. Don't believe him; I have found ..... that he is a liar.  
a. at      b. from      c. of      d. out
27. I have sent Yasser a/an ..... to my sister's wedding party. I'm sure he will come.  
a. invention      b. invitation      c. reply      d. information

### Bit by Bit Exercises

28. The ..... which we visited had great paintings from the past.  
a. sports centre      b. museum      c. aquarium      d. bank
29. We used to go to a/an ..... to play sports.  
a. aquarium      b. library      c. museum      d. sports centre
30. It's really noisy in Cairo, but it is very ..... here in Ismailia.  
a. messy      b. far      c. peaceful      d. terrible
31. He is good at many subjects ..... English and maths.  
a. especially      b. terribly      c. awfully      d. loudly
32. The travellers went to the ..... to take the bus to Helwan.  
a. museum      b. station      c. sports centre      d. aquarium
33. We went to a space ..... where we learnt about the science of space.  
a. library      b. hall      c. corridor      d. exhibition
34. The journey to Tanta won't take long as the train is really .....  
a. slow      b. horrible      c. fast      d. helpless
35. That film is really popular because it is very .....  
a. boring      b. interesting      c. slow      d. expensive
36. A: How can man travel to ..... ? B: By rockets.  
a. spice      b. spoon      c. stay      d. space
37. .... is always expensive because it is usually made of gold.  
a. Jewellery      b. Rock      c. Pottery      d. Paper
38. The museum had useful drawings, paintings, and .....  
a. butter      b. bubble      c. battery      d. pottery
39. El-Orman Gardens ..... many important plants and trees.  
a. damage      b. hurt      c. protect      d. remove
40. A lot of people buy that mobile because it is easy .....  
a. use      b. to use      c. using      d. for using
41. Fruit and vegetables are cheaper in the ..... than in the supermarket.  
a. market      b. café      c. bank      d. museum
42. Aya studies really hard. She looks forward to ..... a doctor.  
a. be      b. being      c. is      d. was



## B Language

43. Tuesday afternoon, I often go out.  
a. At b. On c. In d. For
44. They are waiting for you ..... the bus station.  
a. over b. from c. at d. with
45. I had lots of fun ..... my birthday.  
a. on b. in c. with d. at
46. The show ..... on April 15<sup>th</sup> and finishes on May 15<sup>th</sup>.  
a. start b. starts c. starting d. is starts
47. The film ..... at quarter to nine.  
a. is finishes b. finishing c. finishes d. going to finish
48. My uncle's shop ..... tomorrow at six.  
a. is close b. closed c. closing d. closes
49. What time does the bank ..... tomorrow?  
a. open b. opens c. opened d. opening
50. We visited Italy ..... 2020.  
a. on b. in c. at d. with
51. When does the concert .....?  
a. beginning b. begins c. began d. begin
52. He'll be in Egypt soon. His plane ..... at 6:45.  
a. arrived b. arriving c. arrives d. is arrived

## 4 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your city"

محتاج عنه قبل تمارين الآخر

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Where do you live? - What does your city look like?
- What activities do you do in your city?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I live in ..... - My city is .....
- I can do many things in my city such as .....

## Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories &amp; Al Azhar Paragraphs

Writing Skills

## 1- A review of my city (Lessons 1 &amp; 2)

I live in Ismailia. Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive buildings and interesting monuments. There isn't a lot of traffic. There isn't much pollution. There are lots of things to do here. Ismailia has a beautiful lake and wonderful beaches. On Tuesday mornings, I have football lessons at the sports centre at 8 am. Sometimes I go swimming in the afternoon with my friends. There are also some interesting museums in Ismailia!

## 2- A review of my visit to Tanta

(Lessons 3 &amp; 4)

My mother and I are travelling to Tanta tomorrow. We have arranged to visit the Space Exhibition. We are getting the first train. It leaves at 8.00 from Misr Station. It leaves from Platform 5. It arrives in Tanta at 11.00. That's half an hour before the exhibition starts! The exhibition finishes at 3 o'clock. After that, we are taking a train to get back. It leaves at 4.00 from Tanta Station. It arrives at Cairo Station at 7.00.

## 3- A short story about a visit to El-

Orman Garden (Lessons 5 &amp; 6)

I'm looking forward to visiting El-Orman Garden! I think it is very interesting. My family and I are going there on Tuesday. The garden protects many important plants and trees. I'm looking forward to seeing them. They grow nowhere else in Egypt. We are taking the bus to go there. It leaves at 9.00 am. It takes half

an hour to get there. We could go to a nearby café for lunch or we could bring food with us.

## 4- A review of a visit to an interesting place (General Exercises)

Last week, I went with some friends to visit the Pyramids. I was so pleased to visit them. I was excited when I saw how they are huge. They are amazing. The ancient Egyptians were great. I saw the "Sun Boats" and enjoyed riding camels. I bought souvenirs for my family. We spent five hours there. Before we left, we had visited the Sphinx. It is a wonderful statue. I would never forget this visit.

## 5- My city

(Al Azhar)

I live in Giza which is near the Nile. It is beautiful. There are attractive buildings. There is a lot of traffic so there is much pollution. There are lots of things to do here. On Monday afternoons, I go to the club with my family.

## 6- A short story about an invitation to an exhibition (Test)

My family and I are travelling to Luxor tomorrow. We are visiting a famous exhibition. We are travelling there by plane. It leaves at 9.00 from Cairo. It leaves from Cairo Airport. It arrives in Luxor at about 10.00. We will have two hours before the exhibition starts. We can visit the popular places then. After that, we are taking a plane to get back to Cairo. I hope it will be a nice day.





يوجد اختبار على كل وحدتين في ملحق الكتاب

### A Language Functions

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue

Tamer is talking to Khaled.

Tamer : Where're you going, Khaled?

Khaled : ① .....

Tamer : Are you travelling somewhere?

Khaled : ② .....

Tamer : Where has your brother been?

Khaled : ③ .....

Tamer : ④ .....?

Khaled : The train arrives at 6 o'clock.

Tamer : Can I come with you?

Khaled : ⑤ .....

### B Reading Comprehension

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

traffic - centre - café - at - especially - on

I go to the sports ① ..... every week. I go there ② ..... Tuesday morning. I sometimes arrive late because the ③ ..... is very slow ④ ..... on the street where I live.

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

يوجد شرح كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال في مقدمة الكتاب

The boat was one of the first forms of transport. A hundred years ago, the only way to make a journey was by boat. Nowadays, it is possible to travel from a country to another by train in an hour. It is also possible to fly from one continent to another in a few hours.

However, many passengers still have fun while travelling by boat. Although the boat is a rather old-fashioned way of travelling, it has certain advantages. The boat

is usually more comfortable than a plane or a car. Instead of staying in your seat for the whole journey on a plane or in a car, you can go for a walk on the deck, eat in the restaurant or even do your shopping.

However, having more space to move around makes a long journey much more pleasant. So, you can travel by boat if you have much time.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
a. travelling abroad b. travelling by boats  
c. having a car d. going shopping
- The opposite of "old-fashioned" is .....  
a. old b. ancient c. modern d. large
- Although people travel by planes nowadays, some people find travelling by boats .....  
a. enjoyable b. helpless c. terrible d. horrible

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- How many forms of transport are there in the passage?  
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?  
.....
- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.  
.....

### C Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is an area of land between two hills or mountains.  
a. platform b. valley c. century d. lake
- ..... means inside a building.  
a. Indoors b. Floors c. Outdoors d. Upstairs
- The word ..... can be the opposite of "boring".  
a. near b. interested c. excited d. interesting
- The suffix ..... changes the adjective "careful" into an adverb.  
a. -able b. -ly c. -ment d. -ness

جملات سيناء 2022

كفر الشيخ 2022



5. Magid is upstairs. This means he is in the upper .....  
 a. flage b. floor c. filght d. film
6. I usually spend the summer holiday on a quiet and calm beach. This means I  
 spend it on a ..... beach.  
 a. dangerous b. careless c. peaceful d. colourful

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The bank is ..... (opposite) to the café.
- When ..... (do) the bus to Tanta leave?
- The computer shop is ..... (at) the corner.
- There were about 200 passengers ..... (of) the train.
- The library always ..... (open) at 8:00 in the morning.

شعبا 2022

### D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about an invitation to an exhibition" **SB**

محتاج عنه قبل الاختبار

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Where is the exhibition?
- Who will you go with?
- How will you travel there?
- What do you think about the exhibition?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I will travel with my family to.....
- We will visit a famous.....
- We will travel there by.....
- I think the exhibition is.....

## New Hello!

# 2 UNIT

## Let's go shopping

### Objectives

#### Reading:

An online support message; an advert for handicrafts; online reviews

#### Writing:

Emails asking for and giving information about handicrafts; an online review

#### Listening:

A radio advert; a conversation in a shop; a phone call making a complaint

#### Speaking:

Talking about things in the home;

buying something in a shop; asking about shopping habits; describing a problem with technology; making a complaint

#### Language:

both/and, either/or, neither/nor, none

#### Life Skills:

Self-management: keeping calm  
 Critical thinking: Evaluating the pros and cons of online shopping



# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12-15 WB pages 79-80

## Key Vocabulary

poster	ملصق (إفيسر)	deal	صفقة (شراء شيء بسعر مخفض جدا)
website	موقع إلكتروني	headphones	سماعات الرأس
sale	تخفيض للأسعار (أوكازيون)	speaker	مكبر صوت (سماعة)
laptop	حاسوب محمول (لاپتوب)	special offer	عرض خاص
magazine	مجلة	smart	ذكي
discount	خصم - تخفيض	television	تلفزيون

## Items in the kitchen

coffee machine	ماكينة صنع القهوة	fridge	ثلاجة
kettle	غلاية	oven	فرن
microwave	جهاز ميكروويف		

## Vocabulary

store	متجر - محل	leisure	ترفيه
electronics	أجهزة إلكترونية	technology	التكنولوجيا
fashion	الموضة	delivery	توصيل
beauty	الجمال	city centre	وسط المدينة
customer	زبون	fresh	طازج
quality	جودة	item	عنصر (سلعة/جهاز)
shop assistant	بائع في محل	the latest	الأحدث
free	مجاني	boil (ed)	يغلي
advert	إعلان	shop (ped) / (n)	يتسوق - محل

## Definitions

kettle	غلاية	you can boil water with this
microwave	جهاز ميكروويف	a machine that cooks food very quickly
sale	أوكازيون	a time when a shop sells things at a cheaper price than usual
smart	ذكي	using computers or the internet to make something work better
discount	خصم	a price that is less than usual
deal	صفقة	a good or cheap price

coffee machine

ماكينة صنع القهوة

you can make a hot drink with this

٢- معدات

speaker

مكبر صوت (سماعة)

equipment<sup>(2)</sup> that you connect to or is part of a phone, radio, computer, etc. so that you can listen to it

٣- يشجع

special offer

عرض خاص

something that is a good price or free to encourage<sup>(3)</sup> people to buy it

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
customer	زبون	buyer	shop assistant/seller بائع
free	مجاني	unpaid	paid مدفوع الأجر
buy	يشترى	purchase	sell يبيع
popular	محبوب - شعبي	favoured / liked	unpopular غير محبوب
special	خاص	unusual / particular	common معتاد
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky/unfortunate غير محظوظ
smart	ذكي	intelligent	stupid غبي
discount	خصم	reduction	rise / increase ارتفاع / زيادة

## Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
micro-	small size	micro wave مايكرويف
-ise	n → v	advertise يعلن
-ant		assistant بائع
-er	person	speaker / customer مكبر صوت / زبون
-y	n → adj	lucky محظوظ
	v → n	deliver توصيل
-ian	place	Egyptian مصري

## Expressions & Prepositions

a bit smaller	أصغر قليلاً	offer a deal	يعرض صفقة
shop online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	look for	يبحث عن
at the best prices	بأفضل الأسعار	start ... with	يبدأ ... بـ
at special price	معروض بسعر خاص	spend ... on	ينفق ... على
in black and white	باللون الأسود والأبيض	a discount / deal on	خصم / صفقة على
deal of the day	صفقة اليوم	on special offer	عليه عرض خاص
play music	يشغل موسيقي	on the Mediterranean Sea	على البحر المتوسط



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		Past simple	Past Participle
<b>Present</b>			
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
spend	ينفق (مالاً/ يقضي وقتاً)	spent	spent
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
get	يحصل على/ يشتري	got	got
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

### Language Notes

#### sale / discount / deal

• **sale** أوكازيون  
تخفيض للأسعار تقوم به المحلات في مواسم معينة

Ex. I'm waiting for Eid al-Fitr **sales** to buy a new microwave.

• **deal** صفقة  
شراء شيء بسعر منخفض جداً

Ex. I bought that oven for only 300 pounds. It was a great **deal**.

• **discount** خصم  
تخفيض على سعر منتج تقوم به المحلات

Ex. You can get a 15% **discount** on that shirt.

#### Check on Language Notes ✓

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We buy things at good prices when shops have .....  
a. sales      b. posters      c. dreams      d. websites
- Mona bought a new shirt at a 25% .....  
a. deal      b. discount      c. cost      d. price
- Ali got his new suit for 150 pounds. It was a good .....  
a. date      b. sail      c. deal      d. poster

### Reading

SB page (12)

استمع إلى النص



#### New Message

#### Deal of the day

Visit our new, bigger and better city centre shop where we **sell** many different things for the home at the best **prices**.

Ask us about our special **deal** of the day.

١- يبيع  
٢- أسعار  
٣- صفقة

### Audioscript

SB Page (13)

**Voice** : Do you love music? Do you want the **latest technology**? We have the best headphones now at **Audioworld**. We are selling them in red, which is our most **popular** colour, and also in black and white. This week you can buy them at the **special** price of only 1500 Egyptian pounds. Visit our shop today!

١- أحدث التكنولوجيا  
٢- شركة عالم الصوتيات  
٣- محبوب/ شائع  
٤- مميز

SB Page (14)

**Shop Assistant** : Hello, sir. Can I help you?

**Customer** : Yes, please. I'm looking for a new TV for my living room.

**Shop Assistant** : OK, no problem. You're **lucky** we have lots of deals at the moment! For example, both of these TVs have a big **discount**.

**Customer** : Great. Are they smart TVs?

**Shop Assistant** : No, sorry. Neither of these TVs is **smart**, but this one over there is and that is also on special **offer**.

**Customer** : Hmm, that one is a bit smaller than what I want. I want quite a big one. How much is this bigger one?

**Shop Assistant** : Oh, yes, that's a great TV. That's new in the shop this week so it doesn't have a discount. It is 8,000 pounds.

**Customer** : That's a bit expensive for me. Is that your best price?

**Shop Assistant** : Yes, sorry, but I am offering a deal today. You can get either a free **speaker** or get a free films deal with that one.

**Customer** : Oh, well that's great because I need a new speaker. I think this one will look great in my **living room**. I'll take it!

١- زبون  
٢- محظوظ  
٣- خصم  
٤- ذكي  
٥- عرض  
٦- مكبر صوت  
٧- غرفة المعيشة

### Exercises on Vocabulary

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Definitions

- A ..... is something you can make a hot drink with it.  
a. toaster      b. towel      c. coffee machine      d. fridge
- A ..... is someone who buys things from a shop.  
a. driver      b. customer      c. scientist      d. fisherman
- A ..... is something you use in the kitchen to boil water.  
a. kettle      b. laptop      c. television      d. headphone

WB

التمرين 2022

التمرين 2022



4. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a large printed picture used for decoration.  
a. comment      b. email      c. poster      d. sale
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a machine that cooks food very quickly using special waves.  
a. microwave      b. boiler      c. cook      d. heater
6. A \_\_\_\_\_ is something that is a good price or free to encourage people to buy it.  
a. poster      b. sales assistant      c. website      d. special offer
7. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a time when a shop sells things at a cheaper price than usual.  
a. sale      b. poster      c. store      d. delivery
8. A \_\_\_\_\_ is equipment that you connect to or is part of a phone, radio, computer, etc, so that you can listen to it.  
a. kettle      b. computer      c. toaster      d. speaker

### Synonyms & Antonyms

9. The opposite of the verb "buy" is .....  
a. solve      b. sail      c. sell      d. swim
10. The antonym of the word "smart" is .....  
a. stupid      b. clever      c. small      d. intelligent
11. You're lucky to get that deal. The synonym of "lucky" is .....  
a. favourite      b. well-known      c. unknown      d. fortunate
12. The synonym of the word "popular" is .....  
a. fortunate      b. favoured      c. lucky      d. smart
13. The word "discount" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. raise      b. increase      c. help      d. reduction
14. "....." is the antonym of the word "free".  
a. Paid      b. Sold      c. Sent      d. Bought
15. The opposite of the word "special" is .....  
a. exceptional      b. unusual      c. excellent      d. usual

### Prefixes & Suffixes

16. She usually assists us in times of need. To get the noun of "assist", add the suffix .....  
a. -ness      b. -ant      c. -ment      d. -or
17. We turn the noun "advert" into a verb by adding the suffix .....  
a. -y      b. -ian      c. -er      d. -ise
18. We can get the opposite of the adjective "lucky" by adding .....  
a. dis-      b. un-      c. in-      d. im-
19. We use the suffix ..... to turn the verb "speak" into a noun.  
a. -ian      b. -er      c. -ant      d. -y

20. We can use a microwave to heat the food. The prefix "micro-" here means very .....  
a. active      b. hot      c. big      d. small

### Guessing the meaning

21. Osama's family have a/an ..... TV. They can now watch films from the internet.  
a. smart      b. stupid      c. dark      d. ordinary
22. I have bought my new suit at a price that less than usual. This means I have got a .....  
a. delivery      b. discount      c. store      d. quality
23. Shops usually sell things cheaper in August. This means they make .....  
a. sales      b. souls      c. seals      d. sails



## Language

### 1- Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

#### صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

• تنقسم الصفات الى صفات قصيرة وصفات طويلة.

من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة		(ذات مقطع واحد)	
high	small	تall	صغير
من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة		(ذات أكثر من مقطع)	
comfortable	expensive	مريح	غالي الثمن
interesting	شيق		

• نستخدم صيغة المقارنة Comparative للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.

• نستخدم صيغة التفضيل Superlative للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

• تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "cheap"	صفة + er + than "cheaper than" Ex. The laptop is cheaper than the mobile.	the + صفة + est "the cheapest" Ex. The microwave is the cheapest in the shop.
long adjective "useful"	أكثر / أقل + صفة + than more / less + useful + than Ex. The fridge is more useful than the oven.	الأكثر / الأقل the most / the least + صفة Ex. Computers are the most useful.



لاحظ الآتي عند تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل

١- إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بـ (e) يضاف (r) فقط عند تكوين صيغة المقارنة ويضاف (st) فقط عند تكوين صيغة التفضيل.

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يليه حرف (y) يحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ونضيف (er) أو (est):  
nice → nice **er** than → the nic**est**

easy → eas**ier** than → the eas**iest**

busy → bus**ier** than → the bus**iest**

٣- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير:

big → big**ger** than → the big**gest**

thin → thin**ner** than → the thin**nest**

- توجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي:

الأفضل	the best	أفضل من	better than	جيد	good
الأسوأ	the worst	أسوأ من	worse than	سئ	bad
الأكثر	the most	أكثر من	more than	كثير (الاسم بعد)	many
الأكثر	the most	أكثر من	more than	كثير (الاسم لا بعد)	much
الأقل	the least	أقل من	less than	قليل (الاسم لا بعد)	little
الأبعد	the farthest / furthest	أبعد من	farther / further than	بعيد	far

Ex. The weather today is **worse than** it was yesterday.

### Extra Points

١- من الممكن أن نستخدم (much) قبل صفة المقارنة بمعنى (كثير) للتوضيح أن هناك فارق كبير بين شخصين أو شيئين:

Ex. My new phone is **much easier** to use than my old one.

٢- لا نستخدم الأداة (the) قبل صفة التفضيل إذا أتى قبلها (s) الملكية، أو صفة ملكية مثل (my - his - our):

Ex. We are selling the headphones in red, which is **our most** popular colour.

### Exercises on Adjectives

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

- Kettles are less expensive ..... (from) computers. **SB**
- Televisions are ..... (as expensive) than kettles. **SB**
- The ..... (more useful) thing in my kitchen is the fridge. **SB**
- It is ..... (good) to buy clothes in shops than online. **SB**
- Bicycles are ..... (expensive) than cars. **SB**
- Smartphones are much ..... (easy) to use than the old ones. **SB**

### Longman Exercises

- You ate too much. You have the ..... (little) amount of food left.
- I'm sure you're ..... (lucky) than me!
- What is the ..... (bad) situation you've ever faced?

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- Hazem is ..... (strong) than his brother.
- I think maths is the ..... (better) subject. I love it.
- The ..... (cheap) item in my kitchen is the microwave.
- Sara is ..... (more beautiful) girl in the class.
- Mohammed Salah is one of the world's ..... (fast) players.

### 2- both, either, neither & none

كلا من / both of كلا / both

١- نستخدم (both / both of) عند الحديث عن اثنين:

Ex. Both **the sisters** are good at maths.

Ex. Both of **the books** are mine.

٢- نستخدم (both .. and...) بمعنى (كلا من ... و ...) للربط بين اسمين أو صفتين أو فعلين:

Ex. We met both **my aunt** and **my uncle**. (إسمين)

Ex. Ali is both **tall** and **strong**. (صفتين)

Ex. Clever students both **study** hard and **sleep** well. (فعلين)

٣- يأتي بعد (both of) اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you):

أو ضمير إشارة جمع (these / those):

Ex. Hassan met both of **them**.

Ex. I bought both of **these** books yesterday.

- لاحظ أنه عندما يلي (both of) اسم جمع يتبعه فعل جمع:

Ex. Both of **my brothers** are at home.

٤- تأتي ضمائر الجمع قبل (both) بينما تأتي بعد (both of):

Ex. They **both** liked the film. = Both of **them** liked the film.

أي من / either of

١- نستخدم (either) للاختيار بين اثنين ويتبعها اسم مفرد يُعد:

Ex. Either **kettle** is expensive.

٢- نستخدم (either of) بمعنى (أي من ...) ويليه اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you) أو ضمير إشارة جمع (these / those):

Ex. Do either of **you** play a sport?

Ex. I will buy either of **these** items.



٣- تستخدم (either ..... or ..... ) بمعنى (إما ..... أو ..... ) للربط بين اسمين أو صفتين أو فعلين:  
- لاحظ أنه عندما يلي (either of) اسم جمع يتبعه فعل مفرد:

Ex. Either of the boys **wants** to leave the room.

Ex. I will wear either **the shorts** or **the trousers**. (اسمين)

Ex. The shoes are either **black** or **grey**. (صفتين)

Ex. They will either **study** or **watch** TV. (فعلين)

٤- عند ما تربط (either ... or ...) فاعلين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأقرب في الأفراد والجمع:

Ex. Either Osama or the girls **are** coming.

Ex. Either the girls or **Osama is** coming.

### ولاى من neither of / ولاى neither

١- تستخدم (neither) لنفي احتمال عن اثنين ويتبعها اسم مفرد يُعد ويستخدم معها دائماً فعل في صيغة الإثبات:

Ex. Neither **parent** came to meet the teacher.

٢- يأتي بعد (neither of) اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you) أو ضمير إشارة جمع (these / those):

Ex. Neither of **them** is coming.

Ex. Neither of **those** pens belongs to me.

- لاحظ أنه عندما يلي (neither of) اسم جمع يتبعه فعل لفاعل مفرد:

Ex. Neither of the laptops **is** mine.

٣- تستخدم (neither ..... nor ..... ) بمعنى (لا ..... ولا ..... ) للربط بين اسمين أو صفتين أو فعلين:

Ex. I met neither **the husband** nor **the wife**. (اسمين)

Ex. The T-shirt is neither **cheap** nor **good**. (صفتين)

Ex. They will neither **play** nor **go** out. (فعلين)

٤- عند ما تربط (neither ... nor ...) فاعلين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأقرب في الأفراد والجمع:

Ex. Neither Ahmed nor **his friends are** coming.

Ex. Neither the friends nor **Ahmed is** coming.

٥- إذا كان هناك نفي قبل neither فإنها تتحول إلى either

Ex. The two T-shirts are too short. I don't want either of them.

Longman

### لا أحد من none of

- تستخدم (none of) بمعنى (لا أحد من ..... ) ويليه اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you) أو ضمير إشارة جمع (these / those):

- لاحظ أن (none of) يليها اسم جمع ثم فعل مفرد:

Ex. **None of us wants** to buy these phones.



تأتي ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you / them / us) أو ضمائر الإشارة الجمع (those / these) بعد (either of / neither of / both of) وليس بعد (either / neither / both).

Ex. Either of **them** arrived at school late.

(Not: Either them)

Ex. Neither of **these** books is mine.

(Not: Neither these)

	both	either	neither	none
الأشخاص	two	two	two	more than two
للربط	both...and..	either....or	neither....nor	none of
صيغة الفعل	plural verb	singular verb	singular verb	singular verb

## Exercises on both/either/neither / none

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

- Both the laptop and the microwave ..... (is) in the sale. **SB**
- ..... (Neither) of these two TVs have a big discount. **SB**
- Tarek usually has ..... (both) an egg or some fruit for breakfast. **WB**
- Neither Ali nor I ..... (be) present last night. **الطريقة 2022**
- Both of the children ..... (likes) ice cream. **المستخدمة 2022**
- ..... (Neither) my sister and I like watching TV. **المستخدمة 2023**

### Longman Exercises

- ..... (Neither) my parents encourage me to depend on myself.
- Both Rami ..... (or) Kamal got full marks.
- Neither of these TV ..... (are) smart.
- You gave two quick answers. Don't worry, ..... (each) are correct.
- I don't know where Rami is; he is ..... (both) in the office or at home.
- ..... (All) of us can buy tickets for the party. We are all short of money.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- ..... (Both) Ali nor Ahmed went to the funfair.
- ..... (Both) of the two teachers came to the meeting. They were too ill.
- There were two books here, but ..... (both) of them belonged to me.
- I bought two books but I haven't read ..... (both) of them yet.



## Speaking

### 1 Talking about things in your house.

#### Question

- Which items do you have in your house?  
أي السلع (الأجهزة) لديك في منزلك؟
- Which of these items do you think is the most useful?  
أي من تلك الأجهزة تعتقد أنه الأكثر فائدة؟
- Which of these items is the most expensive?  
أي من تلك الأجهزة الأغلى؟
- Which item do you think is the least expensive?  
أي الأجهزة تعتقد أنه الأقل كلفة؟
- Do you buy items at the usual price?  
هل تشتري السلع (الأجهزة) بالأسعار المعتادة؟

#### Answer

- I have a kettle, a coffee machine, a microwave and some other items.  
لدي غلاية، ماكينة صنع القهوة، جهاز ميكروويف وأشياء أخرى.
- I think the coffee machine is the most useful.  
في رأيي، ماكينة صنع القهوة هي الأكثر فائدة.
- The microwave is the most expensive.  
جهاز الميكروويف هو الأغلى.
- It is the kettle. It was on special offer.  
الغلاية هي الأقل كلفة. لقد بيعت في عرض خاص (بأسعار منخفضة).
- No, I usually wait for discounts.  
لا، عادة أنتظر التخفيضات.

### 2 Buying something in a shop

#### Shop assistant

- How can I help you, sir?  
كيف يمكن أن أساعدك يا سيدي؟
- We have some kettles at special prices.  
لدينا بعض الغلايات معروضة بأسعار خاصة.
- We have a discount on other items if you'd like to check them.  
لدينا خصم على بعض السلع الأخرى لو أردت في القاء نظرة عليهم.

#### Customer

- I am looking for a new kettle.  
إنني أبحث عن غلاية جديدة.
- OK. Let me see them.  
حسنًا، دعني ألق نظرة عليهم.
- Of course, I'd love to.  
بالطبع، أود ذلك.

## General Exercises

### on Lessons 1 & 2

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A customer and a sales assistant are talking about items on a shop.

Sales assistant : Welcome, sir. How can I help you?

Customer : ①

Sales assistant : ②

Customer : OK. Let me see this brown kettle.

Sales assistant : ③

Customer : No, I didn't know that you have microwaves at a special price.

Sales assistant : What do you think of this one?

Customer : ④

Sales assistant : We have a 30% discount if you buy two.

Customer : Well, it looks nice. ⑤

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

discounts - offer - cheaper - cheapest - items - deal

Some shops often ① different ② at special prices. They often sell microwaves ③ than the usual price. That's why many people wait for these ④. Shops call this "things on sale".

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You get a free drink when you buy a sandwich. This means there is a good \_\_\_\_\_ at the café today.

- a. speaker      b. tool      c. deal      d. sale

2. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a container or device in which water is boiled.

- a. oven      b. kettle      c. fan      d. fridge

3. You can get this watch at home for free. This means you can receive it with free \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. industry      b. discovery      c. delivery      d. recovery

4. To turn the verb "assist" into a noun, we add the suffix \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. -er      b. -y      c. -ian      d. -ant

5. Our father bought us a smart TV to watch videos from the internet. "Smart" is similar in meaning to the word \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. intelligent      b. busy      c. old      d. full



4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB

SB

- It is ..... (easy) to shop online now than before.
- The ..... (busy) shop in my town is the supermarket.
- He doesn't have any leg injuries. .... (Either) are physically fit. Longman
- Neither Omar ..... (and) I was present yesterday.
- The Cairo Tower isn't as ..... (taller) as Burj Khalifa.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Items that you have in your kitchen" WB

محاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

## Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16-18 WB pages 81-82

### Key Vocabulary

handicrafts  
password  
shell  
traditional

مصنوعات يدوية / حرف يدوية  
كلمة المرور  
صدفة  
تقليدي / قديم

decorate (d)  
charge (d)  
restart (ed)

استمع إلى المفردات


يزين  
يشحن (بالكهرباء)  
يعيد تشغيل

### Important Phrasal Verbs

turn off  
turn on  
log in

يطفئ / يوقف (جهاز)  
يشغل (جهاز)  
يسجل الدخول لجهاز

fill in  
plug in

يملأ (استمارة)  
يوصل بالكهرباء

### Handicrafts & Materials

wooden box  
leather bag

صندوق خشبي  
حقيبة جلدية

wool carpet  
stone statue\*

سجادة من الصوف  
تمثال من الحجر

### Vocabulary

suddenly  
battery  
artist  
coast  
area  
industry  
colourful  
metal  
glass  
jewellery

فجأة  
بطارية  
فنان  
ساحل  
منطقة  
صناعة  
كثير الألوان  
معادن  
زجاج  
مجوهرات

form  
soft  
pot  
history  
leaf (pl. leaves)  
basket  
design (ed)(n)  
guess (ed)  
earn (ed)

إستمارة  
ناعم / لين  
وعاء / إناء  
التاريخ (كمادة دراسية - كعلم)  
ورقة شجر (أوراق شجر)  
سلة  
يصمم - تصميم  
يخمن  
يكسب (مال)

### Definitions

handicrafts  
password  
fill in

مصنوعات يدوية  
كلمة المرور  
يملأ (إستمارة)

objects made by a person in a traditional way, such as baskets, bowls, etc.  
a special, secret word that you must write or say before you can use a computer or go into a place  
complete information on a piece of paper or online

إ- سرق

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What items do you have in your kitchen?
- Which item is the most / least useful?
- Which item do you think is the most / least expensive?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have ..... in my kitchen.
- I use ..... to .....
- ..... is more useful than .....
- ..... is the most / least useful item in my kitchen.
- ..... is the most / least expensive item in my kitchen.



log in	يسجل الدخول لـ جهاز	put in information so that you can use a computer	٢- يوصل ٣- بالكهرباء
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	make a machine start working	
turn off	يغلق (جهاز)	make a machine stop working	
plug in	يوصل بالكهرباء	connect <sup>(٢)</sup> equipment to electricity <sup>(٣)</sup>	
charge	يشحن بالكهرباء	put electricity into something such as a phone	

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
traditional	تقليدي	classical		modern	حديث
old	قديم	ancient		new	جديد
soft	ناعم / لين	smooth		hard	خشن / صلب
amazing	رائع	fantastic		terrible	فظيع
log in	يسجل الدخول	sign in		log out / sign out	يسجل الخروج
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	switch on		turn off / switch off	يطفئ (جهاز)
colourful	كثير الألوان	bright		colourless	عديم الألوان

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
handi-	by hand تستخدم بمعنى «باليدين»	handicrafts مصنوعات / حرف يدوية
e-	electronic تعني «إلكتروني»	e-mail رسالة بريد إلكتروني
-al	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	traditional تقليدي
-en		wooden خشبي
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	suddenly / probably فجأة / من المحتمل
-ful	n / v → adj تحول الفعل / الاسم إلى الصفة	colourful / beautiful زاهي الألوان / جميل
-ion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	congratulation / instructions تهنيتنا / تعليمات
-ing	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى صفة	amazing مذهل

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

how to use .....	كيفية استعمال .....	walk down a road	يسير في طريق
in different colours	بالوان مختلفة	decorate .... with..	يزين .....
look amazing	يبدو مذهلاً	interested in	مهتم بـ
make handicrafts	يصنع مصنوعات يدوية	famous for	مشهور بـ
the computer broke	تعطل الكمبيوتر	instructions for	تعليمات لـ
find out about	يعرف عن	popular with	شائع بين
Congratulations on.....	تهانينا على.....	in traditional designs	بتصميمات تقليدية

## Conjugations of

## Present

## Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought
lose	يفقد	lost
meet	يقابل	met
break	يكسر	broke



## Language Notes

## 1 leather / skin

• leather (جلد مذبوغ)

Ex. This bag is made of leather.

• skin (جلد - بشرة (الإنسان - الحيوان)

Ex. Babies have soft skins.

## 2 made of / made from

• made of

مصنوع من (المادة الخام لم تتغير)

Ex. The carpet is made of wool.

• made from

مصنوع من (المادة الخام تغيرت)

Ex. Bread is made from flour.

## 3 win / earn

• win (won - won)

يقوز (بمباراة - بجائزة - مسابقة... الخ)

Ex. Egypt won the match yesterday.

• earn (ed)

يكسب (money - a living - his living)

(مال - قوت يومه)

Ex. My dad earns a lot of money.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I have bought a pair of ..... shoes.  
a. skin                      b. cotton                      c. leather                      d. wood
- That statue is made ..... stone.  
a. of                      b. from                      c. by                      d. at
- Hassan works hard, so he ..... much money.  
a. wins                      b. earns                      c. leaves                      d. builds



# Reading

SB page (16)

استمع إلى النصوص



Hello. How can I help you, Aya?

Hi. I bought a laptop last week. Yesterday, when I was doing my homework, it suddenly **turned off**<sup>(1)</sup>. Now I can't **log in**<sup>(2)</sup> and I think I **lost**<sup>(3)</sup> my work!

Was the computer **plugged in**<sup>(4)</sup>?

Yes, it was plugged in. I was **charging**<sup>(5)</sup> the **battery**<sup>(6)</sup>.

Did you **turn on**<sup>(7)</sup> the computer again?

Yes, but then it said my **password**<sup>(8)</sup> to log in was wrong.

One moment please .... I just emailed you a **form**<sup>(9)</sup> to **fill in**<sup>(10)</sup> to get a new password. Log in again with that information. I hope that works!

OK, thank you.

- ١- ينطفئ (جهاز)
- ٢- يسجل الدخول لجهاز
- ٣- يفقد
- ٤- موصل بالكهرباء
- ٥- يشحن
- ٦- بطارية
- ٧- يشغل
- ٨- كلمة مرور
- ٩- استمارة
- ١٠- يملأ استمارة

SB Page (18)

## Egyptian Handicrafts

The best **quality**<sup>(1)</sup> and prices!

- A: These beautiful **wooden**<sup>(2)</sup> boxes can be used for jewellery. They are **decorated**<sup>(3)</sup> with **shells**<sup>(4)</sup> in traditional designs. They are made by **artists**<sup>(5)</sup> near the **coast**<sup>(6)</sup>.
- B: The **leather industry**<sup>(7)</sup> is one of the oldest in Egypt and our bags are the best quality. The leather is very soft.
- C: We sell many different types of **pots**<sup>(8)</sup> in different colours for your home. The artists **paint**<sup>(9)</sup> the pots with traditional Arabic designs.

- ١- جودة
- ٢- خشبي
- ٣- فزين
- ٤- ضدف
- ٥- فنانيين
- ٦- ساحل
- ٧- صناعة الجلود
- ٨- لوانى
- ٩- يلون

## Lessons 3 & 4

D: Egypt has a long **history**<sup>(1)</sup> of making beautiful carpets. These **colourful**<sup>(2)</sup>, modern carpets will look amazing in any home.

Call or email us to find out about special offers.



Say it correctly

statue

ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (shoe) تماما:

- ١- تاريخ
- ٢- كثير الألوان

WB Page (81)

**Congratulations**<sup>(1)</sup> on buying a new computer! Here are the instructions for how to use it:


- 1- First, plug in the computer. To charge the battery, leave it for three or four hours.
2. Now turn on the computer.
3. When the computer is ready, it will ask you to fill in some information.
4. Write your name and choose a password that nobody can **guess**<sup>(2)</sup>.
5. Now you can **log in**<sup>(3)</sup> to your computer and start using it.
6. Don't forget to turn off your computer when you are not using it.

- ١- تهنيتنا
- ٢- يضمن
- ٣- يسجل الدخول

WB Page (82)

The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts. People who live here sell carpets, **baskets**<sup>(1)</sup> and colourful pots. Some women in a **village**<sup>(2)</sup> near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the **leaves**<sup>(3)</sup> of trees. In other parts of Egypt, people make handicrafts from wood and leather. These handicrafts are very popular with tourists and help the Egyptians to **earn**<sup>(4)</sup> money.


- ١- سلال
- ٢- قرية
- ٣- ورق شجر
- ٤- يكسب (مال)

## Videoscript

SB Page 18

**Ceramics**<sup>(1)</sup> is the word we use to describe pots, vases, bowls and **tiles**<sup>(2)</sup> that are made from clay. **Clay**<sup>(3)</sup> is a type of **mud**<sup>(4)</sup> which you can use to make ceramics. This man is using clay to make a vase. We can then paint the ceramics to make them both more colourful and more beautiful.


- ١- اواني خزفية
- ٢- بلاط
- ٣- صلصال
- ٤- طمي - طين

The Ancient Egyptians made some of the earliest ceramics in the



world. They used clay from both the River Nile in the south of Egypt

هـ - طبق مسطح

and from the city of Qena.

The Ancient Egyptians used both kinds of clay to make some ceramics that you can still see today.

This vase is almost four thousand years old. It was made from Qena clay.

Qena clay makes pots whiter than those made from Nile clay.

This vase is even older. It is almost five thousand years old and it was made from clay from the Nile. Neither vase is painted. People probably used both of these vases to carry water.

This plate is from the nineteenth century. This plate is even older. It is from the eleventh century. Both plates are from Egypt and they are both painted beautifully. Egyptian ceramics are very beautiful. Do you have any at home?

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

- To ..... is to make a machine stop working. WB Longman  
a. put off      b. turn on      c. turn off      d. put on
- A / An ..... is a special secret word that you must write or say before you can use a computer or go into a place. Longman  
a. metal      b. shell      c. area      d. password
- ..... are objects made by a person in a traditional way, such as baskets, bowls, etc.  
a. Areas      b. Passwords      c. Handicrafts      d. Forms
- To ..... is to put electricity into something such as a phone.  
a. charge      b. change      c. fill      d. decorate

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- The word "traditional" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. unusual      b. classical      c. fantastic      d. changeable
- The antonym of the word "soft" is .....  
a. new      b. modern      c. hard      d. boring
- "Log in" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. sign in      b. log out      c. turn off      d. sign out
- The antonym of the verb "turn on" is .....  
a. get on      b. switch on      c. take off      d. turn off
- The antonym of the adjective "amazing" is .....  
a. fantastic      b. terrible      c. smooth      d. modern

## Prefixes & Suffixes

- The word "wood" can be an adjective by adding .....  
a. -er      b. -ion      c. -en      d. -in
- The suffix "....." form an adjective of the word "tradition".  
a. -al      b. -ily      c. -le      d. -able
- We can change the verb "instruct" into a noun by adding the suffix ".....".  
a. -ation      b. -ion      c. -ment      d. -ity
- The suffix ..... turns the word "sudden" into an adverb.  
a. -ful      b. -ion      c. -ive      d. -ly
- The prefix "e-" in the word "email" means that the mail is .....  
a. electric      b. electronic      c. mechanic      d. ceramic

## Guessing the meaning

- He switched on the mobile. This means he ..... on the mobile.  
a. turned      b. broke      c. bought      d. lost
- You must fill in this form. This means that you must ..... it.  
a. compare      b. compete      c. repeat      d. complete
- The turtle has a strong cover over its body. This means it has a .....  
a. password      b. form      c. shell      d. basket
- Amir changed the colour of his house. This means he ..... it.  
a. charged      b. decorated      c. guessed      d. earned

## Language

### 1- The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

#### Form التكوين

Subject التصريف الثاني للفاعل + (كل الضمائر) فاعل

تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة

أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لأخر الفعل

play → played

walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف له (d) فقط.

like → liked

dance → danced



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** يسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف حرف **(y)** ونضيف **(ied)**  
 study → studied carry → carried  
 - يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن وقبله متحرك واحد عند إضافة **(ed)**  
 stop → stopped travel → travelled

Ex. Aya travelled to Luxor yesterday.

Ex. The machine stopped working last week.

ثانياً: الأفعال غير المنتظمة: وهي التي لا يضاف لها **(ed)** في الماضي وتحفظ

go → went buy → bought

Ex. I bought a new laptop last week.

### Negative النفي

ينفي زمن الماضي البسيط بالصيغة الآتية:

Subject + did not (didn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I didn't give my friend the phone.

- ومن الممكن استخدام (never) ويبقى الفعل كما هو:

Ex. We never went to school late.

### Question السؤال

#### 1- Yes/ No questions:

Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

Ex. Did you travel to Alex last week?

- Yes, I did. -No, I didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

#### 2- Wh-questions:

...? مصدر الفعل. did + subject + inf. كلمة استفهام

Ex. Why did you come late? - Because I got up late.

### Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.

Ex. I bought a mobile in 2020.

يستخدم أيضاً زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي وانتهت.

Ex. I always walked to school when I was young.

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last ( week - month - year )	الماضي ...	ago	منذ
in (2018)	في «سنة سابقة»	in the past	في الماضي	once	ذات مرة

### Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- When I was on holiday, I always ..... (playing) on the beach.
- What did that scientist ..... (does) for his country?
- We played football and ..... (enjoy) our time.

### 2- The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

#### Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد

We / You / They / اسم جمع

was } + V-ing  
were }

Ex. At 8.00 o'clock yesterday we were having dinner.

Ex. I was doing my homework when my father came home.



كيف يُضاف للفعل **(ing)**:  
 1- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة **(ing)** (مع بعض الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد):

sit → sitting stop → stopping

2- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **(e)** غير منطوق نحذف الـ **(e)** ثم نضيف **(ing)** إلى الفعل:

use → using make → making

3- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **(e)** منطوق لا نحذف عند إضافة **(ing)**:

see → seeing be → being

4- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **(ie)** تحول إلى **(y)** عند إضافة **(ing)**:

lie → lying die → dying

### Negative النفي

فاعل + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + V-ing

Ex. They weren't doing anything at that time yesterday.

### Question السؤال

#### 1- Yes/ No questions:

Was / Were + subject + V- ing.....?

Ex. Were you working when I phoned you?

- Yes, I was. -No, I wasn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

#### 2- Wh-questions:

...? was / were + subject + V- ing.....? كلمة استفهام

Ex. What was Asmaa doing when Soha arrived? -She was studying



## Usage الاستخدام

١- يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. I **was waiting** for the match to start at 8.00 last night.

٢- يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث طويل كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعاه او وقع أثناءه حدث آخر قصير.

الحدث القصير : ماضي بسيط

الحدث الطويل : ماضي مستمر

Ex. While I **was reading** a story, the telephone **rang**.

- وللتعبير عن فكرة الحدث الطويل والحدث الآخر القصير نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As / Just as

Past continuous  
ماضي مستمر (حدث طويل)

+

Past simple  
ماضي بسيط (حدث قصير)

Ex. While / As we **were walking** down the road, we **met** our friend Hany.

When

Past simple  
ماضي بسيط (حدث قصير)

+

Past continuous  
ماضي مستمر (حدث طويل)

Ex. When Mona **fell** asleep, she **was watching** TV.

٣- يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس التوقيت في الماضي - وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As  
Just as

Past continuous  
ماضي مستمر (حدث مستمر)

+

Past continuous  
ماضي مستمر (حدث مستمر)

Ex. While I **was having** lunch, my sister **was watching** TV.

## Extra Points

١- يمكن أن يأتي بعد **while (v. + ing)** بشرط أن يكون فاعل الجملتين واحد:

Ex. While **having** lunch, I **was watching** TV.

٢- تأتي During مكان While ولكن يأتي بعدها اسم:

During أثناء + noun

Ex. During **the film**, Sara **was studying**.

## Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. This morning, I ..... (goes) to the town centre with my mum. We bought many things. **SB**
2. We ..... (take) the bus to shopping centre and I bought a really cool new phone. **SB**
3. As I was giving my friend the phone, he ..... (drops) it. **SB**
4. We ..... (finish) our science project last week. **الأسبوعية 2022**
5. While Amal ..... (read), Asmaa called her. **أسواق 2023**
6. I ..... (visit) him last week. **دمياط 2023**
7. As I ..... (watch) T.V, the light went out. **الغربية 2022**

## Longman Exercises

8. What ..... (are) you doing at 7 p.m. yesterday?
9. Why ..... (do) you go to school yesterday? - Because I was ill.
10. She was waiting impatiently ..... (while) the plane landed safely.
11. .... (Just as) watching TV, I felt a severe headache.
12. .... (While) the party, I was happy to meet my old friends.

## Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Tamer ..... (talked) when the teacher called him.
14. While he ..... (rides) his bicycle, he fell off and broke his leg.
15. .... (During) Munir was studying, his sister came home.
16. We ..... (move) to the city three years ago.
17. Rawan called me while I ..... (am having) a bath, so I couldn't answer the phone.
18. .... (you were doing) your homework when I phoned you?
19. .... (As) my visit to the museum, I saw many monuments.



## General Exercises

**on Lessons 3 & 4**



**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Yasser and his friend Serag are talking about Omar's new mobile phone:

**Yasser** Congratulations! Your new mobile phone is so nice.

Serag : 0

Yasser 2

Serag : It's 6000 L.E.

Yasser 9

**Seraq** : Not yet. Let's check it together.

**Yasser :** Look! It doesn't work.

**Serag** : Oh! What shall I do?

Yasser : 0

Sergio : OK. I'll go back to the shop right now to replace it. Thanks for your advice.

Yasser 6

**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**wooden - decorated - artist - were decorated - industry - design**

I went shopping last week. I bought some ① ..... boxes from a shop at special price. They ② ..... with shells in a traditional ③ ..... I think a great ④ ..... made them

**3** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I will turn on the computer to do the research. "Turn on" here means "....."

Longman

- a. stop                      b. start                      c. disconnect                      d. contact  
 2. The prefix "handi-" in "handicrafts" means to do something by .....  
 a. hand                      b. machine                      c. itself                      d. leg  
 3. Ali completed all the information online. This means he ..... a form.  
 a. failed                      b. turned off                      c. turned on                      d. filled in

**4** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I showed my friends my new phone while we ..... (walking) down the road.
2. While I ..... (charge) the battery, my phone rang.
3. While I was walking down the road, I ..... (see) an accident.
4. While I ..... (study), my mother was cooking.

SB

المقدمة 2022

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

### Lessons 3 & 4

"A short story about a problem that you had with technology"

SB

محتاج عنده في احدى الوحدات

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What was the problem?
- When did the problem happen?
- What did you do about it?
- How did you feel in the end?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I bought a new phone ..... - On our way home, we met .....
- As I was giving my friend the phone, he .....
- My friend felt ..... and I was .....



# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 19-21 WB pages 83-85

## Key Vocabulary

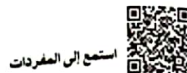
jewellery  
machine  
complain  
complaint

مجوهرات  
آلة / ماكينة  
يشكو  
شكوى

order (ed) (n)  
call (ed) back  
email (ed) (n)

يرسل بالبريد الإلكتروني / البريد الإلكتروني

يطلب / يطلب  
يعاود الاتصال



## Vocabulary

delivery  
company  
electronically  
necklace  
trusted source  
user reviews  
seller  
information

توصيل  
شركة  
إلكترونيًا  
قلادة (عقد)  
مصدر موثوق فيه  
تقييمات المستخدمين  
بائع  
معلومات

بالرغم من ذلك

مقاس

صاحب / مزعج

سوء جداً / رهيب

متحمس

عالي الصوت - صاحب

مُنْتَج

## problems and complaints

مشكلات وشكاوى

wrong size  
wrong colour  
wrong item

مقاس خطأ  
لون خطأ  
ساعة خطأ

لا يعمل

تأخير في التسليم

مكسور

## Definitions

order

يطلب

when a customer asks someone to send, bring<sup>(1)</sup> or make something for them

أ- تحضر

complaint

شكوى

something you say or write when you are unhappy about something

ب- بشكل إلكتروني

call back

يعاود الاتصال بـ

to return a phone call

email

يرسل بالبريد الإلكتروني

to send a message electronically<sup>(2)</sup>

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / opposite	المضاد
horrible	فظيع	awful / terrible		wonderful / nice	رائع / لطيف
happy	سعيد	pleased / glad		unhappy / sad	غير سعيد
excited	متحمس	interested		bored	شاعر بملل
loud	عالي الصوت / صاخب	noisy		low / calm	هادئ
beautiful	جميل	pretty		ugly	قبيح

## Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
un-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	unhappy غير سعيد
-er	person تكوّن الاسم الفاعل	user / seller / buyer مستخدم / بائع / مشتري
-ed	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	excited / bored / trusted متحمس / شاعر بالملل / موثوق
-ation	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	information معلومات

## Expressions & Prepositions

make a complaint	يقدم شكوى	as a present for	كهدية لـ
answer a complaint	يرد على شكوى	unhappy with	غير سعيد بـ
do online shopping	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	wait for	ينتظر
a bit big	كبيرة قليلاً	send..... back	يرجع (سلعة تالفة مثلاً)
sorry about	أسف على	over two weeks	أكثر من أسبوعين
buy from	يشترى من	Oh, dear!	يا إلهي! (تعبير عن الدهشة)
easy to use	سهل الاستخدام		

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
buy	bought	bought
make	made	made
send	sent	sent

## Language Notes

complain (of / about / to) / make a complaint

complain of / about يشكو من

Ex. Lots of people have complained of / about the noise.

complain to يشكو إلى (شخص مسؤول)

Ex. Hamdy complained to the head teacher about some missing pages in his book.



• make a complaint يتقدم بشكوى

Ex. The customer made a complaint about a bad delivery.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ayman didn't get his delivery so he made a .....  
a. machine      b. complaint      c. present      d. letter
2. The service was bad at the hotel so we complained ..... the manager.  
a. to      b. on      c. about      d. in

## Audioscript

SB Page (19)

استمع إلى النصوص



Eman : Hello, Egyptian Handicrafts<sup>(1)</sup>. How can I help you?

Ali : Hello, I want to make a complaint<sup>(2)</sup>.

Eman : Oh, dear. What's the problem?

Ali : I ordered some pots three weeks ago for my shop. Your website says the delivery<sup>(3)</sup> takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

Eman : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number please?

Ali : Yes, it's Ali Ahmed, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8.  
I emailed<sup>(4)</sup> you last week.

Eman : Ah yes, Mr Ahmed. You ordered 50 pots for delivery to Kenya<sup>(5)</sup>, is that right?

Ali : That's correct.

Eman : Hmm, yes the delivery company has your order. I'll call the delivery company and ask them what the problem is and I'll call you back. Can I take your phone number please?

Ali : Yes, it's 254 667578. Can you call me back today, please?

Eman : Of course.

Ali : Thank you. Goodbye.



- ١- شركة المصنوعات اليدوية
- ٢- شكوي
- ٣- توصيل
- ٤- أرسلت بريد إلكتروني
- ٥- دولة كينيا

WB Page (83)

Mrs Nahla : Good afternoon. I want to make a complaint, please.  
Assistant : Oh, dear. What's the problem?

Mrs Nahla : I ordered a new kettle from your website, but when the delivery arrived this morning, it was a microwave!

Assistant : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name please?

Mrs Nahla : Yes, it's Mrs Nahla.

Assistant : Ah, yes. I'll call the delivery company and ask them to send you the correct item.

Mrs Nahla : Can they take the microwave when they come?

Assistant : Yes, of course.

## Reading

SB page (20)

### Great Machine



I bought this as a present<sup>(1)</sup> for my parents. They are very happy with it. It looks great in their kitchen and it is easy to use. It also makes a really delicious cup of coffee. The delivery was quick, too!

### Don't buy this machine!



First, I waited two weeks for delivery and then when the machine arrived, it was broken<sup>(2)</sup>! It looked good, but it was very noisy and the coffee was cold and horrible<sup>(3)</sup>. I sent it back and I will buy a different one.



- ١- هدية
- ٢- مكسور / معطل
- ٣- فظيع

SB Page (21)

Yesterday, I went to the market and I bought some new things for my bedroom. While I was shopping, I saw my friend Lara. She helped me to choose a new carpet. Today, my dad painted my bedroom. Now it was blue. It looked really good!

WB Page (84)

### Review (1)

I bought this microwave as a present for my parents. They were not very happy with it. It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. However<sup>(1)</sup>, when they used it, the food didn't cook very well. It was horrible. I sent it back and will buy a different one.



- ١- بالرغم من ذلك



## Review (2)

I bought this speaker as a present for my cousin. She is very happy with it. It looks great and it is very easy to use. You can use it on your television or to play music. There is only one **problem** with it: her parents think it is too **loud**!

WB Page (85)

My older brother Karim is very excited because he has a new phone. First, he needed to charge the battery. To do this, he plugged in the phone and turned it on. Then he left it for a few hours. Next, he needed to fill in some information about himself. The phone asked for a password. Now, he can log in and use his phone. It's very nice!



WB Page (85)

**Huda**: Look at these two wooden boxes. Do you like either of them, Lama?

**Lama**: Yes, I like both of them, but they are expensive.

**Huda**: What about these pots? I like the red one and the blue one.

**Lama**: Sorry, I like neither the red one nor the blue one, but the yellow one is nice.

**Huda**: We should choose something that we both like. I think we should either buy the leather bag or the carpet.

**Lama**: OK, let's buy the leather bag. The carpet is a bit big!



## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

1 To \_\_\_\_\_ means when a customer asks someone to send, bring or make something for him. **WB**

- a. complain      b. arrive      c. repair      d. order

2 To \_\_\_\_\_ means to send a message electronically. **WB**

- a. buy      b. email      c. pay      d. repair

3 To \_\_\_\_\_ is to return a phone call. **WB**

- a. complain      b. sell      c. deliver      d. call back

4 A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is something you make when you are unhappy about something. **WB**

- a. email      b. complaint      c. call back      d. order

العربية / دفتر الشكاوى 2023

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

5 The tea tasted horrible. "Horrible" is a synonym for "\_\_\_\_\_". **Longman**

- a. terrible      b. terrific      c. pleasant      d. delicious

6 Aya is wearing a beautiful dress. The adjective "beautiful" is the antonym of the word \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. excited      b. calming      c. ugly      d. pleased

٢- مشكلة  
٣- عالي الصوت

7. The adjective "excited" is similar in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_  
a. terrible      b. bored      c. interested      d. sad
8. She has a loud voice. The antonym of the word "loud" is \_\_\_\_\_  
a. low      b. noisy      c. bored      d. happy

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

9. To get the opposite of the word "happy", we add the prefix \_\_\_\_\_  
a. dis-      b. in-      c. un-      d. tele-
10. The verb "buy" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix \_\_\_\_\_  
a. -ful      b. -ion      c. -en      d. -er
11. The verb "excite" is turned into an adjective by using the suffix \_\_\_\_\_  
a. -ed      b. -ian      c. -ly      d. -ful

## Guessing the meaning

12. Karim sent me a message on the internet. This means he sent me a/an \_\_\_\_\_  
a. present      b. email      c. product      d. delivery
13. Rehab bought some necklaces and rings. This means she bought some \_\_\_\_\_  
a. machines      b. sources      c. pottery      d. jewellery
14. Farid returned my phone call. This means he called me \_\_\_\_\_  
a. behind      b. forward      c. back      d. in

## Speaking

## 1 Making and answering complaints

تقديم الشكوى والرد عليها

## Making a complaint

1- I want to make a complaint.

أريد تقديم شكوى.

2- Your website says the delivery takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

يقول الموقع الخاص بكم أن التسليم يستغرق خمسة أيام ولكنني ما زلت أنتظروا!

## Answering a complaint

- Oh, dear. What's the problem?

يا إلهي! ما المشكلة؟

- I'm very sorry about that.

أنا آسف جداً لذلك.

- I will call the delivery company.

سأتصل بشركة التوصيل.







## Review

## Key Vocabulary

poster	ملصق (إوسنر)	jewellery	مجوهرات	password	كلمة المرور
website	موقع إلكتروني	machine	آلة / ماكينة	shell	صدفة
smart	ذكي	headphones	سماعات الرأس	fridge	ثلاجة
laptop	حاسوب محمول	deal	صفقة	oven	فرن
magazine	مجلة	special offer	عرض خاص	decorate (d)	يزين
complaint	شكوى	sale	تخفيض للأسعار (أوكاريون)	charge (d)	يشحن (بالكهرباء)
television	تلفزيون	discount	خصم - تخفيض	order (ed) (n)	يطلب / طلب
kettle	غلاية	speaker	مكبر صوت (سماعة)	call (ed) back	يعاود الاتصال
coffee machine	ماكينة صنع القهوة	microwave	جهاز ميكروويف	email (ed) (n)	يرسل بالبريد الإلكتروني / بريد الكتروني
		handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية / حرف يدوية		

## Important Phrasal Verbs

turn off	يطفئ / يوقف (جهاز)	fill in	يملأ (استمارة)
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	plug in	يوصل بالكهرباء
log in	يسجل الدخول لجهاز		

## Language

## 1- Comparative and Superlative Adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

• تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة وصفات طويلة.  
من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

hot	ساخن	big	كبير	tall	طويل
exciting	مثير	expensive	غالي الثمن	beautiful	جميل

من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "cheap"	صفة + er + than "cheaper than"	the + صفة + est "the cheapest"
	Ex. The microwave is cheaper than the mobile.	Ex. The oven is the cheapest.

long adjective  
"useful"

أكثر / أقل  
more / less + صفة + than

Ex. The mobile is more useful than the microwave.

Review

أكثر / أقل  
the most / the least + صفة

Ex. The computer is the most useful.



- توجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي:

good	جيد	better than	→ the best
bad	سئ	worse than	→ the worst
little	قليل (الاسم لا يعد)	less than	→ the least

Ex. I think English is better than French.

## 2- both, either, neither, none

	both	either	neither	none
الأشخاص	two	two	two	more than two
للربط	both...and..	either....or	neither....nor	none of
صيغة الفعل	plural verb	singular verb	singular verb	singular verb

Ex. Both the friends are tall.

Ex. Either book is mine.

Ex. Either the boy or the girls are in the classroom.

Ex. Either the girls or the boy is in the classroom.

Ex. Neither of the kettles is expensive.

Ex. Neither Ahmed nor the workers are working.

Ex. None of the girls studies well.

Ex. None of the boys wants to buy these phones.

## 3- The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل	فاعل + didn't + inf.	Did + فاعل + inf. ? (كلمة إستفهام)

## Keywords كلمات دالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

## Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

Ex. She cooked fish yesterday.

• يعبر عن عادة في الماضي وانتهت

Ex. I always played football when I was young.



#### 4- The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

##### Form النكوب

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was + (not) + V-ing  
We / You / They / اسم جمع + were

Ex. At 8 o'clock yesterday, I **was studying**.

##### Usage الاستخدام

١- يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. We **were waiting** at the room at 8.00 last night.

٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث طويل كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعاه او وقع اثنا حدث آخر قصير:

Ex. While I **was reading** a story, mum **arrived**.

Ex. When Mona **felt** asleep, she **was watching** TV.

٣- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس التوقيت في الماضي:

Ex. While I **was reading**, my sister **was studying**.

### Speaking

الحديث عن أشياء في منزلك

#### 1) Talking about things in your house.

##### Question

- Which items do you have in your house?
- Which of these items do you think is the most useful?
- Which of these items is the most expensive?
- Which item do you think is the least expensive?
- Do you buy items at the usual price?

##### Answer

- I have a kettle, a coffee machine, a microwave and some other items.
- I think the coffee machine is the most useful.
- The microwave is the most expensive.
- It is the kettle. It was on special offer.
- No, I usually wait for discounts.

شراء (سلعة ما) في محل

#### 2) Buying something in a shop

##### Shop assistant

- How can I help you, sir?
- We have some kettles at special prices.
- We have a discount on other items if you'd like to check them.

##### Customer

- I am looking for a new kettle.
- OK. Let me see them.
- Of course, I'd love to.

#### 3) Making and answering complaints

##### Making a complaint

- I want to make a complaint.
- Your website says the delivery takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

##### Answering a complaint

- Oh, dear. What's the problem?
- I'm very sorry about that.
- I will call the delivery company.
- Can you call me back today, please?

#### General Exercises

تقديم الشكوى والرد عليها

## General Exercises on Unit 2

#### 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Magdy is talking on the phone to make a complaint.

**Sales assistant** : Cairo delivery. How can I help you?

**Magdy** : ① .....

**Sales assistant** : ② .....

**Magdy** : I bought a kettle but you sent me a coffee machine.

**Sales assistant** : I'm awfully sorry. I'll call the delivery company to take it back.

**Magdy** : ③ .....

**Sales assistant** : This will take about two days, sir.

**Magdy** : Can they deliver the correct item this time?

**Sales assistant** : ④ ..... They can't make a mistake this time.

**Magdy** : ⑤ .....

#### 2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

① delivery - online - can - able - discount - account Longman

I read a nice advertisement yesterday. It was about ① ..... shopping. We ② ..... buy what we want and the ③ ..... is free. Besides, we can replace or return the item if we don't like it. At the same time, we can benefit from the available ④ .....

② technology - none - all - assistant - prize - price Longman

Yesterday, I went to a nearby mall to buy a digital camera. The shop ① ..... showed me three models, but ② ..... of them was smart. I walked around and found one that seemed appropriate. I was pleased because it was at a reasonable ③ ..... and up to the latest ④ .....



## 3

I wanted to buy a ① ..... for my mother so I bought a coffee ② ..... from a shop nearby. It looked good in the kitchen. ③ ..... my parents were happy and they liked it. They said it is better than shopping ④ .....

③

1. A / An ..... is a time when a shop sells things at a cheaper price than usual.

1. A / An \_\_\_\_\_ is a time when a ship  
a. account      b. sale      c. poster      d. sail

2. A / An \_\_\_\_\_ is something you can boil water with.

- a. kettle      b. microwave      c. speaker      d. offer

3. He was fortunate enough to win the game, although he didn't play well "Fortunate"

here means "....."

- a. unlucky      b. strong      c. lucky      d. clever

4. The adjective "amazing" is the synonym of the word "\_\_\_\_\_".

- a. bored      b. awful      c. fantastic      d. soft

5. The antonym of the word "traditional "is .....

- a. sharp      b. soft      c. boring      d. modern

6. The adjective "ugly" is the antonym of .....

- a. beautiful      b. peaceful      c. hopeful      d. terrible

7. The verb "speak" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix -----.

- a. -er      b. -ful      c. -ion      d. -ly

8. The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ turns the word "wood" into an adjective.

- a. -ful      b. -ly      c. -en      d. -ian

9. The prefix \_\_\_\_\_ gives the opposite.

- a. re-                      b. un-                      c. e-                      d. tele-

10. Muhamed bought a new speaker for less than the usual price. This means he got a /an .....

- a. discount      b. poster      c. magazine      d. oven

11. Ayman got the wrong item on a delivery, so he asked to send it back. This means he made a / an \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. offer      b. complaint      c. poster      d. handicraft

## General Exercises

## 4

1. .... (Either) Heba nor Rana was in class when the teacher arrived. العربية 2022
2. This is .... (expensive) mobile I have ever seen. It is 50 pounds. الفصحى 2023
3. Neither of my friends .... (be) going to travel to Aswan next Friday. الشرقية 2023
4. While I .... (walk) down the street, I met my old friend Khalid.
5. I was playing football when it .... (start) raining.

## 5

(محباب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A short story about buying some items of Egyptian handicrafts"

[illegible]

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- How much are they?
- How big are they?
- Do you have any special offers?
- What colours/sizes do you have?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I really need you to help me buy ..... . - I want to get a/an ..... .  
- I need it for ..... . - I need it decorated with ..... .  
- Finally, I need to get a/an ..... . - I'm sure it will look amazing.





### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer wants to buy a new smart TV.

Shop assistant : Hello. How can I help you?

Customer : 1

Shop assistant : OK, no problem, you're lucky. We have lots of deals on TVs at the moment.

Customer : 2 ?

Shop assistant : No, sorry, neither of these TVs is smart, but this one over there is smart.

Customer : 3 ?

Shop assistant : It doesn't have a discount. It's 8000 pounds.

### 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You have ordered a kettle online, but the delivery is late. You make a complaint.
2. You are an assistant. You want to know what the problem with an order is.
3. You are the assistant and you tell the customer that you feel sorry about his complaint.
4. You are a shop assistant and you want to know the customer's name and the order number.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### A Vocabulary

#### SB & WB Exercises

1. The microwave has a 25% ..... Usually, it costs 1,000 LE but now it is 750 LE.  
a. discount    b. mistake    c. distance    d. leisure
2. Osama's family have a ..... TV. They can now watch films from the internet.  
a. stupid    b. foolish    c. smart    d. clever
3. When you want to use a machine, first you need to turn it .....  
a. on    b. off    c. out    d. away

#### Al Azhar Exercises

4. Many computers ask you to ..... in before you can use them.  
a. fly    b. put    c. interest    d. log
5. My older brother Karim is very ..... as he has a new phone.  
a. excited    b. sad    c. annoyed    d. angry
6. I have bought some ..... for my phone, so I can play my music more loudly.  
a. kettles    b. computers    c. toasters    d. speakers
7. Now my phone is not working! I need to ..... the battery.  
a. make    b. turn    c. charge    d. do

#### Longman Exercises

8. I bought this watch as a present ..... my mother.  
a. to    b. for    c. with    d. from
9. There is a grand ..... at the shopping centre, let's go there.  
a. sell    b. cell    c. sail    d. sale
10. You need a ..... for your smartphone or personal computer to maintain your privacy and safety.  
a. crossword    b. password    c. key    d. rule
11. Sending letters is a/an ..... means of communication.  
a. up to date    b. online    c. modern    d. traditional
12. We use a /an ..... to keep food cold and fresh.  
a. mixer    b. oven    c. microwave    d. fridge
13. You have sent me the wrong .....; I ordered an oven and not a kettle.  
a. charge    b. change    c. term    d. item
14. I'm proud that the Egyptian cotton clothes are the best .....  
a. amount    b. number    c. quality    d. quantity

#### Bit by Bit Exercises

15. That shop sells pottery and traditional .....  
a. sports    b. hobbies    c. handicrafts    d. interests
16. To use the computer, you must enter your ..... first.  
a. screen    b. address    c. keyboard    d. password
17. The sailors got fantastic ..... from the sea.  
a. shells    b. chairs    c. shores    d. checks
18. I want to make a ..... The delivery is really late.  
a. journey    b. mistake    c. complaint    d. noise
19. When we were at the restaurant, Dina ..... a very big dinner.  
a. gave    b. invited    c. answered    d. ordered



20. Can you ask Mohamed to call me ..... when he gets home?  
a. back b. on c. at d. for
21. Companies and shops use ..... to advertise things, like electronics.  
a. laptops b. posters c. headphones d. microwaves
22. I enjoy wearing my ..... over my ears to listen to the music.  
a. trousers b. shorts c. speakers d. headphones
23. We can use a ..... to boil water.  
a. kettle b. toaster c. fridge d. radio
24. You must ..... in this form.  
a. fail b. fall c. feel d. fill
25. My shoes are made of .....  
a. skin b. cotton c. leather d. wood
26. Omar works hard, so he ..... a lot of money.  
a. wins b. earns c. leaves d. builds
27. I bought a kettle from an online .....  
a. party b. school c. restaurant d. website
28. Ayman didn't get his delivery so he ..... a complaint.  
a. ordered b. baked c. made d. took

## B Language

### SB & WB Exercises

29. Televisions are ..... than kettles.  
a. more expensive b. most expensive  
c. as expensive d. so expensive
30. .... the laptop and the microwave are in the sale.  
a. Either b. Both c. None d. Neither
31. This morning, I ..... to the town centre with my mum.  
a. to go b. goes c. went d. going
32. As I was giving my friend the phone, he ..... it.  
a. drop b. drops c. dropped d. was dropping
33. Kettles are ..... expensive than computers.  
a. many b. most c. less d. least

### Bit by Bit Exercises

34. .... Alexandria and Port Said are on the sea.  
a. Both b. Either c. Neither d. None
35. .... Hany was sleeping, his father came home.  
a. During b. While c. Before d. Where

## Al Azhar Exercises

36. Hazem is ..... than his brother.  
a. strong b. strongest c. stronger d. the strong
37. I think maths is the ..... subject. I'm not good at it.  
a. worse b. worst c. best d. better
38. .... of the two teachers came to the meeting. They were too ill.  
a. Neither b. Either c. Both d. None
39. There were two books here, but ..... of them belonged to me.  
a. no b. neither c. both d. not
40. When the phone rang, I ..... a story.  
a. was reading b. have read c. am reading d. read
41. While he ..... his bicycle, he fell off and broke his leg.  
a. rides b. was riding c. rode d. is riding
42. The computer broke while I ..... my Facebook account.  
a. was checking b. checked c. am checking d. checking
43. It is ..... to buy things in shops than online.  
a. bad b. best c. good d. better

### 4 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Handicrafts that you can buy in your area"

WB

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What handicrafts can you buy?
- What do they look like?
- What are they made of?
- Are they decorated?
- Why do people want to buy them?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I need to buy a/an .....
- The ..... is made of .....
- I need the ..... decorated with .....
- People like to buy ..... because .....



# Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

## 1- A review of items that I have in our kitchen (Lessons 1 & 2)

Our kitchen has modern items. We have an expensive kettle. We use it to get hot water. It is useful. We also have a microwave. It helps us cook food very quickly. It is more useful than the kettle. It is also more expensive. My dad bought us an oven last year. We use it to make nice cakes. We also have a big fridge. We use it to keep foods and drinks cool. It is the most useful item in our kitchen.

## 2- A short story about a problem that I had with technology (Lessons 3 & 4)

Yesterday, I went to the town centre with my mum. We wanted to get a new phone. We took the bus. I bought a cool new phone! On our way home, we met a friend of mine. I showed him my new phone. As I was giving my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it. The phone broke! My friend felt very bad and I was sad. He apologized to me for dropping the phone, and I said it was OK.

## 3- A review of something I bought online (Lessons 5 & 6)

My parents were interested to have a coffee machine. So, I decided to get them a good one. I bought it as a present for them. They were very happy with it. It helped mum make the coffee dad liked. It looked great in their kitchen. It was easy to use. It was also quiet. It made delicious cups of coffee.

The delivery was quick, too! The price was really good. It was really a good day!

## 4- A short story about buying some items from Egyptian handicrafts (General Exercises)

I like Egyptian handicrafts. I live near Khan El-Khalili. I know about Egyptian handicrafts. I want to get a beautiful wooden box. It is for my mum's jewellery. I need it decorated with shells. I also need a leather bag and a pot. The leather bag must have soft leather. Finally, I decided to get a colourful, modern carpet. I'm sure it will look amazing in my home.

## 5- Handicrafts that I can buy in my area (Al Azhar)

My area is famous for handicrafts. I can get beautiful decorated wooden boxes. People used to keep their jewellery safe. I also need to buy a new leather bag. They are made of excellent leather. They have traditional designs.

## 6- A review of shopping online (Test)

I prefer to buy things online. It saves time and effort. Some people don't like to buy things online. They think they may get the wrong item. The delivery may take a long time. I say to most of them, try shopping online one time. You will feel the difference. You need to have some experience when you order things.



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue

Hazem wants to buy a smart TV.

Assistant : How can I help you, sir?

Hazem : ① .....

Assistant : Look at these TVs, they are all new.

Hazem : Are they smart?

Assistant : ② .....

Hazem : ③ .....

Assistant : The bigger one is 8000 pounds,

Hazem : ④ .....

Assistant : Yes, it has a discount of 20%.

Hazem : Great ! ⑤ .....

سنة 2022

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

basket - famous - wood - either - both - boxes

سنة 2023

Aswan is ① ..... for its handicrafts. Once, I bought a ② ..... and a little box. They were made of ③ ..... and leather. My mother said that they ④ ..... were very nice.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Online shopping is popular all over the world as many people prefer it to ordinary shopping. Online shops work day and night. Imagine how it will be useful for busy people. There is no need to drive, walk in the hot weather or stand in long queues to find what you're looking for.

Internet shopping sounds perfect, but it has some main cons, too. Being unable to check your goods before buying is a serious problem. What if the jeans you bought don't fit or they are damaged? Returning an item can be a headache. What if the site you bought from is fake? Internet shopping is causing headaches for shop owners too. They are selling fewer goods and making less money. Despite the problems of online shopping, I believe it will continue to grow.



### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
a. shop owners      b. jeans      c. goods      d. customers
- The underlined word "cons" means .....  
a. pros      b. disadvantages  
c. advantages      d. ideas
- According to the writer, all the following sentences are correct except .....  
a. The online shopping site you buy from can be fake  
b. Returning an online item can be a headache  
c. The online shopping is making a lot of money  
d. The online shopping is unpopular

### B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?  
.....
- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.  
.....
- Do you think that online shopping will continue to grow? Why / Why not?  
.....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To ..... means to make a machine stop working.  
a. turn off      b. turn on      c. fill in      d. log in
- A ..... is equipment that you connect to a phone, radio, computer, etc. so that you can listen to it  
a. special offer      b. microwave      c. discount      d. speaker
- The antonym of the adjective "excited" is the word ".....".  
a. interested      b. low      c. bored      d. cute
- The suffix "-ation" in the word "information" turns the verb into a / an .....  
a. noun      b. adjective      c. preposition      d. adverb
- My mobile battery is empty. This means I need to ..... it.  
a. break      b. throw      c. charge      d. change
- Omnia bought a speaker on a special offer. This means she got a / an .....  
a. poster      b. discount      c. oven      d. present

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ..... (Neither) my sister and I like playing tennis. التجربة 2022
- This is the ..... (easy) exam I have ever done. المنها 2022
- ..... (During) he was climbing the tree, he found a nest.
- Ali is ..... (tall) than his friend Sherif.
- We ..... (was) sleeping when our father came home.

## D Writing

### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاوب عنه قبل اختبار الوحدة)

"A review of shopping online"

أسبوع 2023

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What do you think of shopping online?
- How long does the delivery take?
- Are there any discounts?
- How much is the delivery?
- What colours/sizes do you have?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I really think .....
- It doesn't take .....
- It is not expensive .....
- There are sometimes discounts .....



# My community

## Objectives

### Reading:

An article about a plan to help people; a community social network page; David Copperfield; an online message about a community project

### Writing:

An article about how to help people; a social network message about a community problem; a survey about your community

### Listening:

A conversation about a community survey; a discussion at a community

meeting; people greeting and introducing each other

### Speaking:

Describing communities and community problems; using formal and informal introductions and greetings

### Language:

Adjectives ending in -ing or -ed

### Life Skills:

Participation: responsible behaviour; Respect for diversity



## Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22-25 WB pages 86-87

### Key Vocabulary

pavement	رصيف الشارع	education	التعليم
public services	خدمات عامة	leisure	ترفيه
health care	رعاية صحية	neighbourhood	حي سكني - اهل الحي
elderly	كبير السن	encourage(d)	يشجع
The Decent Life Initiative	مبادرة حياة كريمة	deliver(ed)	يوصل

### Things in a good community

facilities	مرافق - تسهيلات	community events	فعاليات مجتمعية
safe streets	شوارع آمنة	community projects	مشاريع مجتمعية
sports activities	أنشطة رياضية	equal opportunities	فرص متساوية
good transport	وسائل مواصلات جيدة	local shops	محلات محلية

### Vocabulary

businesses	شركات / أعمال تجارية	young people	الشباب
architect	مهندس معماري	job opportunities	فرص عمل
streetlights	مصابيح الشوارع	survey	استطلاع رأي
disabled	ذوي الهمم	works of arts	أعمال فنية
rural	ريفي	improve (d)	يحسن
festival	مهرجان	cough (ed)	يسعل (يكح)
accessible	يمكن الوصول إليه	volunteer (ed) (n)	بتطوع / متطوع
washing machine	غسالة		

### Definitions

pavement	رصيف الشارع	the part that you walk on in a city that is next to a road
leisure	ترفيه (وقت الفراغ)	time when you are not working
facilities	مرافق	equipment, rooms, etc. that people can use to do something
equal opportunities	فرص متساوية	having the same chances <sup>(1)</sup> in life as other people
elderly	كبير السن	old or becoming old

ا-فرص



neighborhood	حي سكني	a small area of a town or village and the people who live in it
encourage	يشجع	try to make people do something by giving support and advice
deliver	يوصل	take a letter or object to a place or building
make a difference	يحدث فرق	- having a good effect on a person, place or situation - change <sup>(2)</sup> things in a good way
survey	استطلاع رأي	a group of questions that you ask people to find out information about something
health care	رعاية صحية	looking after people's health
public services	خدمات عامة	services, such as electricity or water, to help the members of a community

### Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / opposite	المضاد
public	عام	common		private	خاص
encourage	يشجع	support		discourage	يحبط
equal	متساوي	the same		different / unequal	مختلف / غير متساوي
local	محلي	national		international	دولي
elderly	كبير السن	old		young	صغير السن
deliver	يوصل	hand over		receive	يستلم
safe	آمن	secure		dangerous	خطير
repair	يصلح	mend / fix		damage	يتلف
wide	واسع / عريض	broad		narrow	ضيق

### Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix/Suffix	Use	Examples
en-	n → v	encourage تحويل الاسم إلى الفعل
dis-	opposite	disabled تعطى عكس المعنى
trans-	move across	transport تعطى معنى «ينقل»
-ence		difference اختلاف
-ment	v → n	pavement تحويل الفعل إلى الاسم
-ion		education التعليم
-ing	v → adj	including تحويل الفعل إلى الصفة
-ly	adj → adv	actually تحويل الصفة إلى الحال
-hood	n	neighbourhood تكون اسم

## Expressions & Prepositions

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

start a project

do well

find work for

make streets safer

make a difference

people of all ages

have a better education

يبدأ مشروع

يحسن صلباً

يجد عمل لـ

يجعل الشوارع أكثر أمناً

يحدث فرق

الناس من كل الأعمار

يحصل على تعليم أفضل

at a meeting

live on a boat

stop .... from....

aim to

put up streetlights

find out about

في اجتماع

يعيش على قارب

يمنع ..... من ...

يهدف إلى

يعلق مصابيح في الشوارع

يكشف

### Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

learn

see

put

find

يتعلم / يعرف

يرى

يضع

يجد

Past simple

learnt / learned

saw

put

found

Past Participle

learnt / learned

seen

put

found

### Language Notes

#### 1) make

• make + object + adj | يجعل  
Ex. Smoking can make you ill.

• make + object + Inf | مصدر الفعل + Inf  
Ex. Exercises make the heart beat faster.

#### 2) work

• work | عمل (اسم لا يعد)  
Ex. I have got much work to do.

• work | عمل فني أو أدبي (اسم يعد)  
Ex. My dad has got the complete works of Naguib Mahfouz.

#### 3) the + adjective = a noun

• بعض الصفات إذا سبقتها أداة التعريف the تحول إلى اسم جمع ويلبها فعل جمع :

the elderly	كبار السن	the disabled	ذوي الهمم
the rich	الأغنياء	the young	الشباب
the poor	الفقراء	the dead	الموتى

Ex. The rich should help the poor.



## Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What time do you start ..... ? B: At 8 am.  
 a. work      b. works      c. a works      d. a work
2. The music made the baby ..... relaxed.  
 a. feeling      b. feels      c. feel      d. felt
3. We should help and respect .....  
 a. elderly      b. the elderly      c. as elderly      d. more elderly

## Audioscript

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Fareed** : I think the best thing about our community<sup>(1)</sup> is the facilities<sup>(2)</sup>. We have some great shops and places to go to, like the library.



- ١- مجتمع  
 ٢- مرافق  
 ٣- تتطوع  
 ٤- خاصة  
 ٥- كبار السن  
 ٦- التكنولوجيا  
 ٧- ترفيه  
 ٨- ملعب  
 ٩- يمكن الوصول إليه

**Salah** : Yes, I think we have a very strong community. We have lots of community projects where we can volunteer<sup>(3)</sup> to help people, especially<sup>(4)</sup> the elderly<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Fareed** : Yes, we're starting a project next month where young people are going to help the elderly learn more about technology<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Salah** : We have really good leisure<sup>(7)</sup> activities here, too - sports facilities and the children's playground<sup>(8)</sup>, for example. There are lots of places where families can enjoy being outside together.

**Fareed** : That's right, but I think we could improve our equal opportunities. Our pavements, for example, are not accessible<sup>(9)</sup> for all and make it difficult for disabled people to use them.

**Salah** : You're right. They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting, actually.

**Fareed** : We should go.

**Salah** : Good idea!

## Reading

SB page (24)

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

The Decent Life Initiative<sup>(1)</sup>

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference<sup>(2)</sup> to about 32 million people who live in rural<sup>(3)</sup> areas in Egypt.



The initiative aims to improve the quality of public services<sup>(4)</sup>. It provides more health care<sup>(5)</sup>, better education<sup>(6)</sup> and better job opportunities<sup>(7)</sup>. Since 2019, the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to deliver<sup>(8)</sup> medicine and help people who are ill. It has also improved<sup>(9)</sup> facilities for disabled<sup>(10)</sup> people, and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. In addition<sup>(11)</sup>, young people will also be encouraged<sup>(12)</sup> to find out about the interesting new businesses<sup>(13)</sup>. The Decent Life Initiative is opening, which can give them work.

The Decent Life Initiative will continue<sup>(14)</sup> to help people in poor neighborhoods<sup>(15)</sup> around the country. It plans to help to find work for more than five million young people.

## Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الإجابة أسفله)

1. What's the main idea of the text? ما هي الفكرة الأساسية في النص؟  
 2. Infer from the text what the initiative aims to? استنتج من النص إلى ما تهدف المبادرة؟  
 3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence. لخّص الفقرة الأخيرة في جملة واحدة.

## Writing Skill (أجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الإنشائي)

1. The initiative provides more health care. توفر المبادرة المزيد من العناية الصحية.  
 2. It helps people to have clean water. تساعد الناس على الحصول على مياه نظيفة.  
 3. It has improved facilities for disabled people. حسّنت من التسهيلات لذوي الهمم.  
 4. It will continue to help people in poor neighbourhood. ستستمر لمساعدة الناس في الأحياء الفقيرة.

3. The initiative will help poor people and young people to find work.  
 2. To improve the quality of public services.  
 1. The Decent Life Initiative.  
 مبادرات حياة كريمة.  
 لتحسين جودة الخدمات العامة.  
 ستستمر المبادرة لمساعدة الفقراء والناشئة على إيجاد عمل.

Answers



I live in a great community. There are lots of **sports activities** for young people, such as **volleyball** and tennis clubs. There are also many **local** facilities for people of all ages, **including** a great **theatre** and a history museum. Our **roads** have **wide** pavements, so it is not a problem for disabled people to travel around. I help at one of the community projects, too. We help the elderly to learn about the **latest** technology. My grandmother sends lots of text **messages** now!



- ١- أنشطة رياضية  
٢- لعبة الكرة الطائرة  
٣- محلي  
٤- مشتملاً على  
٥- مسرح  
٦- طرّيق  
٧- واسع  
٨- الأحدث  
٩- رسائل

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

- To ..... is to take a letter or object to a place or building. Longman SB  
a. deliver      b. encourage      c. surprise      d. discuss
- ..... mean(s) services, such as electricity or water, to help the members of a community. المجموعة 2022 SB  
a. Leisure      b. Public services      c. Health services      d. Neighbourhood
- ..... is a small area of a town or village and the people who live in it. البحيرة 2022 SB  
a. Opportunity      b. Difference      c. Neighbourhood      d. Leisure
- A / An ..... is the part that you walk on in a city that is next to a road.  
a. pavement      b. project      c. survey      d. elderly
- The word ..... refers to the time when you are not working.  
a. service      b. career      c. care      d. leisure
- ..... are equipment, rooms, etc. that people can use to do something.  
a. Pavements      b. Facilities      c. Opportunities      d. Surveys
- A / An ..... is a group of questions that you ask people to find out information about something.  
a. exercise      b. service      c. survey      d. example

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- The word "public" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. special      b. private      c. different      d. general
- The city is building new facilities for the elderly. The word "elderly" is the opposite of .....  
a. young      b. old      c. aged      d. ancient

- The verb "encourage" is the same meaning as .....  
a. improve      b. support      c. discourage      d. develop
- The word "local" is a synonym of .....  
a. international      b. universal      c. national      d. global
- The opposite of the verb "deliver" is .....  
a. discourage      b. develop      c. bring      d. receive
- Mustafa can repair his bike. The antonym of "repair" is .....  
a. damage      b. fix      c. mend      d. drive
- Do you think this crowded place is safe for children? "Safe" is similar in meaning to ".....". Longman  
a. serious      b. poor      c. pure      d. secure
- You should encourage students to achieve more progress, don't ..... them. Longman  
a. urge      b. discourage      c. allow      d. support

### Prefixes & Suffixes

- The suffix ..... turns the verb "pave" into a noun.  
a. -ment      b. -ous      c. -ible      d. -ly
- We add the prefix ..... to the word "courage" to get the verb.  
a. in-      b. im-      c. ir-      d. en-
- We use the suffix ..... to turn the verb "educate" into a noun.  
a. -ible      b. -ly      c. -ion      d. -ive
- The prefix ..... is added to the word "port" to refer to cars, trains, boats, etc.  
a. trans-      b. astro-      c. in-      d. un-
- We add the suffix ..... to the word neighbour to mean a small area in a city. العربية 2023 Longman  
a. -hood      b. -ous      c. -ment      d. -less

### Guessing the meaning

- Doctors and nurses look after people's health. This means people have ..... by doctors and nurses.  
a. facilities      b. neighbourhood      c. health care      d. survey
- Mohamed Salah scores a lot of goals for his team. This means he ..... to his team.  
a. delivers      b. makes a difference      c. laughs      d. repairs
- I think men and women should have the same work chances. They should have ..... opportunities. Longman  
a. equal      b. unequal      c. different      d. unfair



## Language

## 1. The present continuous tense

لأن المضارع المستمر

## Form النحوي

I	→ am	} + V-ing.
He / She / It / (اسم مفرد)	→ is	
We / They / You / (اسم جمع)	→ are	

Ex. He **is playing** tennis at the moment.

## Negative النفي

am, is, are + not + v-ing

Ex. Sally **is not (isn't) sleeping** now, she **is studying**.

## Question السؤال

Am, Is, Are + فاعل + v-ing?

١- للسؤال ب (هل) نستخدم:

٢- للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

Am, Is, Are + فاعل + v-ing ..... ?

Ex. **Are you** **reading** a story at present?Ex. **Where** **are you** ?

## Usage الاستخدام

١- للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام):

Ex. They **are sitting** in my English class now.

٢- للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام):

Ex. She **is doing** a course in Cairo University these days.

٣- للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. We **are painting** the school this week.

٤- للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها في المستقبل (مثل حجز تذكرة السفر / الترتيب لإقامة حفل) حيث يتم تحديد المكان والزمن.

Ex. We **are starting** a project next month.

تذكر: الكلمات الآتية غالباً ما تعبر عن استخدام المضارع المستمر في التعبير عن المستقبل:

- arrange (v) يرتب

- arrangements (n) ترتيبات

- prepare (v) يحضر

- preparations (n) تجهيزات

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظروا	Look out!	احذروا	still	ما زال
Listen!	استمعوا	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	now	الآن
Watch out!	احذروا	at present	في الوقت الحاضر		

## Remember: will + inf.

- نستخدم (will + inf) للآتي:

١- للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل بناءً على رأي شخصي دون وجود دليل.

Ex. I think / expect it **will be** hard but fun at university.Ex. The phone is ringing. I **will answer** it.Ex. I **will give** you the camera you like.

٢- اتخاذ قرارات سريعة.

٣- تقديم الوعود.

## Exercises on the present continuous

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

- They ..... (discussing) this problem at the next community meeting. **SB**
- We ..... (build) a new house next month. We have arranged everything. **SB**
- We ..... (spend) the weekend in Port Said. Everything is arranged. **SB**
- We are ..... (start) a new project next Sunday. It's arranged. **SB**

## Longman Exercises

- Mr Rady ..... (leave) for London tomorrow as arranged.
- Amany ..... (travel) tomorrow. She has got the tickets.
- Look! the manager's car ..... (coming) over there.
- Rami ..... (doesn't play) football now, he is studying at home.
- Why are the workers ..... (dig) here?

## Bit by Bit Exercises

- Are you ..... (prepare) lunch at the moment?
- Muhammad and Mustafa ..... (tidy) their room now.
- Are you having a party ..... (yesterday)?
- I can't see you tomorrow. I am ..... (visited) my relatives.
- Mo'men ..... (getting) married tomorrow.
- They are ..... (bought) a new house next month.

## 2. Adjectives ending in (-ing) or (-ed)

١- نستخدم الصفات المنتهية ب (-ed) والصفات المنتهية ب (-ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.

٢- تشير الصفات المنتهية ب (-ing) إلى من/ ما يسبب الصفة:

Ex. Hassan is an amazing friend.

(مدهش / يسبب الدهشة للآخرين)

Ex. The animals were frightening.

(يسبب الرعب)

٣- تشير الصفات المنتهية ب (-ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعرون لديه هذه الصفة:

Ex. Hassan is amazed.

(مدهش (أي شاعر بالدهشة)

Ex. On seeing the fire, the animals were frightened.

(مرعوب / خائف (أي شاعر بالرعب)



ادرس الصفات التالية وكلها بنطبق عليها القواعد السابقة:

interested	مهتم	interesting	شيق
tired	متعب	tiring	متعب
relaxed	مسترخي	relaxing	مريح للاعصاب
amazed	مدهش	amazing	مدهش
excited	فلحتمس	exciting	مثير
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل
disappointed	محنط	disappointing	مُحبط
surprised	مدهش	surprising	مدهش

## Exercises on -ing/-ed Adjectives

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

- I was ..... (disappoint) to hear that the community centre was closing.
- I did well in my exams. I was really ..... (surprise) because I found the questions difficult.
- Today's maths lesson was very ..... (interest). I learned a lot.
- The children are very ..... (exciting) because they have a new toy!
- The walk over the mountains was beautiful, but it was very ..... (tired).
- Hoson is ..... (interest) in watching football matches.

### Longman Exercises

- You are ..... (amaze), Rami, you have made a great success.
- She was ..... (upsets) because the news was upsetting.

### Blit by Blit Exercises

- He feels ..... (relax) when he listens to music.
- The film was really ..... (interest).
- Mustafa was ..... (excite) to see the match.
- The match was ..... (bored), so I stopped watching it.
- Hazem was ..... (disappoint) when he lost the match.

## Speaking

### Asking and answering about your own community

السؤال والإجابة عن مجتمعتك

- للتحدث عن الأشياء في مجتمعك يمكن أن نسأل ونجيب كالآتي:

#### Question

- What do you think are the best things about your own community?  
برأيك ما هي أفضل الأشياء في مجتمعك؟
- Are there any facilities for the elderly and disabled people?  
هل يوجد تسهيلات / مرافق لكبار السن وذوي الهمم؟
- Are people doing anything to improve the facilities? What?  
هل يقوم الناس بأي شيء لتحسين التسهيلات / المرافق؟ ما هي؟

#### Answer

- I like sports facilities.  
أحب المرافق الرياضية.
- Yes, there are many facilities for them.  
نعم، يوجد الكثير من التسهيلات / المرافق من أجلهم.
- Yes. Everyone keeps them clean.  
نعم، كل فرد يحافظ عليها.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking to Mary about his community.

Mary : What is the problem in your community?

Mustafa : ① .....

Mary : Why do you need leisure and sports facilities?

Mustafa : ② .....

Mary : Are there any facilities for elderly and disabled people?

Mustafa : ③ .....

Mary : ④ .....

Mustafa : Yes, I like my town very much.

Mary : ⑤ .....

Mustafa : Yes, we all help each other.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

food - amazed - facilities - disabled - amazing - projects

My community is ① ..... My community has many ② ..... for people. We have wide pavements, so the ③ ..... can move easily. Here, people can help at many ④ ..... I love my community.



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We should encourage our sons to do sports. "Encourage" is the antonym of  
a support b help c discourage d disconnect
- We were walking on the side of the street. This means we were walking on the  
a pavement b wall c platform d park
- Make a "..." means having a good effect on a person, place or situation.  
a care b facility c money d difference
- The word "..." gives the opposite of "local".  
a national b international c safe d private
- The suffix "..." turns the adjective "actual" into an adverb.  
a -ly b -y c -ing d -ion

Longman

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast. She is really ..... (amaze).
- (Will) ..... everyone here visiting the museum tomorrow?
- The government ..... (build) a new school in our village.  
Everything is ready.
- Look, the child ..... (lie) on the floor.
- Who ..... (you wait) for at the moment?

Longman

Longman

Longman

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"What you can do to help poor people in your community". "The Decent Life Initiative"  
Write a review

البنية التحتية - بنية تحتية - البنية التحتية

محتاج عنه في آخر الوحدة

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Why do some people need help?
- What interesting ideas do you have to help them?
- Why could these ideas make a difference to them?
- How do you feel about it?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I was ..... to see how many people are poor in my community.
- I work for ..... in my community.
- We have ..... plan that can make a difference to them.
- We help people in a lot of villages to .....
- I really feel ..... about that.

# Lessons 3 & 4

WB pages 28-29 WB pages 30-31

## Key Vocabulary

noticeboard

leaflet

lodger

social network service

لوحة إعلانات

مستور / كتيب

سكن / نزيل

خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية

bench

graffiti

tenant

pay (paid) for

greet (ed)

مقاعد طويلة

كتابة ورسوم على الجدران

مستأجر

يدفع (لمن شئ)

يحيي / يرحب

## Adjectives & Nouns

kind

dark

ill

sweet

weak

kindness

darkness

illness

sweetness

weakness

عطف

ظلام

مرض

حلاوة الطعم

ضعف

## Vocabulary

local newspaper

radio station

charity

experience

lost

disappointed

healthy meal

matters

furniture

صحيفة محلية

محطة إذاعة

جمعية خيرية

خبرة

مفقود - ضائع

محبط

وجبة صحية

قضايا - أمور

أثاث

stranger

pleasant

hall

posters

communication

media

donate (d)

communicate (d)

respect (ed)

شخص غريب

سار - مبهج

قاعة

ملصقات

التواصل

الإعلام

يتبرع

يتواصل

يحترم

## Definitions

greet

يحيي

say hello to or welcome someone

lodger

سكن / نزيل

someone who pays to live in a room in another person's house

pay

يدفع (لمن شئ)

give money for work someone has done

graffiti

الكتابة على الجدران

writing or pictures that people paint or draw on walls or buildings, although they shouldn't do this



noticeboard	لوحة إعلانات	a board <sup>(1)</sup> that people put on a wall to put messages on	١- لوحة
social network service	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية	a website that allows you to communicate <sup>(2)</sup> and share information with people in your area	٢- يتواصل ٣- مقعد ٤- ميزة - صفة ٥- يتوقف ٦- غريب
bench	مقعد طويل	a long seat <sup>(3)</sup> for two people or more	
kindness	عطف	the quality <sup>(4)</sup> of being kind, helpful towards other people	
tenant	مستأجر	someone who pays to live in a house	
surprised	مدهش	if you are surprised, you do not expect <sup>(5)</sup> something and it seems strange <sup>(6)</sup> or unusual	

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
greet		welcome	يحيى	ignore	يتجاهل
kind		friendly / caring	عطوف	unkind	غير عطوف
unwell		sick / ill	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة
pleasant		enjoyable	سار - مبهج	unpleasant	غير مبهج
general		common	عام	private	خاص
weak		faint	ضعيف	strong	قوي

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

Prefix/Suffix	Use	Examples
un-	opposite	unwell مريض
-ness	adj → n	kindness / illness عطف/مرض
-ion	v → n	communication تواصل
-er	person	stranger / lodger / manager غريب/نزير/مدير
-y		healthy صحي/بصحة جيدة
-al	n → adj	social اجتماعي
-ant		pleasant سار

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

have experience	لديه خبرة	on the notice board	على لوحة الإعلانات
give ... a call	يتصل بـ	pleased by	مسرور من
fail his exams	يرسب في امتحاناته	surprised by	مدهش من
people in need	الناس المحتاجون	by the river	بجوار النهر
do work	يؤدي عملاً	covered in	مغطى بـ
for a rest	من أجل الراحة	clean up	ينظف
sit on a bench	يجلس على مقعد	communicate with	يتواصل مع
kind to	عطوف علي		

## Irregular Verbs

## Present

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
say	يقول	said
hit	يضرب	hit
eat	يأكل	ate
give	يعطي	gave
pay for	يدفع لمن شيء	paid for

## Language Notes

## ① • Plural names of people

من الممكن ان يجمع اسم الشخص بعد (the) ويكون المعنى (أفراد عائلة .....).

Ex. The Adels are going to travel to America.

## ② • try

• try + v-ing. يجرب ويبري النتيجة

Ex. Did you try turning the computer off and on again?

• try + to + Inf. يحاول ان يفعل شيء (بمجهود)

Ex. I'm trying to learn Japanese but it's very difficult.

## ③ • lodger / tenant

• lodger ساكن / نزير

شخص يؤجر غرفة من صاحب منزل ويسكن معه في نفس المنزل

Ex. Mrs Mona is searching for a lodger for a room in her house.

• tenant مستأجر

شخص يؤجر مكان من صاحب منزل لا يعيش معه في نفس المنزل

Ex. I have got a lot of tenants for my new house.

## ④ • graffiti / calligraphy

• graffiti كتابة ورسوم على الجدران

Ex. I was upset to find bad graffiti on my house walls.

• calligraphy فن الخط

Ex. This letter is written in beautiful calligraphy.

## ⑤ • experience / experiment

• experience تجربة في الحياة (اسم بعد)

Ex. She had many sad experiences in her life.

• experience خبرة (اسم لا بعد)

Ex. This job needs long experience in banking.

• experiment تجربة في المعمل

Ex. I like doing experiments in science lessons.



## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: I'm feeling hot. B: Why don't you try ..... a medicine?  
a. take b. to take c. taking d. takes
2. A new ..... met the house's owner to get a room and live with him.  
a. tenant b. owner c. seller d. lodger
3. The wall is covered in nice .....  
a. geography b. graffiti c. charity d. station
4. Mr Ayman had good ..... in teaching.  
a. experiment b. export c. expert d. experience

## Audioscript

SB Page (26)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Man** : Thank you all for coming along to the **meeting**<sup>(1)</sup>. I'm going to show you a page on the whiteboard. Can you all see it **clearly**<sup>(2)</sup>?

**Teen girl** : What is the page from - Is it a **website**<sup>(3)</sup>?

**Man** : Yes, it's a website for the local community to share ideas, called a social network service page. We're going to start one, too. Is anyone interested in helping?

**Woman** : It's a very good way to **communicate**<sup>(4)</sup> with everyone - after all, not everyone can come to meetings. And it's much quicker and cheaper than delivering **leaflets**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Teen boy** : How do we start?

## Reading

SB page (26)

## Community Matters

▶ The kindness<sup>(1)</sup> of strangers<sup>(2)</sup>

Thanks to the kind person who helped my elderly neighbour last week. He felt **unwell**<sup>(3)</sup>, and someone kindly helped him to a **bench**<sup>(4)</sup> to sit on for a rest.

## ▶ We need more trees!

A few of us are going to plant some trees along the streets. It will help with **pollution**<sup>(5)</sup> and also encourage more visitors to our town. Who is interested in **joining**<sup>(6)</sup> our project?

- ١- عطف  
٢- اغراب  
٣- مريض  
٤- مقعد طويل  
٥- التلوث  
٦- يلتحق بـ

## ▶ Computer repairs

Hi neighbours - I have **experience**<sup>(7)</sup> in repairing computers and mobile phones. Give me a call if you need help!

▶ Let's help those in need!<sup>(8)</sup>

Please **donate**<sup>(9)</sup> food to people who don't have enough. Volunteers are also wanted to help deliver boxes.

## ▶ Art class

The community centre is going to be closed on Saturday next week, from 4 pm - 7 pm, for an art class.

▶ Graffiti<sup>(10)</sup>

I was **disappointed**<sup>(11)</sup> to see the graffiti on the walls of the town **hall**<sup>(12)</sup>. This is a **historic**<sup>(13)</sup> building! What are we going to do about it?

## Say it correctly

- bench

يُطَق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة [choose].

SB Page (28)

## David Copperfield By Charles Dickens

I was working in the **factory**<sup>(1)</sup> when one day, my **manager**<sup>(2)</sup> greeted me. 'You have a visitor,' he said, 'This is Mr Micawber.' 'Pleased to meet you, David,' said the man. 'I'd like you to be my **lodger**<sup>(3)</sup>.'

He took me to his house after work. It was as poor and old as he was. He lived there with his thin wife, their baby and two small children.

'I never thought that we'd need a lodger,' said Mrs Micawber. 'But we don't have enough money, you see.'

I was ten years old and I had no help from my family, but my money from the factory paid for my food and room.

**The Micawbers**<sup>(4)</sup> were very kind, but they were even poorer than me. One day, Mrs Micawber said, 'We have nothing to eat in the house!'

I tried to give her some money.

'I can't take this,' she said. 'But we have some things that we can sell. Can you help us?'

So I sold some of their old books and **furniture**<sup>(5)</sup>. I gave the money to Mrs Micawber, and she was able to cook us all a healthy meal.

WB Page (88)

## Events for next weekend

- ♦Volunteers needed! Help us to clean up the park, 9 am
- ♦Food market, from 8 am - 2 pm, **by**<sup>(1)</sup> the river
- ♦Handball **competition**<sup>(2)</sup>, starts 2 pm at the sports centre
- ♦Famous **architect**<sup>(3)</sup> to talk at the new museum, 4 pm
- ♦The Shakespeare **play**<sup>(4)</sup> *King Lear* at the theatre, 6 pm

- ١- بجوار  
٢- مسابقة  
٣- مهندس معماري  
٤- مسرحية

- ٧- خبرة  
٨- المحتاجون  
٩- تبرع  
١٠- رسوم وكتابة على الجدران  
١١- محبط  
١٢- قاعة  
١٣- تاريخي



## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

1. A ..... is someone who pays to live in another person's house. SB  
 a. owner      b. buyer      c. seller      d. lodger
2. To ..... means to give money for work someone has done. SB  
 a. buy      b. pay      c. sail      d. sell
3. A / An ..... is a board that people put on a wall to put messages on. Longman  
 a. post      b. address      c. noticeboard      d. traffic light
4. .... means what you feel when you don't expect something and it seems strange or unusual. كفر الشيخ 2023  
 a. Pleased      b. Surprised      c. Interested      d. Bored
5. .... is writing or pictures that people paint or draw on walls. العربية / الفيوم 2023  
 a. Graffiti      b. Tenant      c. Service      d. Bench
6. "....." means say hello to or welcome someone.  
 a. Get      b. Pay      c. Greet      d. Gain
7. A ..... is a long seat for two people or more.  
 a. chair      b. bench      c. disc      d. coach
8. A ..... is someone who pays to live in a house.  
 a. manager      b. stranger      c. charity      d. tenant

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

9. Our teacher is kind and helpful. The synonym of "kind" is ..... بنى سويف 2023  
 a. cold      b. unkind      c. friendly      d. hard
10. The word "pleasant" is similar in meaning to .....  
 a. unpleasant      b. enjoyable      c. cruel      d. bad
11. After Adel had worked hard, he felt weak. The antonym of "weak" is .....  
 a. strong      b. ill      c. strange      d. sick
12. The word "....." gives the opposite of "general".  
 a. faint      b. common      c. public      d. private

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

13. We add the suffix ..... to the word "dark" to make a noun.  
 a. -ness      b. -ion      c. -ity      d. -ing
14. We can change the word "well" into the opposite by adding the prefix .....  
 a. im-      b. in-      c. un-      d. dis-

15. The suffix "-ion" turns the verb "communicate" into a / an .....  
 a. adjective      b. noun      c. adverb      d. opposite
16. We get the noun from the adjective "kind" by adding the suffix ..... الدقهلية 2023  
 a. -ion      b. -er      c. -ness      d. -al
17. The suffix "-er" in the word "stranger" refers to a / an .....  
 a. place      b. time      c. area      d. person
18. To get the adjective from "health", we add the suffix .....  
 a. -y      b. -ant      c. -ly      d. -al

## Guessing the meaning

19. There's a place to sit in the park. This means there's a .....  
 a. graffiti      b. bench      c. tablet      d. bed
20. Karam pays for a room to live in a house with its owner. This means he is a .....  
 a. lodger      b. owner      c. seller      d. tenant
21. We can now communicate with people online on our community. This means we use .....  
 a. darkness      b. bench      c. graffiti      d. social network service
22. I feel sick. This means I am not ..... Longman  
 a. unwell      b. well      c. bad      d. exhausting



## Language

## (be) going to + Inf.

Statement / Negative	Question
فاعل + am / Is / are (not) going to + Inf.	Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + Inf. ?

◀ نستخدم ( سوف ) (be going to) للتعبير عن التالي:  
 - التنبؤ المبني على دليل (في المضارع):

Ex. There are a lot of clouds in the sky. It's going to rain.

- خطط مستقبلية أو أحداث قررنا فعلها مسبقاً (التركيز هنا على النوايا والقرارات التي سبق اتخاذها)

Ex. We're going to start our own social network service.

- يمكن عمل سؤال كالاتي:

Ex. What are we going to do about it?

- الكلمات الآتية غالباً ما تعبر عن استخدام (be) going to

نية Intention - يلوو Intend / يخطط - خطة plan / قرار decision - يقرر decide





- ١- نستخدم **be going to** بعد **think** طالما أن هناك دليل.  
 ٢- لاحظ الفرق بين **(be going to) / (present continuous)** في الأمثلة الآتية:  
**Ex. I'm travelling to Alexandria next week. Everything is arranged.**  
**Ex. I'm going to travel to Alexandria next week. It's my intention.**  
 - الجملة الأولى **(present continuous)** تعبر عن ترتيبات نهائية مسقة بمعنى أنه تم حبل تذاكر السفر وعمل باقي الترتيبات.  
 - أما الجملة الثانية **(be going to)** فتعبر عن نية المتحدث دون الترتيب لذلك.

## Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

- What are you going ..... (do) at the weekend? دمياط 2022
- Salah ..... (go) to visit Egypt next week. It's his plan. اسيوط 2022
- He ..... (join) a sports club. This is his plan. اسيوط 2023
- We ..... (going) to clean up the rubbish in our street. سوهاج / أسوان 2023
- We ..... (build) a new house next month. We have arranged everything. الفيوم 2023

### Longman Exercises

- A:** Where do you intend to spend the weekend?  
**B:** I ..... (will) spend it in my village.
- Sherif ..... (go) to Alexandria, he has decided to go there.
- We ..... (going) to spend the evening outdoors.
- The sky is clear, it ..... (not rain).

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- The engineer ..... (going) to build a new villa.
- We are ..... (to take) the train to Luxor. We've booked the tickets.
- We are going to ..... (cleaning) our flat next week.
- Hossam is running fast; I think he ..... (is winning) the race.
- Are you ..... (to study) maths when you grow up?
- Ayman ..... (are meeting) a friend tomorrow. He has arranged everything.
- The car's engine is ready. It ..... (going to move).
- What are you ..... (go) to do after you finish your study?
- Yasmine is ..... (to visit) Paris next year. She has got an invitation.
- My father ..... (aren't) going to stay in Luxor.
- Where are they going to ..... (watched) the film?
- Are you ..... (gone) to meet your friend Hazem?
- He is studying hard. I think he ..... (is passing) his exams.
- I think they are ..... (go to build) new facilities soon.
- ..... (Does) he going to travel abroad?

## Speaking

### 1 Talking about forms of communication in your community

الحديث عن اشكال التواصل في مجتمعك

للحديث عن اشكال التواصل في مجتمعك يمكن ان نسأل ونجيب كالتالي:

- Do you communicate with other people in your community?**  
 هل تتواصل مع الآخرين في مجتمعك؟  
 - Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- If you could communicate with others, which of the following forms of communication could you use? Why?**

إذا كنت تتواصل مع الآخرين، أي من اشكال التواصل الآتية يمكن ان تستخدمها؟ لماذا؟

• meetings	الاجتماعات / اللقاءات
• a local newspaper	صحيفة محلية
• a community centre noticeboard	لوحة الإعلانات في مركز المجتمع
• a social network service	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية
• posters	ملصقات
• leaflets	منشورات
• a local radio station	محطة إذاعة محلية

### 2 Talking about your community problems

الحديث عن المشكلات في مجتمعك:

للحديث عن المشكلات في مجتمعك يمكن ان نسأل ونجيب كالتالي:

#### Question

- What are the problems in your community?  
 ما هي المشكلات في مجتمعك؟
- What are you going to do to improve the situation you chose?  
 ماذا ستفعل لتحسين الموقف الذي اخترته؟
- How are you going to encourage people to help you do this?  
 كيف ستشجع الناس ليساعدوك في فعل ذلك؟

#### Answer

- Too much traffic near the school  
 الكثير من حركة المرور قرب المدرسة
- Noisy neighbours.  
 جيران مزعجون
- No facilities for disabled people  
 لا يوجد تسهيلات لذوي الهمم
- Not enough leisure activities for young people  
 لا يوجد أنشطة وقت الفراغ كافية للشباب
- Graffiti on the walls of historic buildings.  
 كتابة على جدران المباني التاريخية
- I'm going to keep my community clean and beautiful.  
 سوف احافظ على مجتمعي نظيفاً وجميلاً
- I'm going to make posters and leaflets to encourage people to help me with this.  
 سوف افهم بعمل ملصقات ومنشورات لكي اشجع الناس ان يساعدوني في ذلك.



## General Exercises

on Lessons 3 &amp; 4



## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ammar is asking Abdullah about forms of communication in his community.

Ammar : Do you communicate with other people in your community?

Abdullah ① .....

Ammar : ② .....

Abdullah: I communicate with them on social network service.

Ammar : Why?

Abdullah ③ .....

Ammar : Do you use any other ways of communication?

Abdullah ④ .....

Ammar : ⑤ .....

Abdullah: For example there are meetings, a local newspaper and community centre noticeboard.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

bench - will - kindness - going to - noticeboard - local

In the new park, there is a ① ..... that people put messages to each other. People show their ② ..... to the others. There is a ③ ..... to sit on for a rest. I'm ④ ..... go to this new park with my family soon.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was disappointed to see a lot of rubbish in the street. This means I was .....

- a. glad      b. frustrated      c. worried      d. interested

Longman

2. Fadel donated a lot of money to charities. This means he ..... them lots of money.

- a. took      b. owed      c. owned      d. gave

Longman

3. The word "greet" is similar in meaning to .....

- a. ignore      b. pay      c. welcome      d. surprise

4. The verb "manage" is turned into a noun by using the suffix .....

- a. -er      b. -or      c. -al      d. -ist

5. We turn the adjective "ill" into a noun by adding the suffix .....

- a. -less      b. -ing      c. -ness      d. -ous

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What are you going ..... (eat) for lunch?
- Wael ..... (travel) abroad. It's his decision.
- A : What do you intend to read?  
B : I ..... (reading) a history book.
- We ..... (visit) the new museum tomorrow. We have got the tickets online.
- ..... (Be) you going to do sports?

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"What you are going to do next weekend. Write a short story" WB

محتاج عليه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الاتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What are you going to do next weekend?
- Who will take part?
- Will you get some volunteers to help you?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الاتية:

- Next week, we're going to.....
- Some of us are going to.....
- We will get some volunteers to.....



# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29-31 WB pages 90-92

## Key Vocabulary

windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	castle	قلعة
formal	رسمي	tourist attractions	أماكن جذب سياحي
informal	غير رسمي		

## Important Expressions

Firstly	أولاً	However	ومع ذلك
To start with,.....	بدايةً.....	but	لكن
Furthermore	علاوة على ذلك	To summarise,.....	إختصاراً.....
In addition	بالإضافة لذلك	To conclude,.....	ختاماً..... / في الخاتمة.....

## Vocabulary

Heisa	قريّة هيسا اللّوبية بأسوان	suddenly	فجأة
adult	شخص بالغ	warmly	بحرارة
that's why	لهذا السبب	introduce (d)	يقدم (شخص)
daughter	ابنة	contact (ed)	يتصل بـ
front door	باب أمامي	treat (ed)	يعامل
builder	بناّء	sound (ed)	يبدو
above	بالأعلى		

## Definitions

formal	رسمي	correct or polite for important situations
informal	غير رسمي	correct for unimportant or everyday situations

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / opposite	المضاد
formal	رسمي	official		informal	غير رسمي
start	يبدأ	begin		conclude / end	يختم / ينتهي
happiness	سعادة	pleasure		sadness	حزن
improve	يتحسن - يتحسن	develop / get better		damage / worsen	يتلف - يزداد سوءاً
exciting	مثير	interesting		boring	ممل

## Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix/Suffix	Use	Examples
In-	opposite	Informal
-ion / -ition	تعطي عكس المعنى	غير رسمي
-ion		Introduction / addition
-ion		مقدمة / إضافة
-ion	v → n	attraction
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	جذب
-ure		conclusion
-ure		خاتمة
-er	person	pleasure
-er	تكوّن اسم الفاعل	سرور
-ly	adj → adv	builder
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى الحال	بناّء
-ness	adj → n	warmly / suddenly
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى الاسم	بحرارة / فجأة
		happiness
		سعادة

## Expressions & Prepositions

feel tired	يشعر بالتعب	In fact	في الحقيقة
say thank you to	يشكر	have a rest	يأخذ راحة
get bored	يصيبه الملل	treat ..... with.....	يعامل..... بـ.....
look exciting	يبدو مثير	proud of	فخور بـ
plan a project	يخطط لمشروع		
help each other	يساعدوا بعضهم البعض		

## Conjugations of

### Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	1st Participle
meet	met	met
know	knew	known

## Language Notes

### 1) not ..... anymore / no longer

• not ... anymore لم يعد  
(للتعبير عن حدث ثم التوقف عن فعله  
وتكون جملته ملبية)

Ex. My father **doesn't** smoke **anymore**.

• no longer لم يعد  
(للتعبير عن حدث ثم التوقف عن فعله  
وتكون جملته ملبية)

Ex. My father **no longer** smokes.



2) as / like

• as + وظيفة

تستخدم بمعنى (يعمل كـ.....)

Ex. My dad works **as** an engineer.

• like ..... للتشبيه  
تستخدم بمعنى (مثل)

Ex. Mustafa is clever at maths. He teaches **like** a teacher.

3) In addition / Furthermore / In addition to

• Furthermore, + فعل + فاعل علاوة على ذلك

• In addition, + فعل + فاعل بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- تستخدم كلاً من Furthermore / In addition في بداية الجملة الثانية التي بها معلومة إضافية ويأتي بعدهما فاصلة سفلية (,) ثم جملة كاملة (فاعل ثم فعل).

Ex. My father always goes to work on time. **In addition / Furthermore, he does** his work well.

• In addition to + V- ing./n. بالإضافة إلى

- تستخدم (in addition to) في بداية الجملة أو في المنتصف ويلها (V- ing./n.).

Ex. **In addition to exercising** every day, he never smokes.

Ex. I have ordered cheese **in addition to** eggs.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar doesn't live in Cairo .....  
a no longer    b since    c ago    d. anymore
- Mr Hossam works ..... a doctor in a big hospital.  
a like    b as    c such    d. so
- He is very clever. ...., he works really hard.  
a But    b However    c. Furthermore    d. In addition to

SB Page (29) **Audioscript**

Narrator : One

Fares : Hi, there, Omar!

Omar : Hello, Fares!

Fares : Do you know my cousin, Adam?

Omar : No, I don't.

Fares : Adam, meet Omar. Omar, meet Adam.

Omar : Nice to meet you, Adam!

Adam : Nice to meet you, too.

استمع إلى النصوص



Narrator : Two

Samira : Hi, there Ola!

Ola : Hello, Samira! Have you met Randa? She's just started working at our office<sup>(1)</sup>.

Samira : No, we haven't met. It's a pleasure<sup>(2)</sup> to meet you.

Randa : Pleased<sup>(3)</sup> to meet you, too, Samira!

Narrator : Three

Sara : Good morning. I'd like to introduce<sup>(4)</sup> myself. I'm Sara. I'm your new neighbour.

Lamar : Pleased to meet you, Sara! I'm Lamar, and this my mother, Mrs Mansour.

Sara : Pleased to meet you both.

Mrs Mansour : It's a pleasure to meet you, too, Sara. Welcome to our neighbourhood<sup>(5)</sup>!

- 1- حجرة مكتب
- 2- سرور
- 3- مسرور
- 4- يقدم شخص
- 5- حي سكني

A

Mrs Laila : Good morning, class. I'd like to introduce myself.  
I'm your new teacher, Mrs Laila.

Class : Good morning, Mrs Laila.



B

Father : Heba, I'd like you to meet our new neighbour, Mr Baher.

Heba : Pleased to meet you, Mr Baher.

Father : This is my daughter, Heba.

Mr Baher : Pleased to meet you too, Heba.

C

Hamdi : Hi Basel. Do you know my friend, Imad?

Basel : No, I don't.

Hamdi : Basel, meet Imad. We're in the same football team.

Basel : Nice to meet you, Imad.

Imad : Nice to meet you, too.



## Reading

SB page (30)

Firstly<sup>(1)</sup>, let me see how much we all love our Children's Library. However<sup>(2)</sup>, it now needs some work. The children don't like it anymore<sup>(3)</sup> because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.



- ١- أولا
- ٢- بالرغم من ذلك
- ٣- لم يعد
- ٤- بحسن
- ٥- يدعو
- ٦- قرية هيسا
- ٧- علاوة على ذلك
- ٨- مكان جذب سياحي
- ٩- يخلط
- ١٠- يخطط
- ١١- يكمل

At our community meeting, we decided to improve<sup>(4)</sup> the building. We want to invite<sup>(5)</sup> you to help us. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El Saada community project. You can see a photo of their work above. Every year, a group of people go to Heisa<sup>(6)</sup>, near Aswan, to paint the houses in 'colours of happiness'. We are going to do the same thing here! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore<sup>(7)</sup>, the library will become a tourist attraction<sup>(8)</sup>.

To conclude<sup>(9)</sup>, we are looking for volunteers to help us plan<sup>(10)</sup> and complete<sup>(11)</sup> the project. If you are interested, please contact me!

## Reading Skill

## مهارات القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The main idea in the passage is .....  
 a. a community meeting      b. community projects  
 c. painting a library      d. visiting a village
2. Infer from the text why the children don't like the library anymore.  
 استنتج من النص لماذا لم يعد الأطفال يحبون المكتبة؟
3. Summarise the second paragraph in two sentences.  
 لخص الفقرة الثانية في جملتين.

## Writing Skill (معارضة الكتابة) اعمل مساعد في كتابة الموضوع اسفل

1. The library looks old and needs painting .  
 تبدو المكتبة قديمة وتحتاج للطلاء .
2. We decided to improve the building .  
 قررنا تحسين المبني .
3. We got some ideas from a community project .  
 حصلنا على بعض الافكار من مشروع مجتمعي .
4. If you are a volunteer, you can help us .  
 إذا كنت متطوع ، فيمكنك مساعدتنا .

3. They want volunteers to help in the project. They got ideas from El Saada community project.  
 2. Because it looks old and needs painting.  
 1. b. community projects.

Answers

SB Page (31)

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking along the pavement when I suddenly<sup>(1)</sup> felt very tired.

I'm elderly, you see. A young woman saw me and greeted me warmly<sup>(2)</sup>. She encouraged me to sit down on a bench and have a rest<sup>(3)</sup>. It was so wonderful to be treated<sup>(4)</sup> with such kindness. That's why<sup>(5)</sup> I'm so happy to live in this neighbourhood. Our community is so kind and helpful!



- ١- فجأة
- ٢- بحرارة
- ٣- راحة
- ٤- بعامل
- ٥- لهذا السبب

SB Page (31)

Adam : Are you enjoying that book, Amr?

Amr : No, not really. In fact, it's quite boring.

Adam : What kind of books are you interested in?

Amr : I like exciting stories. I thought this one looked good, but as soon as I started reading it, I was disappointed.

Adam : I read it last year, but I thought it was amazing! The ending is surprising.

Amr : Well, your review makes it sound very interesting. Perhaps I should finish it!

WB Page (91)

Firstly, let me say how proud<sup>(1)</sup> we are of the castle<sup>(2)</sup> in our town. However, it now needs some work. People love walking on top of the castle walls, but some of them are dangerous. Also, some people leave rubbish inside the castle.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the castle. We are going to get some builders<sup>(3)</sup> to repair the walls.

Furthermore, children at the school are going to help clean up the rubbish.

To conclude, we think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a tourist attraction.

- ١- فخور
- ٢- قلعة
- ٣- عمال بناء

WB Page (92)

One day, I saw a message on the noticeboard by the front door to our flats. It said that Mr Maher, who is very elderly, needed a new bench. The one he sits on outside his flat is broken. So I encouraged all my neighbours to help to buy him a new one. Some men delivered it this morning. Mr Maher was very surprised when it arrived! Mr Maher was very pleased by our kindness. Our neighbourhood is very friendly and we like to help each other.



# Videoscript

Page (30)

**Narrator:** There are many amazing projects that help communities in Egypt. Some of these projects help people, such as this one which helps people to get fresh water, and some help the environment, like these volunteers taking rubbish from rivers.

Bassita is a company that **organises**<sup>(1)</sup> community projects. For example, the "VeryNile" projects help to clean the River Nile. They take lots of rubbish, such as plastic, from the river. They then **recycle**<sup>(2)</sup> the plastic. Some of the plastic they collect is going to become shopping bags. Another project provides clean water for many people. The Makhad Trust<sup>(3)</sup> helps people in the Sinai Peninsula<sup>(3)</sup>.

They teach people to keep bees. These bees are going to make **honey**<sup>(4)</sup>, which we use for food. The Makhad Trust also **creates**<sup>(5)</sup> gardens so people can grow their own food.

Are there any community projects where you live? What do they do to help your community?

- (1) منظومة تهتم بتطوير وسائل تنظيف النيل من المخلفات وإعادة تدوير القمامة البحرية.  
(2) مؤسسة في المملكة المتحدة تعمل على الحفاظ على البيئة والتراث الطبيعي للشعوب.  
(3) The Makhad Trust  
(4) VeryNile

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

- ..... means correct or polite for important situations.  
a. Informal b. Inform c. Formal d. Form
- ..... means correct for unimportant or everyday situations.  
a. Form b. Informal c. Inform d. Formal

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- Playing football keeps my life exciting. The adjective "exciting" is the same meaning as .....  
a. boring b. worrying c. terrible d. interesting
- The antonym of the word "happiness" is .....  
a. pleasure b. treasure c. sadness d. gladness
- The verb "improve" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. get better b. worsen c. damage d. destroy

- (1) تنظيم  
(2) إعادة تدوير  
(3) شركة  
(4) عسل  
(5) تنشأ

6. The verb "start" is the opposite of .....  
a. begin b. work c. end d. live

### Prefixes & Suffixes

- The prefix ..... turns the adjective "formal" into the opposite.  
a. un- b. in- c. im- d. dis-
- We add the suffix ..... to the adjective "warm" to form an adverb.  
a. -ly b. -ness c. -ed d. -ing
- The suffix ..... turns the verb "conclude" into a noun.  
a. -ful b. -ness c. -sion d. -tion
- The suffix "-er" in the word "builder" refers to the .....  
a. building b. person c. place d. time
- To turn the verb "attract" into a noun, we add the suffix .....  
a. -ion b. -ious c. -ant d. -ness
- The adjective "happy" can be turned into a noun by adding .....  
a. -ful b. -tion c. -ing d. -ness

### Guessing the meaning

- Tourists like to visit the famous places in Egypt. This means they go to the .....  
a. front doors b. back doors c. tourist attractions d. dirty places
- The king built a strong building to protect his family. This means he built a/an .....  
a. castle b. canal c. raft d. museum

## Speaking

### Formal and Informal introducing

التقديم الرسمي وغير الرسمي

#### Formal

I'd like to introduce myself.

أود تقديم نفسي.

Have you met ....?

هل قابلت ....؟

I'd like you to meet my friend.

أود أن أقابل صديقي / صديقتي.

Have you been introduced to...?

هل قابلت ....؟

#### Informal

I'm.....

أنا (فلان)

Adam, meet Omar.

أحمد، هذا عمر.

This is.....

هذا (فلان) .....



## 2) Formal and informal greetings

التحيات الرسمية وغير الرسمية

## Formal

Hello. أهلاً / مرحباً.  
 It's a pleasure to meet you. يسعدني أن أقابلك.  
 Pleased to meet you. يسعدني مقابلتك.  
 How are you? كيف حالك؟  
 Good morning. صباح الخير.  
 Goodbye. مع السلامة.

## Informal

Hi! أهلاً  
 Pleased to meet you, too. يسعدني مقابلتك أيضاً.  
 Nice to meet you. يسعدني لقاءك.  
 How is it going? كيف تسير الأمور؟  
 See you soon / later. أراك قريباً / لاحقاً.  
 Bye. مع السلامة.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 5 &amp; 6

## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Mariam is meeting a new friend at school.

Mariam : Hello, my name is Mariam.

Magda : Hello, Mariam. I'm Magda.

Mariam : ① .....

Magda : It's nice to meet you, too. What grade are you in?

Mariam : ② .....

Magda : Me, too. ③ .....

Mariam : Yes, we can meet after school.

Magda : ④ .....

Mariam : Yes, let me introduce you to my friends.

Magda : ⑤ .....

## 2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

prison - happiness - excited - castle - exciting - formal

Once upon a time, a king had a big party for his people. The party was in the king's  
 ① ..... All the guests wore ② ..... clothes. They spent time in ③ ..... and  
 went home very ④ .....

## 3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "happiness" can be replaced by .....

a. laziness b. pleasure c. sadness d. darkness

2. She had some exciting adventures in Egypt. The adjective "exciting" is the opposite of .....

a. boring b. thrilling c. interesting d. surprising

## Lessons 5 &amp; 6

3. The word "formal" gives the meaning of .....  
 a. official b. normal c. boring d. usual  
 4. We turn the verb "introduce" into the noun by using the suffix .....  
 a. -sion b. -ure c. -ness d. -tion  
 5. I want to improve my skills. The antonym of "improve" is .....  
 a. shorten b. worsen c. strengthen d. wooden

## 4) Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a project in your community" SR

محتاج عنه في آخر الوحدة

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:  
 - What is the community project?  
 - How are you going to help in the project?  
 - Do you need volunteers? Why?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm really proud of .....  
 - We plan to improve .....  
 - We want to invite you to help us.  
 - We got some ideas from .....  
 - We are looking for volunteers to .....



# Unit 3 Review

## Key Vocabulary

pavement	رصيف المشاة	The Decent Life Initiative	social network service
health care	رعاية صحية	مبادرة حياة كريمة	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية
elderly	كبير السن	leisure	ترفيه
informal	غير رسمي	tenant	مستأجر
public services	خدمات عامة	formal	رسمي
pay (paid) for	يدفع (تمن بشئ)	education	التعليم
tourist attractions	اماكن جذب سياحي	graffiti	كتابة ورسوم على الجدران
make a difference	يحدث فارق	windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
		bench	مقعد طويل
			noticeboard
			leaflet
			lodger
			castle
			neighbourhood
			encourage (d)
			deliver (ed)
			greet (ed)

## Adjectives & Nouns

kind	عطوف	kind ness	عطف
dark	مظلم	dark ness	ظلام
ill	مريض	ill ness	مرض
sweet	حلو الطعم	sweet ness	حلاوة الطعم
weak	ضعيف	weak ness	ضعف

## Language

### 1-The present continuous tense

يتكون من :

فاعل + am, is, are + v - ing

Ex. He is playing tennis.

## Usage الاستخدام

- 1- للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام).  
Ex. We are sitting in the dining room at the moment.
- 2- للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام).  
Ex. She is studying maths in Cairo University these days.
- 3- للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة.  
Ex. They are painting the wall this week.
- 4- للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها في المستقبل (مثل حجز تذاكر السفر / الترتيب لإقامة حفل) حيث يتم تحديد المكان والزمن.  
Ex. We are travelling to Tanta next month.

## 2-Adjectives ending in (-ing) or (-ed)

- 1- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) والصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.
- 2- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ing) إلى من/ ما يسبب الصفة:  
Ex. These dogs are frightening.
- 3- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعروا لديه هذه الصفة:  
Ex. These boys are frightened from the dogs.

## 3-be going to + inf.

Statement / Negative	Question
am / is / are (not) going to + inf.	Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf. ?

نستخدم (be going to) للتعبير عن التالي:  
1- التنبؤ المبني على دليل (في المضارع):

- Ex. There are a lot of clouds in the sky. It's going to rain.
- 2- خطط مستقبلية أو أحداث قررنا فعلها مسبقا (التركيز هنا على النوايا والقرارات التي سبق اتخاذها)  
Ex. I'm going to watch the news when I go home. That's my intention.

## Speaking

### 1) Asking and answering about your own community

السؤال والإجابة عن مجتمعتك

Question	Answer
1- What do you think are the best things about your own community?	- I like our sports facilities, but I think we could make our streets safer.
2- Are there any facilities for the elderly and disabled people?	- Yes, there are many facilities for them.
3- What things could you do to make a difference to poor people in your community?	- We could help the poor with money and food.



## 2) Formal and Informal introducing

التقديم الرسمي وغير الرسمي

## Formal

I'd like to introduce myself.  
Have you met ....?  
I'd like you to meet my friend.  
Have you been introduced to...?

## Informal

I'm.....  
Adam, meet Omar.  
This is.....

## 3) Formal and Informal greetings

التحيات الرسمية وغير الرسمية

## Formal

Hello.  
It's a pleasure to meet you.  
Pleased to meet you.  
How are you?  
Good morning.  
Goodbye.

## Informal

Hi!  
Pleased to meet you, too.  
Nice to meet you.  
How is it going?  
See you soon / later.  
Bye.

## General Exercises on Unit 3

## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Hassan and Nabil are discussing the weekend plan.

Hassan: Hi, Nabil! Do you know my friend Adel?

Nabil : ① .....

Hassan: Well, would you like to join us?

Nabil : Sure ② .....

Hassan: We are painting the school walls tomorrow.

Nabil : Great! Where can we meet?

Hassan : ③ .....

Nabil : ④ .....

Hassan: Yes, most of our friends are coming to help.

Nabil : ⑤ .....

## General Exercises

## 2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 attractions - go - network - going - addition - community

In our local ① ....., there is a social ② ..... service. It is a website to share our ideas. We can also post on it to show our tourist ③ ..... To conclude, we're ④ ..... to communicate with people who can help.

2 amazing - amazed - facilities - volunteer - young - elderly

We should all care about our community. I think the best thing about our community is the ① ..... We have some great shops and ② ..... places to go, like the nearby park. We have lots of community projects where we can ③ ..... to help people, especially the ④ ..... Longman

3 is creating - services - was creating - rural - makes - does

The government tries to help poor people. It ① ..... "Decent Life Initiative", which is a good example. It ② ..... a difference to about 32 million people who live in ③ ..... areas. It improves the quality of public ④ ..... Longman

## 3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is a group of questions that you ask people to find out information about something.  
a. health care    b. pavement    c. survey    d. leisure
- ..... is a website that allows you to communicate and share information with people in your area.  
a. Graffiti    b. Kindness  
c. Noticeboard    d. Social network service
- The word "unwell" can be replaced by .....  
a. kind    b. ill    c. nice    d. good
- Muhammad has a formal way of speaking. The word "formal" is the same meaning as .....  
a. official    b. rude    c. informal    d. impolite
- Mustafa always greets his family. The verb "greet" is the antonym of .....  
a. welcome    b. ignore    c. take    d. give
- Boys and girls have equal chances in our community. The word "equal" is an opposite of .....  
a. identical    b. the same    c. unequal    d. typical
- The suffix ..... is added to "differ" to turn it into a noun.  
a. -ed    b. -ence    c. -ment    d. -ion



8. We can turn the verb "communicate" into a noun by using the suffix  
a. -ly b. -ic c. -an d. -ion
9. We can turn the noun "courage" into a verb by adding the prefix  
a. in- b. out- c. en- d. un-
10. The prefix "in-" in the word "informal" gives the  
a. synonym b. adjective c. adverb d. opposite
11. The school walls are covered in pictures and drawings. This means they are covered in  
a. kindness b. bench c. graffiti d. network
12. Ayman has a factory and gives money for work. This means he ..... for the workers.  
a. pays b. sells c. takes d. buys

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The book was really ..... (bored) and I didn't even finish reading it.  
SB الوادي الجديد - الإسكندرية 2022
2. We are ..... (visit) the Giza Zoo next week. It's arranged.
3. He has decided to start his own business. He ..... (opens) a shop.
4. What are you going to ..... (doing) for tomorrow's exam?
5. We were all very ..... (excite) when we heard about our next class trip.  
SB

#### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about kindness"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- What happened?  
- Who did you help?

- I went to .....  
- I helped.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What did you do?  
- What did you feel?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I saw.....  
- I felt.....



#### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam and Alr are in the library.

Adam: Are you enjoying that book, Amy?

Amr : 1 ..... In fact, it's quite boring.

Adam : 2 ..... ?

Amr : I like exciting stories. I thought this one looked good, but as soon as I started reading it, I was disappointed.

Adam: I read it last year, but I thought it was amazing! The ending is surprising.

Amr : 3 ..... ?

Adam: Yes, I think you should finish reading it and I am sure you will find it interesting.

#### 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are with your cousin. You meet a friend of yours who doesn't know your cousin.  
SB

2. It is your first day as a volunteer at a community project. Introduce yourself to another volunteer student.  
SB

3. You are with your parents when you meet a friend. Introduce your friend to your parents.  
SB

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### A Vocabulary

#### SB & WB Exercises

1. There are many young people in our ....., so I have lots of friends who live near me!  
a. neighbourhood b. room c. space d. air
2. What time are they going to ..... the new washing machine?  
a. ask b. type c. iron d. deliver
3. .... means to try to make people do something by support or advice.  
a. Deliver b. Encourage c. Surprise d. Discuss



4. The ..... of Tarek's English made him fail his exams.  
 a. sweet      b. sweetness      c. weakness      d. weak
5. I was ..... to hear that the community centre was closing.  
 a. disappointing      b. disappointed      c. tired      d. relaxed
6. I did well in my exams. I was really ....., because I found the questions difficult.  
 a. relaxed      b. surprised      c. surprising      d. relaxing

### Longman Exercises

7. I usually read the news online to follow current ..... all over the world.  
 a. usages      b. mistakes      c. events      d. facilities
8. Young people usually look for job ..... in big cities.  
 a. exercises      b. opportunities      c. losses      d. prices
9. You should ..... your foreign language skills if you want to work in a European country.  
 a. improve      b. prove      c. discover      d. invent
10. The Decent Life Initiative ..... the houses of poor people in rural areas.  
 a. pairs      b. compares      c. repairs      d. destroys
11. The government pays attention to health ..... to look after people's health.  
 a. cure      b. care      c. medicine      d. hospital
12. I don't know this man; he is a ..... to me.  
 a. stranger      b. strange      c. friend      d. relative
13. My father is exhausted, so he is going to ..... down for a rest.  
 a. fit      b. get      c. set      d. sit
14. We should all ..... in keeping the environment clean.  
 a. charge      b. check      c. share      d. change
15. There should be a lot of ..... for the elderly and disabled people.  
 a. problems      b. differences      c. facilities      d. difficulties
16. Thanks ..... scientists, we are leading a more comfortable life.  
 a. to      b. for      c. by      d. from

### Bit by Bit Exercises

17. My mother always ..... my sister to learn how to cook.  
 a. repairs      b. feeds      c. thinks      d. encourages
18. I met a/an ..... woman aged 80 yesterday.  
 a. elderly      b. young      c. crowded      d. hurt
19. The new initiative has made a ..... to many people.  
 a. company      b. crowd      c. floor      d. difference

20. When the teacher entered the classroom, we stood up to ..... him.  
 a. explain      b. greet      c. talk      d. build
21. My neighbour made the boy ..... for the glass window he broke.  
 a. push      b. repair      c. pay      d. talk
22. A ..... is a large strong building, built to protect the people inside from attack.  
 a. tower      b. castle      c. pyramid      d. block
23. The Giza Pyramids are one of the important tourist ..... in Egypt.  
 a. statues      b. museums      c. attractions      d. guides
24. He slept for 10 hours ..... he felt tired when he woke up.  
 a. So      b. That's why      c. However      d. For
25. "Hi" is a/an ..... way of greeting people.  
 a. informal      b. different      c. formal      d. funny

## B Language

### SB & WB Exercises

26. The children are very ..... because they have a new toy!  
 a. excited      b. exciting      c. tired      d. tiring
27. The walk over the mountains was beautiful, but it was very .....  
 a. tiring      b. tired      c. boring      d. bored
28. The tourists were very ..... to see snow on the Pyramids.  
 a. surprised      b. surprising      c. bored      d. boring

### Bit by Bit Exercises

29. A: What are your plans for the weekend? B: I ..... my grandparents.  
 a. am going to visit      b. am visited  
 c. visit      d. will visit
30. Nada is always late. I think she ..... late tomorrow, too.  
 a. will be      b. is being      c. is      d. is going to be
31. A: Would you like tea or coffee? B: Mmmmm, I ..... coffee.  
 a. am having      b. am going to have  
 c. will have      d. has
32. It's starting to rain. I ..... the umbrella.  
 a. am going to put up      b. am putting up  
 c. will put up      d. put up



33. Perhaps I ..... New York one day.  
a. am visiting b. will visit  
c. am going to visit d. visit
34. Ashraf ..... engineering next year. That's his plan.  
a. is studied b. is going to study  
c. studying d. studies
35. Are you and your friends ..... today's match?  
a. going to watch b. will watch c. watch d. watches
36. I think it ..... hot next week.  
a. will be b. is going to be c. is being d. is

#### 4 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Helping the community"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة المنشائية:
- What can you do to help the community?
  - What can you do for the homeless?
  - What ideas can you suggest?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I can volunteer to.....
  - I can..... to the homeless.
  - I can suggest.....

## Biographies, Reviews Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

### 1- A review of what I can do to help poor people in my community

(Lessons 1 & 2)

I live in a great community. However, it has got some problems. There are many poor people in my community. I work on a project in my community. We have a good plan that can make a difference to the poor people. We're going to help them. We are going to help deliver medicines to their houses. We plan to help find work for them. Helping the poor is an important thing. We must all do our best to help them. I really feel proud about that.

### 2- A short story about what I am going to do next weekend

(Lessons 3 & 4)

Next weekend we are going to do many things. We are going to start cleaning our streets. Some of us are going to plant some trees. The school is going to be closed on Saturday. So, we are going to paint the walls of the school. Some volunteers are going to help clean up the park from rubbish. Some of the plastic they collect is going to become shopping bags. Our neighbourhood is very friendly. We like to help each other.

### 3- A review of a project in my community

(Lessons 5 & 6)

I'm really proud of the Town Library. We all love it very much. However, it needs some work. Children don't like it anymore. It looks old and needs painting. We plan to improve the building. We want to invite you to help us. It will make it look exciting. Furthermore, we intend to make the library a tourist attraction. To conclude, we are looking for volunteers to help us complete the project.

### 4- A short story about kindness

(General Exercises)

I went with my mother to the community centre. I saw some people on wheelchairs. I helped open a door for them to enter. They were disabled. My mom told me to help another lady. She was filling in some papers. She told me, "Thank you dear, you're so kind." Those words make anyone feel glad. That is why you should show your kindness to make other people happy.

### 5- Helping the community

(Al Azhar)

You can volunteer to help the community. You can help elderly or disabled people. You can donate food or serve meals to the homeless. You can suggest more useful ideas for projects. You can help improve life for members of your local community. Community projects have an important effect on our society.

### 6- A review of leisure and sports facilities in our town

(Test)

We have many leisure and sports facilities in our town. We all love our Town Club. It has got wide courts. My friends and I like going there every Monday. We usually play handball. My sister and her friends usually play basketball. My dad sometimes joins the reading club. We also love our Town Park. It is full of wonderful trees. My family and I like spending time there. It is a nice place. We can enjoy fresh air. My friends and I sometimes play chess there.





### A Language Functions

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue

Inju and Lina are talking about a book.

Inju : Are you enjoying that book, Lina?

Lina : ① ..... It's quite boring.

Inju : ② ..... ?

Lina : Well, I think the first chapter is disappointing.

Inju : What kind of books are you interested in?

Lina : ③ ..... They make me excited.

Inju : ④ ..... ?

Lina : I'm going to read Sherlock Holmes.

Inju : Could you lend it to me when you finish it?

Lina : ⑤ .....

### B Reading Comprehension

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**volunteers - disappointing - activities - disappointed - graffiti - public**

My community has ① ..... facilities. There are sports clubs so that you can do sports ② ..... there. The walls of these clubs are covered in ③ ..... It is

④ ..... to destroy the community in this way.

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In my country, the summer holidays start around the start of June. The children get some rest because they don't have to come to school on those days and spend time with their family. Kids are encouraged to go out and play in the evenings, read more books and watch cartoons with a little control. Parents should encourage their children to be more active and creative during summer breaks so that they don't turn lazy. Cold foods like ice-cream, cold drinks, fruits, etc. are enjoyed by everyone in the heat of the summer.

Many families plan trips during this time and go to beaches. Some of the popular summer sports are swimming, tennis, table tennis and chess. Children can draw, sing, and write. Parents also should take the children to spend time with their grandparents, and other relatives for there is no better time than holidays to visit family relatives.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
a. parents ..... b. sports  
c. kids ..... d. summer holidays
- The underlined word "their" refers to the .....  
a. children ..... b. parents ..... c. family ..... d. grandparents
- ..... is a popular summer sport.  
a. Swimming ..... b. Running ..... c. Football ..... d. Reading

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- When do the summer holidays start?
- What should parents encourage their children to be?
- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

### C Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... means having a good effect on a person, place or situation. **SB**  
a. Plan a project ..... b. Do a job  
c. Make a difference ..... d. Have experience
- We must respect and help the elderly. The word "elderly" can be replaced by .....  
a. young ..... b. old ..... c. youth ..... d. kids
- Let's start our work. The verb "start" is a antonym of .....  
a. begin ..... b. work ..... c. drive ..... d. conclude
- We can turn the verb "interest" into an adjective by adding the suffix .....  
a. -ion ..... b. -ing ..... c. -ment ..... d. -ly
- We add the prefix ..... to the word "port" to mean "move across".  
a. dis- ..... b. out- ..... c. en- ..... d. trans-
- Muhammad is a very kind person. This means he has .....  
a. illness ..... b. sweetness ..... c. weakness ..... d. kindness



5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I ..... (buying) a new mobile next month. I have all the money.
- I think science lessons are never ..... (bored).
- I will ..... (to buy) you a nice present after you succeed.
- The people here are ..... (exciting) about the new initiative.
- Maher ..... (going to go) to the USA next month. This is his plan.

### Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"A review of leisure and sports facilities in your town" **WB**

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:
- Do you have leisure and sports facilities in your town?
  - What leisure and sports facilities has your town got?
  - How are they useful?
  - Do you or your friends go there? Why?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have many leisure and sports facilities in my town.
- I love ..... I can ..... there.
- My friends and I like going there every .....
- My sister and her friends usually ..... there.

# Review A

SB pages 32-33 WB pages 93-94

## Key Vocabulary

bus station  
restaurant  
monument

محطة اتوبيس  
مطعم  
أثر (تاريخي)

car park  
sports centre  
Nature reserve

استمع إلى المفردات



موقف سيارات  
مركز ألعاب  
محمية طبيعية



## Audioscript

SB Page (32)

استمع إلى النص



Narrator 1

**Voice :** From the bus station, go straight on and walk past the monument. Then, turn right and it is opposite the museum.

Narrator 2

**Voice :** From the bus station, go straight on and then take the second road on the left. It's on the left, opposite the nature reserve.

Narrator 3

**Voice :** From the supermarket, walk past the bus station and turn right. Go straight on and it's on the corner, opposite the café.

Narrator 4

**Voice :** From the restaurant, walk past the monument then turn right at the monument. Then take the first road on the left. It's on the left, next to the car park.



## Reading

SB page (32)

### Museum of Natural Science

Last year, there was an **amazing**<sup>(1)</sup> exhibition of sea animals at the **Museum of Natural Science**<sup>(2)</sup>. While visitors were walking around the exhibition, they could also watch videos and listen to the sounds of the sea. Next year, another exhibition will tell visitors about animal life in the desert.

Many people think that the desert doesn't have much life in it. This exhibition will show that lots of animals live there, if you know where to look!

The exhibition opens on the 5<sup>th</sup> of March. Tickets will be **on sale**<sup>(3)</sup> now from the museum or online.



- 1- مذهب
- 2- متحف العلوم الطبيعية
- 3- للبيع



WB Page (33)

I'm really excited about this week as I'm going to start my new volunteering job! My basketball team are going to play basketball with some disabled children and teach them about the game. I love children (I have three younger brothers and sisters) so I think it will be really fun. I'm happy I can volunteer with my friends, too. I think it is important that people help their community.

Tarek



My friend and I are looking for some volunteer work. We want to help elderly people or young children. We both like little children! We are going to ask at local community centres about reading to elderly people and local schools about helping young children to read. We read a lot in our spare time but we want to do something useful for other people.



WB Page (93)

Good morning, everyone. I'd like to **introduce**<sup>(1)</sup> myself. I'm Judy and I work for See the best of Cairo. Today, you're going to visit two places. They are not the most famous ones, but we think they are **the best**<sup>(2)</sup>! Why? Because they are neither full of tourists nor expensive, but they have some very interesting things to see.

Firstly, in the morning, we're taking you to the **Egyptian Railway Museum**<sup>(3)</sup>. It opens at 9 am. Here you'll find trains but also some other **historical forms**<sup>(4)</sup> of transport, including planes. The museum is next to Cairo train station. Then, at about 2 pm, we're going to the House of Gamal AL-Din AL-Dahabi. This is one of the oldest houses in the city, built in the seventeenth century. It has beautiful windows, doors and even a **fountain**<sup>(5)</sup>. We know you won't be bored in either of these places!



- ١- يقدم
- ٢- الأفضل
- ٣- متحف السكة الحديدية
- ٤- أشكال تاريخية
- ٥- نافورة

WB Page (94)

**Man** : Good afternoon, I'd like to make a **complaint**<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Assistant** : What's the problem?

**Man** : I ordered something from your **website**<sup>(2)</sup> but it hasn't arrived.

**Assistant** : I'm very sorry about that. What did you order?

**Man** : A black **kettle**<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Assistant** : A black kettle? Why don't you come to our shop? We have one here. You don't have to **pay**<sup>(4)</sup> anything more.

**Man** : Thank you. Where is your shop?

**Assistant** : It's next to the museum. From the station, turn right and **walk past**<sup>(5)</sup> the clothes shop. We are on the left.

**Man** : What time do you open?

**Assistant** : We open from 8 am to 4 pm every day **except**<sup>(6)</sup> Friday.



- ١- شكوى
- ٢- موقع إلكتروني
- ٣- غلاية
- ٤- يدفع مال
- ٥- يمشي ماراً بـ
- ٦- عدا - باستثناء

# Test on unit 1, 2 & 3



## A Language Functions

### ① Finish the following dialogue:

Hany and Omar are talking about a problem in their village.

Hany : Hello, Omar! What're you thinking about?

Omar : Hello, Hany! ① .....

Hany : ② .....?

Omar : Many people in our village are poor.

Hany : ③ .....?

Omar : We can help them get their needs.

Hany : We can also help deliver medicines to their houses.

Omar : ④ .....

Hany : When can we start?

Omar : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

### ② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

on - monuments - historical - botanical - in - electrical

My name is Ramy. I live ① ..... Giza with my family. There are some ② ..... gardens near our house. Giza is a ③ ..... city with lots of famous buildings and ④ ..... Many tourists come here every year.

### ③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mrs Hanady went to the mall. She wanted to buy clothes for her family. She bought two T-Shirts, a pair of jeans and a winter coat for her son. Then she bought a lovely skirt and a jacket for her daughter.

When she went to the men's department, she found nice shirts for her husband and pairs of trousers. She wanted to buy a pair of pyjamas and a dress for her daughter. There were also lovely slippers on sale which she bought. She found a silk purple blouse and an evening dress which she bought for herself.

After all that shopping, she was really tired. Mrs Hanady decided to take a rest at a café and drink a cup of coffee and eat a piece of chocolate cake.



**A.** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
a. sales      b. shopping      c. jeans      d. winter
- Mrs Hanady bought her husband .....  
a. shirts      b. coats      c. trousers      d. a and c
- In the end, Mrs Hanady was .....  
a. sad      b. happy      c. tired      d. poor

**B.** Answer the following questions:

4. What did Mrs Hanady buy for herself?

.....

5. What was on sale in the mall?

.....

6. Summarize the last paragraph.

.....

### **C** Vocabulary and Structure

**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An ..... is a price that is less than usual.  
a. account      b. sale      c. discount      d. deal
- Magid was lucky to be safe after the accident. The synonym of "lucky" is .....  
a. fortunate      b. intelligent      c. popular      d. unlucky
- I divided the apple into two equal halves. The opposite of "equal" is .....  
a. the same      b. similar      c. unequal      d. small
- The suffix "-ology" in the word "technology" means .....  
a. history      b. sport      c. education      d. science
- We turn the noun "courage" into a verb by adding the prefix ".....".  
a. en-      b. trans-      c. over-      d. de-
- Trams are better for the environment than other types of transport. This means they are .....  
a. ancient      b. noisy      c. messy      d. electric

**SB**

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Are you ..... (gone) to watch that play?
- He is ..... (neither) clever and helpful.
- It's my habit to work ..... (on) night.
- None of ..... (the boy) wanted to leave the party.
- Hassam feels ..... (exciting) when he watches football matches.

### **D** Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of the best and the worst items of technology in your house" **WB**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Which items do you have in your house?
- Which one do you think is the most useful?
- Which one is the most / least expensive?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have ..... in my house.
- They are useful, but .....
- ..... is the most / least expensive.



# Have you ever travelled by plane?

## Objectives

### Reading:

A report about experiences; texts about life experiences; The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn; a text about someone's life

### Writing:

A story about something that happened in your life; a timeline of a person's life events; a biography of a person

### Listening:

An interview about someone's life; an account of something bad that happened to someone

### Speaking:

Talking about experiences; asking and answering questions about experiences; telling a story

### Language:

The present perfect with ever, never, for and since

Life Skills: Communication

## Key Vocabulary

experience

تجربة حياتية / خبرة

musical instrument

آلة موسيقية

orphanage

دار للأيتام

play (ed)

snorkel (led)

استمع إلى المفردات

اعرف موسيقى - يلعب

يعطس بأنبوب تنفس



## Important phrases

ride a horse

يركب حصان

travel by plane

يسافر جواً (بالبطائرة)

sleep in a tent

ينام في خيمة

try food

يجرب طعام

drink coffee

يشرب قهوة

write a list

يكتب قائمة

make food

يحضر / يُعد طعام

visit an orphanage

see a film

climb a mountain

win a competition

do the housework

go to a farm

swim in a pool

يزور دار الأيتام

يشاهد فيلم

يتسلق جبل

يفوز بمسابقة

تقوم بأعمال المنزل

يذهب إلى مزرعة

يسبح في حمام سباحة



## Vocabulary

most

معظم

the same

نفس الشيء

flat

شقة

elderly people

كبار السن

sensitive

حساس / مرهف

opportunity

فرصة

then

آنذاك

headache

wedding party

(be) born

move (d)

express (ed)

marry (ied)

صداع

حفل زفاف

يولد

ينتقل (يعزل)

يعبر عن

يتزوج



## Definitions

experience

تجربة حياتية

something that happens to you in your life

١- معدات

snorkel

swim with your face under water using

٢- أيتام

يعطس بأنبوب تنفس

special equipment<sup>(1)</sup>

٣- يُعتنى بهم

orphanage

دار للأيتام

a large house where children who are orphans<sup>(2)</sup> live and are taken care of<sup>(3)</sup>

musical instrument

آلة موسيقية

something that you use for playing music, such as a piano



## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المصادف
win	يفوز	come first	lose يخسر
most	معظم	majority	least / minority الأقل / أقلية
the same	نفس الشيء	equal	different / unequal غير متساوي
sensitive	حساس	emotional	insensitive متباعد الشعور
elderly	كبير السن	old	young صغير السن
competition	مسابقة	contest	

## Suffixes

Suffix	اللاحقة	Use الاستخدام	Examples
-al		n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	musical موسيقى
-ive		n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	sensitive حساس
-tion		v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	competition مسابقة
-ache		pain	headache صداع
-ed		v → adj تحول الفعل إلى صفة	married متزوج

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

all (of) his life	طوال حياته	on business	في مهمة عمل
get / be married	يتزوج	on time	في الوقت المحدد
over 50 years	ما يزيد عن ٥٠ عام	travel by air	يسافر جواً (بالطائرة)
have a headache	يعاني من الصداع	good at	جيد في
do a hobby	يمارس هواية	move to	يعزل / ينتقل إلى
(be) friends with	صديق لـ	have / has been to a football match	يذهب لمباراة كرة قدم
learn about	يتعلم عن		
wait for	ينتظر		

## Conjugations of

## Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
ride	يركب (حيواناً - دراجة)	rode	ridden
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
meet	يقابل - يتقابل	met	met
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
make	يصنع - يحضر / يعد	made	made
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
know	يعرف	knew	known
win	يفوز	won	won

## Language Notes

## ① ride / drive

• ride (rode / ridden)

(a horse / a camel / a bike / a bus)

يركب (حيواناً / دراجة / أتوبيس)

Ex. Have you ever ridden a horse?

• drive (drove / driven)

يقود (سيارة / أتوبيس)

Ex. My father showed me how to drive his new car.

## ② It's + صفة + to + inf.

Ex. Do you think it is important to learn about the history of your family?

## ③ on time / in time

• on time في الوقت المحدد تماماً

Ex. Have they arrived at school on time

• in time في الوقت المناسب (قبل الميعاد بقليل)

Ex. Hassan has arrived at the station in time.

## ④ by / in / on

- نستخدم on - in - by مع وسائل المواصلات كما يلي:

- نستخدم by أمام كل وسائل المواصلات إذا لم يأتي بينهما فاصل.

by car - by train - by plane - by boat - by ship - by bus - by bike

لكننا نقول on foot بمعنى سيراً على الأقدام

٢- إذا جاء بينهما فاصل مثل (a / the) أو أي صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية: نستخدم in مع (car - taxi)

in (a / the / my) car - in (a / the) taxi.

ونستخدم on مع باقي وسائل المواصلات.

on the bus - on the train - on a bike - on my horse - on Samy's bike

## Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

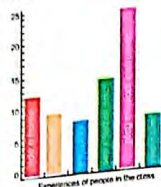
- You can ..... a camel at the Giza Pyramids area.  
a. drive                      b. bear                      c. ride                      d. carry
- It's necessary ..... the seat belt while driving.  
a. to wear                      b. to wearing                      c. wear                      d. wearing
- You must go to your work ..... time.  
a. for                      b. at                      c. about                      d. on
- Have you ever travelled ..... plane?  
a. on                      b. by                      c. in                      d. for



# Reading

SB page (35)

I asked the people in my class about their **experiences**<sup>(1)</sup>. Most<sup>(2)</sup> people in the class have **played a musical instrument**<sup>(3)</sup>. Not many people have **ridden a horse**<sup>(4)</sup> or **slept in a tent**<sup>(5)</sup>. Even<sup>(6)</sup> fewer people have **snorkelled**<sup>(7)</sup>. Most people in the class have never **travelled by plane**<sup>(8)</sup>, but Hazem has travelled by plane three times! I also asked, "Have you ever **been to a football match**<sup>(9)</sup>?" About half the people in the class haven't been to a football match and about half the class have.



استمع إلى النصوص



- ١- تجارب حياتية
- ٢- معظم
- ٣- يعزف على آلة موسيقية
- ٤- يركب حصان
- ٥- ينام في خيمة
- ٦- حتى
- ٧- يغطس بانبوب
- ٨- يسافر جواً (ببطائرة)
- ٩- يذهب لمباراة كرة قدم

Say it correctly

تنطق الحروف الملونة في هذه الكلمة مثلما تنطق الحروف الملونة في كلمة 'snorkel' [doo]

WB Page (96)

Judy : Dad, how long have you worked at the bank?

Dad : I've worked there since we moved to Cairo.

Judy : How long have you lived in Cairo?

Dad : We've been in Cairo since you were born, but we lived in a different flat then.

Judy : How long have you lived in this flat?

Dad : Well, we've lived here for ten years.

Judy : So my brother Imad has always lived here?

Dad : Yes, he's nine now, so he's lived here for all of his life.

# Audioscript

SB Page (36)

Talia : Grandma, how long have you lived in this house?

Grandmother : Oh, I've lived here since I got married to your grandfather.

Talia : Really? How long have you been married to Grandad?

Grandmother : We've been married for fifty years!

Talia : That's a long time!

Grandmother : Yes, it is! And we've known each other since we were ten years old.

Talia : That's like Mum and Dad. They've known each other for a long time, too. And I've lived in the same house since I was born.

Grandmother : Yes, your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008. Before that, they lived with me here for five years.

Talia : Did they? I didn't know that!

Grandmother : You've never asked me about it before!



# Videoscript

SB page (35)

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

Tourists have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the **wonders**<sup>(1)</sup> of the ancient world, such as the Pyramids, temples and other **monuments**<sup>(2)</sup>. It is a wonderful experience for them.

Tourists have also come to experience the wonderful natural world, such as the desert and the Red Sea.

There are lots of **activities**<sup>(3)</sup> to do by the Red Sea. Some people love **relaxing**<sup>(4)</sup> on the beach, while others like doing something more exciting, like snorkelling.

Snorkelling has been popular for many years and people have come to Egypt to swim in the Red Sea for a long time. Dahab has been a popular **destination**<sup>(5)</sup> since the 1960s. This is because the water here is among the best in the world for snorkelling. There are beautiful **coral reefs**<sup>(6)</sup> and there are some amazing sea animals, such as this **dugong**<sup>(7)</sup> and these **lionfish**<sup>(8)</sup>.

Have you ever been to Dahab? Have you ever been snorkelling?

## Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The main idea of the passage is .....

- a. tourists enjoy visiting Egypt
- b. the weather in Egypt
- c. diving in the sea
- d. cities of Egypt

2. Infer from the text why tourists like to come to Egypt.

3. Summarise the third paragraph in one sentence.

## Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (اجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Tourists come to Egypt to see the wonders of the ancient world.

2. It's a wonderful experience for them.

3. There are lots of activities to do by the Red Sea.

4. Some people love relaxing on the beach.

يأتي السياح إلى مصر لرؤية عجائب العالم القديم.

إنها تجربة رائعة لهم.

هناك العديد من الأنشطة للقيام بها على البحر الأحمر.

بعض الناس يحبون الاسترخاء على الشاطئ.

هناك العديد من الأنشطة للقيام بها على البحر الأحمر.

3. There are lots of activities people can do by the Red Sea.

لرؤية عجائب العالم القديم ولتجربة الأنشطة المائية.

2. To see the wonders of the ancient world and the wonderful natural world.

يستمتع السياح بالعديد من الأنشطة.

Answers

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

SB

1. An ..... is something that happens to you in your life.

- a. experiment
- b. expert
- c. exercise
- d. experience

2. A/An ..... is a place for looking after orphan children.

- a. garden
- b. station
- c. orphanage
- d. aquarium

3. A musical ..... is something that you use for playing music such as a piano.

- a. orphanage
- b. instrument
- c. competition
- d. pool



## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

4. The synonym of the word "elderly" is ..... d. old  
a. safe b. dangerous c. young
5. The word ..... has the same meaning as the word "competition" ..... d. creation  
a. contest b. champion c. staff
6. I think our team will win the match. "Win" is the antonym for "....."  
a. score b. earn c. lose d. beat
7. "....." is the opposite meaning of "sensitive". d. Different  
a. Emotional b. insensitive c. Equal
8. Don't forget to bring me your camera. "Forget" here has the opposite meaning of "....."  
a. return b. remain c. remember d. remind
9. My friend Omar and I are the same age. The opposite of "the same" is .....  
a. equal b. different c. similar d. usual

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

10. We add the suffix ..... at the end of the word "head" to mean pain in the head.  
a. -ition b. -ence c. -ache d. -ive
11. We all compete for a better life. We delete "e" and add the suffix "....." to change "compete" into a noun.  
a. -it b. -ness c. -ition d. -ation
12. We add the suffix ..... to "music" to get the adjective.  
a. -al b. -ian c. -ist d. -ache

## Guessing the meaning

13. After his parents' death he was sent to live with other orphans. This means he was sent to a/an .....  
a. workshop b. school c. farm d. orphanage
14. Tourists like to swim underwater in the Red Sea. This means they like to .....  
a. play b. snorkel c. climb d. ride

## Language

## 1-Remember: The past simple tense

تذكر: زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات

فاعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل

نفي

فاعل + didn't + inf.

استفهام

فاعل + Did + (كلمة استفهام) + inf.?

Keywords

كلمات ذات صلة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage

استخدام

يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

Ex. She played the piano yesterday.

Ex. She didn't try food from other countries.

Ex. Did she drink coffee yesterday?

- Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

## 2-The present perfect tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form

التكوين

يتكون زمن المضارع التام من:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع

+ have ('ve)

+

p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

+ has ('s)

+

p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. They have ('ve) ridden a horse.

Ex. He has ('s) travelled by plane.

Negative

النفي

نفي زمن المضارع التام كالآتي:

I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + haven't (haven't) / never + p.p.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has not (hasn't) / never + p.p.

Ex. I have not (haven't) played a musical instrument.

Ex. He has never driven a car.

Question

السؤال

السؤال بـ «هل»:

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...?

Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...?

Ex. Have you ever been to a football match?

Ex. Has she ever ridden a horse?

- No, she hasn't.

- Yes, she has.

للإجابة عن السؤال بـ «هل» تقول:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...? كلمة استفهام

Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...? كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: What have you read?

B: I've read a story.



### Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية في الماضي past experiences):

Ex. I have visited an orphanage.

٢- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال أثره موجود:

Ex. Amr has lost his keys, so he can't open the door.

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثاً «أي قبل قليل»:

Ex. I have just made a cake.

تأتي الكلمات الآتية عادة مع زمن المضارع التام:

- just	حالياً/تو	- recently	حديثاً
- already	بالفعل	- lately	مؤخراً
- yet	حتى الآن	- ever	سابقاً/من قبل
- since	منذ	- never	إبداً
- for	لمدة		

سيتم شرح استخدام yet / already في (5) Unit بالتفصيل.

### just تو

تدل (just) على أن الحدث وقع منذ فترة قصيرة - وتستخدم مع الجمل المثبتة - وتوضع بالجملة بعد الفعل المساعد have / has - وقبل التصريف الثالث:

• I have just met Ali at the supermarket.

just تساوي (a short time ago / a moment ago) في المعنى ولكنهما يستخدمان مع زمن الماضي البسيط

Ex. I have just done my homework.  
= I did my homework a moment ago.

### ever من قبل / في أي وقت

- تستخدم (ever) للسؤال عن خبرة أو تجربة سابقة أو بعد صيغة التفضيل.

- وتوضع بالجملة بعد الفعل المساعد have / has

Ex. Have you ever met an actor?

Ex. Mona is the cleverest girl I have ever known.

### never مطلقاً

Ex. I have never spoken Spanish.

- تستخدم للنفي:

Ex. My father has never smoked.

### always دائماً

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام always مع المضارع التام لتعبير عن دوام حدوث الفعل وعدم إنتهاءه:

Ex. Ashraf has always lived in Cairo.

Ex. Osman has always loved fish.

### Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I ..... (has) cleaned my room. It's clean now.
- Why ..... (he has) called the police?
- I've ..... (ever) played a musical instrument.

### لمدة / منذ since

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع since (ويأتي بعدها تعبير زمني يدل على توقيت بداية الحدث) وكذلك يستخدم مع for (ويأتي بعدها المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث حتى وقت الكلام):

Ex. I have lived in Tanta since 2010.

Ex. I have lived in Tanta for 12 years.

since	for
Friday - yesterday	الأيام - أمس
August - 2010	الشهور - السنين
2 o'clock	الساعات
last (week - month - year...)	الساعات
..... he went .....	ماضي بسيط
then	منذ ذلك الحين
winter	فصول السنة
his birth / childhood	منذ الميلاد/ الطفولة (حدث في الماضي)
the age of.....	السن / العمر
the 18 <sup>th</sup> century	القرون
	a day - two days - a week - 3 weeks
	a month - two months - a year - 2 years
	an hour - four hours..... etc.
	the last (week - month - year.....)
	a short time - a long time
	ages
	a century
	three seasons
	all of his life

يمكن أن يأتي بعد since جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex. I have lived in the same house since I was born.

Ex. Your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008.

### Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She has been sick ..... (for) yesterday.
- I have studied English ..... (since) twelve years.



## How long...? كم المدة...؟

نستخدم السؤال بـ **How long** مع المضارع التام عندما نسال عن أمر ما حدث في الماضي ومستمر حدوثه حتى الآن.

Ex. **How long have you been married?**

- I have been married for ten years.

Ex. **How long have you lived in your house?**

- I have lived in my house since 2010.

نسال عن الماضي البسيط بـ **How long ago**...

Ex. **How long ago did you join this club?**

- I joined it two years ago.

نستخدم **When** للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط ولا نستخدم المضارع التام.

Ex. **When did you buy this car?**

- I bought it two years ago.

## Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (How many) have you driven a car?

2. A: How long has Sally had a mobile phone?

B: She has had a mobile phone ..... (since) a year.

## have / has been - have / has gone

لاحظ الفرق في الاستخدام بين التعبيرين التاليين:

have / has been to

ذهب إلى مكان ثم عاد مرة أخرى

have / has gone to

ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد بعد

have / has been in / at

موجود في مكان

• He **has been to** London. = (He went there and came back). ذهب إلى لندن وعاد

• He **has gone to** London. = (He is still in London). ذهب إلى لندن وما زال هناك

• He **has been in** Alexandria for 3 days. هو موجود الآن بالإسكندرية منذ ثلاثة أيام

• He **has been at** the stadium for five hours. هو موجود بالإستاد منذ خمس ساعات

نسال بالصيغة السابقة مع **ever** كالتالي:

Ex. **Have you ever been to** a football match?

- Yes, I **have already been to** a football match.

ونجيب كالتالي:

- No, I **have never been to** a football match.

## Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

- Hania ..... (have) played tennis many times.
- It is Lara's birthday today and she has ..... (eat) a lot of cake!
- I haven't ..... (reading) that book.
- Have you ever ..... (be) to Giza?
- Has Lina ..... (never) seen that film?
- Lama has ..... (have) her phone for two years.
- Hatem has lived in Alexandria ..... (for) 2019.
- Malak has been friends with Inji since they ..... (are) children.
- Fady has had a headache ..... (since) about an hour.
- ..... (When) have you known your best friend?
- No, I've ..... (ever) slept in a tent.
- Have you ever ..... (gone to) Aswan in winter?
- Marwa ..... (have) a laptop since she was ten years old.
- I ..... (lived) here since I was a child.
- The teacher has been in the school ..... (in) 7 am.
- I ..... (not meet) Adel since we were in Cairo.

## Longman Exercises

- You can't meet Adel because he's ..... (been) to the supermarket.
- I miss you so much; I haven't seen you ..... (since) ages!
- My uncle ..... (was having) a lung disease since 2020.
- They bought the house in 2006 and they've done a lot of work on it since ..... (than).
- Have you sent the car to the service centre? - Yes, I ..... (have sent) it yesterday.

## Bit by Bit Exercises

- Have you ever ..... (being) to Alex?
- ..... (Does) she ever cooked food?
- I have ..... (ever) travelled alone. I always travel with my family.
- A: ..... (How many) have you lived in this house? B: For ten years.
- I ..... (not see) you for a long time; I miss you so much.
- This is the most beautiful park I've ..... (never) visited.
- I have known my friend ..... (since) a long time.
- My sister ..... (born) in 2010.
- I didn't ..... (travelled) to London last year.



## Speaking

## Talking about experiences

التحدث عن التجارب الحياتية

السؤال والإجابة عن التجارب الحياتية التي مررت بها أو أحد أفراد عائلتك تقول:

## Question

- A: Which people in your family have been to another country?  
 A: Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain?  
 A: Have any of your cousins got married?  
 A: Have your parents always lived in the same house, or have they moved?

## Answer

- B: My father has been to England.  
 B: Yes, my brother has climbed a mountain in Sinai.  
 B: No, none of my cousins has got married.  
 B: Yes, they have lived in the same house.

ويمكن السؤال عن التجارب الحياتية باستخدام How long....? كالتالي:

## Question

- A: How long have you lived in your house?  
 A: How long have you been in this class?  
 A: How long have you known your best friend?  
 A: How long have you had a phone?

## Answer

- B: I have lived in my house since 2005.  
 B: I have been in this class for two hours.  
 B: I have known my best friend recently.  
 B: I have had a phone since I was in preparatory one.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 1 &amp; 2

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ziad is telling Emad about Ziad's weekend

- Ziad : Hi, Emad.  
 Emad : Hi, Ziad. Where have you been?  
 Ziad : ① .....  
 Emad : To the beach! ② .....?  
 Ziad : I went with my family.  
 Emad : ③ .....?  
 Ziad : I swam, met my friend and collected some shells.  
 Emad : How fantastic! When did you return?  
 Ziad : ④ ..... Do you like the beach?  
 Emad : ⑤ ..... It's wonderful.

Longman

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

tools - experience - have had - orphanage - had - instruments

I ① ..... an enjoyable experience recently. I've visited a/an ② ..... There I met a number of orphans. They have been there since their parents died. We've played football together. We've played musical ③ ..... as well. It was a great ④ .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ..... means to swim with your face under water using special equipment.

a. snorkel      b. climb      c. travel      d. sail

2. A/An ..... is a place where children without parents live and be cared for.

a. orphanage      b. nursery      c. orphan      d. theatre

3. Samy always wins competitions at school. The verb "win" is similar in meaning to

a. come first      b. miss      c. waste      d. lose

4. Most people live in cities. The antonym of "most" is

a. majority      b. all      c. least      d. small

5. We turn the verb "compete" into a noun by using the suffix

a. -al      b. -ence      c. -ache      d. -ition

6. Tourists come to Egypt to see the wonders of the ancient world. It is a wonderful

..... for them.

a. experiment      b. instrument      c. experience      d. competition

## 4 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. Mr Sabri has ..... (be) at this school since 2020.  
 2. Kamal and Lina have been married ..... (for) last year.  
 3. Tarek has played handball ..... (since) ten years.  
 4. Have you ..... (never) ridden a horse?  
 5. I haven't met Tamer since he ..... (travel) abroad.



5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about an experience"

محتاج عنه في آخر الوحدة

## Lessons 3 & 4

GB pages 38-40 WB pages 97-98

### Key Vocabulary

deaf	أصم	awake	استيقظ
hard of hearing	تفيل السمع	adventure	مغامرة
the countryside	الريف	care (d) about	تقلق
canoe	قارب ضيق خفيف / زورق	follow (ed)	يتبع
raft	قارب خشبي «مصنوع من جذوع الأشجار»	dream (n) (ed) (v)	حلم - يتحلم
grandparents	الجدون		

استمع إلى المفردات

### Verbs & Nouns

join a sports club	يلضم للنادي رياضي	start school	يبدأ الدراسة
learn a language	يتعلم لغة	win a match	يفوز بمباراة
learn sign language	يتعلم لغة الإشارة	move to another country	ينتقل لدولة أخرى

### Vocabulary

busy	مزدحم - مشغول	fog	ضباب
fun	ممتع / ممتع	foggy	ضبابي
special school	مدرسة خاصة	the Opera House	دار الأوبرا
local school	مدرسة محلية	strange	غريب
hearing problems	مشاكل في السمع	environment	البيئة
concert	حفل موسيقي	scared	خائف / مرعوب
handball club	نادي لكرة اليد	scare (d)	يُخيف
novel	رواية	die (d)	يموت
teenage boys	أولاد مراهقون	explain (ed)	يشرح / يفسر
sequel	تلمة / تكملة «كتاب / فيلم / مسرحية»	float (ed)	يطفو

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What happened when you were a baby?
- Where did you live? With whom?
- What did you do when you were young?
- Have you ever been to another country?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- When I was a baby, .....
- I lived in ..... with .....
- When I was young, I .....
- I visited .....



## Definitions

deaf	أصم	unable <sup>(1)</sup> to hear
sign language	لغة الإشارة	a language that uses hand movements <sup>(2)</sup> instead of <sup>(3)</sup> spoken words
join (ed)	ينضم ر	to become part of a group or club
dream	حلم	pictures and sounds that you think are happening when we are sleeping
awake	مستيقظ	not sleeping
care about	يعتني بـ	feel strongly about someone or something
raft	قارب خشبي	pieces of wood that are put together <sup>(4)</sup> so they can float on water
canoe	قارب ضيق خفيف	a long, narrow boat for one or two people
follow (ed)	يتبع	walk or drive behind someone in the same direction <sup>(5)</sup>

١- غير قادر  
٢- حركات الأيدي  
٣- بدلاً من  
٤- تجمع  
٥- اتجاه

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
hard	صعب - خشن	difficult / rough		easy / soft	سهل / ناعم
awake	مستيقظ	sleepless		asleep	نائم
care about	يعتني بـ	take care of		ignore / neglect	يتجاهل / يهمل
join	ينضم / يلتحق بـ	sign up		quit	يترك / يغادر
start	يبدأ	begin		end / finish	ينتهي / ينهى
scared	خائف	frightened / afraid		brave / unafraid	شجاع / غير خائف
worried	قلق	anxious		quiet	هادئ

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
a-		awake مستيقظ
-ed/-led	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	scar <sup>ed</sup> / interest <sup>ed</sup> / worr <sup>ied</sup>
		خائف / مهتم / قلق
-ing	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	hear <sup>ing</sup> السمع
-ly	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	fogg <sup>y</sup> ضبابي
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	bad <sup>ly</sup> / real <sup>ly</sup> بشكل سيئ / حقاً

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

It's really fun.	إنه ممتع حقاً	In the south of...	في جنوب .....
like the best	أفضل ما يحب	since then	منذ ذلك الحين
(be) called	تسمى / تدعى	get into	يدخل
(be) lost	يُفقد / يتوه	interested in	مهتم بـ
badly hurt	مصاب بشدة	travel in a canoe	يسافر في قارب خفيف
help with	يساعد في	used to	اعتاد أن
look angry	يبدو غاضباً	for a holiday	من أجل إجازة
have a dream	يحلم	on a raft	على قارب خشبي
stop.....from	يمنع.....من	float on water	يطفو على الماء
say sorry	يتأسف / يعتذر	on holiday	في إجازة
along the river	على طول النهر	think about / of	يفكر في
call out	ينادي / يصيح	worried about	قلق بشأن

## Conjugations of

## Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
fly	يطير	flew	flown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught



## Language Notes

## ① special / private

- special (adj) خاص / مميز (من نوع خاص ليس عادي)

Ex. Deaf students go to special schools.

- private (adj) خصوصي (شخصي) (يخص شخص واحد أو مجموعة)

Ex. Don't use my private tooth brush.



## ② another / other / others

- **another** + اسم مفرد (آخر/شيء إضافي)

Ex. Would you like to move to another country?

- **other** + اسم جمع (أخرى)

Ex. Osama has always loved fish and other sea animals.

- **others** (بدون اسم بعدها) = other + اسم جمع (آخرون)

Ex. Some people like playing chess. Others (Other people) don't.

## ③ lose / miss

- **lose** (lost / lost)

يفقد (يُضَيِّع) شيء / يخسر «مباراة مثلاً»

Ex. I have lost my ticket. I need another one.

Ex. Our team lost the last match.

- **miss** (ed)

يفوته شيء / يفترقه «يوحشه» شخص

Ex. I missed the bus, so I took a taxi.

Ex. I really miss my dad.

## ④ feel / fall / fail / fill

- **feel** (felt / felt)

يشعر

Ex. You will feel better after you take that medicine.

- **fall** (ed)

يفشل / يرسب (في)

Ex. Although she is very clever, she failed to come first.

- **fall** (fell / fallen)

يقع / يسقط

Ex. Amal fell and hurt her leg.

- **fill** (ed)

يملأ

Ex. Could you fill the bottle with water, please?

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The deaf boy went to a ..... school for deaf children.  
a. general      b. strange      c. special      d. dangerous
- Tom left his country and moved to ..... one.  
a. other      b. others      c. an other      d. another
- Her son was ..... in the park yesterday.  
a. missed      b. last      c. lost      d. loose
- How did you ..... when you listened to my story?  
a. feel      b. fall      c. filled      d. fall



## Reading

SB page (38)

## Maher

I have lived in a village<sup>(1)</sup> in the south<sup>(2)</sup> of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another country<sup>(3)</sup>, but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousin! It was so big and busy<sup>(4)</sup>, but it was fun<sup>(5)</sup>. We went to lots of museums<sup>(6)</sup> because I am very interested in history<sup>(7)</sup>.

## Azza

I have had hearing problems<sup>(8)</sup> all my life and I learnt sign language<sup>(9)</sup> from when I was a baby. When I first started school<sup>(10)</sup>, I went to a special\* school<sup>(11)</sup> for deaf\*<sup>(12)</sup> children. Now, I have been at a local school<sup>(13)</sup> for three years. I am the only hard of hearing<sup>(14)</sup> person in my class. Sometimes it is difficult, but I have a teacher who can use sign language to help me. She explains<sup>(15)</sup> things I can't understand in sign language. Some of my friends have learnt some sign language, so they can help me, too.

## Wael

My parents died when I was a baby so I have lived with my grandparents<sup>(16)</sup> since I was one. We used to<sup>(17)</sup> live in the countryside<sup>(18)</sup>, but we moved to<sup>(19)</sup> the city three years ago. I like living here, there is lots to do. I joined<sup>(20)</sup> a handball club<sup>(21)</sup> and I have won<sup>(22)</sup> lots of matches with my team<sup>(23)</sup>. It's really fun.

## Say it correctly

- sign
- special
- deaf

في هذه الكلمة [g] لا يطق حرف

يطلق حرف [ci] في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت [sh] في كلمة (fish)

يطلق حرف [ea] في هذه الكلمة مثل حرف [e] في كلمة (ten)



- ولدت
- يعرف على البيلانو
- حفل موسيقي
- دار الأوبرا بالقاهرة
- مدهش

My name's Salma. I was born<sup>(1)</sup> in Syria but my family came to Egypt when I was five years old. We haven't visited Syria since I was very young, but some of my family still live there. When I was eight, I started playing the piano<sup>(2)</sup>. I have played in many concerts<sup>(3)</sup>. I love music. Two years ago, I played at a concert in the Cairo Opera House<sup>(4)</sup>. It was amazing<sup>(5)</sup>!





## The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn

Jim and I were on a raft<sup>(1)</sup> going down the river when it became foggy<sup>(2)</sup>. I left the raft to try and find a place for us to stop for the night. I got into a small canoe<sup>(3)</sup> and went along the river. Then I tried to return. However, it was so foggy that I could not see the raft! I called out<sup>(4)</sup> but I could not hear Jim.

My canoe went down the river for a long way, and I hoped the raft was following<sup>(5)</sup> me. I travelled all night, but the next morning, it was not foggy and finally I saw Jim. He was sleeping on the raft.

I climbed on the raft and said, "Hello, Jim. Have you been sleeping?"

"I was scared<sup>(6)</sup>!" he said. "I couldn't see anything because it was foggy!"

He looked angry. "I had a terrible night, Huck!" he said. "It was like a bad dream<sup>(7)</sup>."

"I'm sorry," I said. From that time, I decided I would never scare<sup>(8)</sup> him again.

## Reading Skill

## ممارسة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. Who was with the writer in this story? من كان مع الكاتب في هذه القصة؟
2. Infer from the story why the writer couldn't hear the other person. استنتج من القصة لماذا لم يتمكن الكاتب من سماع الشخص الآخر.
3. Summarise the second paragraph in two sentences. لخّص الفقرة التالية في جملتين.

## Writing Skill (ممارسة الكتابة) (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. It became foggy while they were going down the river. أصبح الجو ضبابي أثناء تحركهم في النهر.
2. They decided to stop for the night. أرادوا التوقف فترة الليل.
3. The writer went away from the raft. ذهب الكاتب بعيداً عن القارب.
4. He found the raft in the morning. وجد القارب في الصباح.

2. Because he went down the river for a long way.

3. The writer travelled all night alone. He found his friend in the morning.

Answers



- ١- قارب مصنوع من جذوع الأشجار
- ٢- مليء بالضباب
- ٣- قارب ضيق خفيف
- ٤- ينادي / يصيح
- ٥- يتتبع
- ٦- خائف / مرعوب
- ٧- حلم مزعج
- ٨- يخيف

The Adventures<sup>(1)</sup> of Tom Sawyer

They did not see Tom all day. All the time that Tom was playing games in the forest<sup>(2)</sup>, his Aunt Polly worried about him. She thought he was lost<sup>(3)</sup> or badly hurt<sup>(4)</sup>. She was so happy when he returned and told her that he was fine<sup>(5)</sup>.

"It was just a game<sup>(6)</sup>," Aunt Polly, said Tom.

"I'm sure it was a fun game<sup>(7)</sup> for you, but we all worried about you. We didn't know where you were. Why didn't you tell me?"

"I told you in a dream<sup>(8)</sup>," said Tom. "I just forgot to tell you when I was awake<sup>(9)</sup>."

"He never thinks of other people," said his cousin Mary.

"Yes, you should think about other people," said Aunt Polly.

"You know I care about<sup>(10)</sup> you Tom. Try to remember how other people feel."

"I'm sorry that I didn't tell you," said Tom. "It won't happen again."



- ١- مغامرات
- ٢- غابة
- ٣- ضل الطريق
- ٤- مصاب بشدة
- ٥- بخير
- ٦- مجدد لعبة
- ٧- لعبة ممتعة / مسلية
- ٨- حلم
- ٩- مستيقظ
- ١٠- يعتلى بـ

Osama has always loved fish and other sea animals<sup>(1)</sup>. He started to like them when he visited an aquarium<sup>(2)</sup> for the first time in 2015. His family have taken him to the aquarium every summer since then. Last year, the people at the aquarium asked him to help them give food to the fish. He loves doing that! He has helped at the aquarium in the school holidays for a year now. He has given food to most of the small fish, but he hasn't helped with the sharks. They are too dangerous!



- ١- حيوانات بحرية
- ٢- معرض الأحياء المائية



## Audioscript

**Teen boy** : I'm Ashraf. I've always lived in Cairo, but last year, I visited a village in the country for the first time. I loved it! It was very quiet!

**Teen girl** : My name's Magda. I've never been to England, but last week, I talked to my cousins. They were in London. They showed me some famous buildings there on their phone.

**Woman** : I'm Nawal and I have been an English teacher for ten years. I've always taught children, but last year, I started teaching older people, too. I've taught them a lot, but they don't learn as quickly as the children!



## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

1. A ..... is a long, narrow boat for one or two people. WB Longman  
 a. plane      b. rocket      c. canoe      d. ship
2. A ..... is pieces of wood that are put together, so they can float on water. البحر 2023  
 a. rocket      b. raft      c. canoe      d. rock
3. The pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping are called a ..... البحر الأحمر 2023  
 a. dream      b. job      c. project      d. work
4. To ..... means to become part of a group or club.  
 a. follow      b. join      c. dream      d. start
5. To ..... means to walk or drive behind someone in the same direction.  
 a. finish      b. join      c. call      d. follow
6. .... language is a language that uses hand movements instead of spoken words.  
 a. Symbol      b. Singing      c. Sign      d. Signal
7. A/An ..... person is someone who cannot hear.  
 a. deaf      b. blind      c. dumb      d. clever

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

8. .... has the same meaning as "worried". القبو 2022  
 a. Important      b. Anxious      c. Interesting      d. Quiet
9. .... is the opposite of "asleep". البحر 2022  
 a. Awake      b. Angry      c. Walk      d. Week
10. Don't be afraid. This is similar in meaning to "Don't be .....". Longman  
 a. funny      b. quite      c. secret      d. scared
11. Children in Egypt start school at the age of five. The synonym of "start" is .....  
 a. finish      b. learn      c. get      d. begin
12. To be healthier, you should join a sports club. The opposite of "join" is .....  
 a. follow      b. quit      c. belong      d. learn
13. We should care about our environment. The synonym of "care about" is .....  
 a. ignore      b. damage      c. take care of      d. clean

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

14. Streets are usually fog early in the morning in the winter. The correct form of the underlined word is obtained by adding the suffix ".....". Longman  
 a. -ly      b. -ist      c. -g      d. -gy
15. We turn the verb "hear" into a noun by adding the suffix .....  
 a. -ing      b. -ed      c. -y      d. -ly
16. To turn the verb "wake" into an adjective, add the prefix .....  
 a. im-      b. a-      c. dis-      d. en-

## Guessing the meaning

17. We use sign language to make Nahla understand us. This means that Nahla is .....  
 a. dumb      b. blind      c. clever      d. deaf القبو 2022
18. You should care about your young brother. This means you should take care ..... him. Longman  
 a. at      b. out      c. of      d. after
19. This school teaches special language to help deaf children. This means it uses ..... language.  
 a. signal      b. sight      c. sign      d. singing



## Language

## Remember: The past simple tense

تذكر: نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث مبهمة في الماضي. عادة ما نذكر متى حدثت.

ارجع إلى شرح زمن الماضي البسيط Lessons 1/2

Ex. Last year, I **visited** Cairo.

Ex. We **moved** to the city three years ago.

تذكر: نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث في الماضي وليس من المهم ذكر وقت حدوثها.

ارجع إلى شرح زمن المضارع التام Lessons 1/2

Ex. Some of my friends **have learnt** sign language.

ونستخدمه أيضاً للتعبير عن أشياء لا زالت مستمرة الآن

Ex. I **have lived** in Giza since I was born.



## Notes

1- I didn't hear the doorbell since I ..... (have) a shower.

وردت هذه الجملة في امتحان الشرقية 2022

إنه كلمة **since** هنا تعني "لأن" وليس "منذ"

ولذلك الإجابة لن تكون بوضع فعل (have) في زمن الماضي البسيط ولكن لابد من

وضعها في زمن الماضي المستمر.

ولذلك تكون الإجابة **was having** وليس **had**

**Answer** I didn't hear the doorbell **since I was having** a shower.

2- I ..... (have) a bike since I was twelve years old

وردت هذه الجملة في امتحان بورسعيد 2022

في هذه الجملة، فعل **have** فعل أساسي مطلوب تصحيحه في زمن المضارع التام لوجود أحد

الكلمات الدالة على الزمن وهي **since** ويتطلب ذلك إضافة فعل **have** كفعل مساعد ووضع فعل

**have** الموجود في التصريف الثالث.

**Answer** I **have had** a bike **since** I was twelve years old.

3- He has ..... (be) disabled all his life.

وردت هذه الجملة في امتحان الشرقية 2023

في هذه الجملة لابد من وضع فعل **(be)** في التصريف الثالث **(been)** لأنه يسبقه الفعل المساعد **has**

أي أن الزمن المطلوب هو زمن المضارع التام.

**Answer** He **has been** disabled all his life.



## Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- SB, WB & Exams**
- My sister ..... (learnt) two new languages since she left school.
  - I visited Luxor ten years ago. I haven't visited it ..... (for) then.
  - Have you ever ..... (being) to London on business.
  - ..... (Does) he ever forgotten your birthday party?
  - I have ..... (ever) travelled by plane; I don't like travelling by air.
  - I've never ..... (fly) in an aeroplane.
  - I haven't drunk anything ..... (since) two hours.
  - I have never ..... (drove) a car.

WB

WB

WB

WB

WB

الشرقية 2023

بني سويف 2022

الوادى الجديد 2022

## Longman Exercises

- Have you ..... (never) been to Hurghada?
- How ..... (long ago) has she lived in Paris?
- I'm very sad; I ..... (had lost) my mobile.
- Kamal has just arrived. This means he arrived a very ..... (long) time ago.
- We didn't travel to London ..... (since) 2021.



## Bit by Bit Exercises

- A : ..... (How much) have you been a teacher? B: For 13 years.
- What ..... (has) Ahmed buy last week?
- Has Dalia ..... (be) deaf all of her life?
- Why did he ..... (wrote) this email?
- Two years ago, I ..... (join) a sports club.
- She has talked to Samar ..... (since) an hour.
- We haven't visited Syria since I ..... (am) very young

## Speaking

## Asking and answering about personal experiences

السؤال والإجابة من التجارب الحياتية الشخصية

- نسأل شخص عن تجربة حياتية مر بها باستخدام زمن المضارع التام مع ever كالآتي:

A: Have you ever moved to a new place?

- إذا كانت الإجابة عن السؤال بـ Yes نواصل الأسئلة لمعرفة المزيد باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط باستخدام When / Where / Which كالآتي:

B: Yes, I have.

A: Where did you move?

B: I moved to Alex.

## More examples

1- A: Have you ever been to a different country?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Where did you go?

B: I went to England.

A: When did you go there?

B: I went there last year.

2- A: Have you ever played a musical instrument?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Which musical instrument did you play?

B: I played the piano.

3- A: Have you ever learnt different languages?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Which language did you learn?

B: I learnt French.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 3 &amp; 4



## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

أسرط 2023

Sama is asking Rawan about her personal experiences.

Sama : Have you ever got a prize?

Rawan : ① .....

Sama : ② .....

Rawan : I got it two years ago.

Sama : ③ .....

Rawan : Because I wrote a story.

Sama : Did you get any other prizes?

Rawan : ④ .....

Sama : ⑤ .....

Rawan : It's kind of you.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sign - won - dumb - deaf - care - wins

Amany goes to a special school for ① ..... children who can't hear. There, she learns ② ..... language by clever teachers. They ③ ..... about all the children. Amany has just ④ ..... a prize because she was the best to use this special language.



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is pieces of wood that are put together, so they can float on water. 2022 القليبية  
a. car b. kite c. canoe d. raft Longman
2. Your ..... are the parents of your parents. d. grandchildren  
a. fathers b. mothers c. grandparents
3. A bad dream made me scared last night. The antonym of "scared" is .....  
a. frightened b. afraid c. worried d. brave
4. The hotel room was very noisy, I couldn't sleep. This means I was ..... all night! WB  
a. asleep b. scary c. awake d. walk
5. To get the adjective from the noun "fog", we double "g" and add the suffix .....  
a. -y b. -ly c. -ing d. -ed

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I have ..... (have) hearing problems all my life. SB
2. I love chess, so I ..... (has) joined a chess club in my village. WB
3. Have you ever ..... (move) to a new place?
4. Last week, I ..... (gone) to the park with my sister.
5. My parents ..... (get) married in 2000.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story you have just read"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع،

- What is the story about?
- Where did you get that story?
- What happened in the story?
- What was the end of the story?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Once upon a time, .....
- One day, .....
- Next, ..... After that, .....
- In the end, .....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41-43 WB pages 99-101

Key Vocabulary

gymnastics  
dyslexia  
results  
huge  
noisy

رياضة الجمباز  
صعوبة القراءة والتهجي  
نتائج  
صخم  
صاحب

windsurfing  
achieve (d)  
discover (ed)  
volunteer (ed) (n)  
windsurf (ed)

استمع إلى المفردات  
ركوب الأمواج  
يبحر / يحقق  
يكشف  
ينطوع - منطوع  
يركب الأمواج

Vocabulary

storm  
brain  
surprised  
art  
artist  
charity home  
timeline  
exciting  
event  
coach

عاصفة  
المخ  
مدهش  
الفن - الرسم  
فنان - رسام  
بيت خيري  
خط زمني/تسلسل الأحداث  
مثير  
حدث  
مدرب

nearby  
wind  
windy  
suddenly  
disability  
spell (ed)  
train (ed)  
paint (ed)  
decide (d)  
affect (ed)

قريب  
الرياح  
شديد الرياح  
فجأة  
صعوبة/عجز  
يتهجي  
يتدرب / يدرب  
يرسم بالألوان  
يقرر  
يؤثر على

Definitions

discover	يكشف	- to find out some new information about something - find or find out something that people didn't know before
dyslexia	صعوبة القراءة والتهجي	- a learning difference <sup>(1)</sup> that some people are born with which means that they find it difficult to read, write or spell - a learning disability <sup>(2)</sup> which affects reading and writing
results	نتائج	- This tells you how you have done in an exam. - The final number that people or teams get at the end of an exam or sports match
volunteer	يتطوع	to offer to do something without expecting <sup>(3)</sup> any reward <sup>(4)</sup>
achieve	ينجز / يحقق	succeed in doing something good or that you want to do
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	a sport or activity of riding on water on a sailboard

١- اختلاف  
٢- إعاقة  
٣- توقع  
٤- مكافأة



# Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
result	نتيجة	outcome	cause سبب
huge	ضخم	very big / enormous	tiny / small ضئيل / صغير
noisy	صاحب	loud	calm / quiet هادئ
achieve	ينجز	carry out	fail يفشل
discover	يكشف	uncover	hide / cover up يخفي
disability	عجز / صعوبة	inability	ability قدرة
amazing	مدهش / مذهل	surprising / awesome	ordinary عادي

# Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
-ics	activity	gymnastics الجيمناز
-y	n → adj	noisy / windy ضاخب / شديد الرياح
-ed	v / n → adj	surprised مندهش
-ist	person	artist / scientist فنان / عالم
-ly	adj → adv	suddenly فجأة

# Expressions & Prepositions

tell a story	يحكي قصة	take .... back	يعيد
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	enjoy + v-ing	يستمتع بـ
find ..... difficult	يجد ..... صعباً	proud of	فخور بـ
have dyslexia	يعاني من صعوبة القراءة	in trouble	في مشكلة / متاعب
take an exam	يمتحن	far from	بعيداً عن
get a prize	يحصل على جائزة	do gymnastics	يمارس رياضة الجيمناز
get good results	يحصل على نتائج جيدة	do a job	يؤدي وظيفة
volunteer at a charity	يتطوع في جمعية خيرية		

# Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn
draw	drew	drawn

# Speaking

## 1) alone / lonely

• alone (adv) ظرف بمعنى (بمفرده)

Ex. Have you done the housework alone, Nada?

• alone (adj) صفة بمعنى «وحيد»

Ex. The child becomes afraid when he is alone.

• lonely (adj) صفة بمعنى «شاعر بالوحدة»

Ex. Because I'm new in the school, I feel lonely.

Ex. All doesn't like to live alone. (No loneliness)

لاحظ:

## 2) Sequence expressions

نستخدم الكلمات الآتية لتعبير عن التتابع والتسلسل في سرد قصة أو أحداث

When	عندما	Later	لاحقاً
Then	ثم	Now	الآن
After that	بعد ذلك		

## 3) like / would like

• like + n / V-ing / to + inf. يحب

Ex. I like sports.

Ex. I like doing sports.

Ex. I like to do sports.

• would ('d) like + (to + inf. / n) = want + (to + inf. / n) يرغب في / يود

Ex. I'd like (want) to be an artist one day.

Ex. I'd like (want) tea, please.

# Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Now I'm good at driving; I can drive .....  
a. once      b. lonely      c. only      d. alone
- First, mix the flour and butter, ..... add the eggs to them.  
a. because      b. than      c. then      d. that
- I ..... to be a dentist one day.  
a. would      b. would like      c. would likes      d. will like



# Audioscript

SB Page (41)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Nihal** : Today I am going to tell you about a bad thing that happened to me three months ago. I have done **gymnastics**<sup>(1)</sup> for about ten years. I train on Wednesdays and Saturdays every week. A few months ago, my **coach**<sup>(2)</sup> asked if I wanted to **enter**<sup>(3)</sup> my first competition. I was really **excited**<sup>(4)</sup> and I **practised**<sup>(5)</sup> every day for a month. On the Thursday before the competition, I was practising at home when I fell. My leg really hurt so my mum took me to the hospital. The doctor said I had a broken leg! I was so sad and I **cried**<sup>(6)</sup> and cried. I couldn't enter the competition. I haven't been able to do gymnastics since then but I hope I can do it again soon. I really miss gymnastics. Next year I will try to enter the competition again!



- ١- رياضة الجمباز
- ٢- مدرب
- ٣- يدخل (مسابقة)
- ٤- متحمس
- ٥- يتدرب/يمارس
- ٦- يبكي

WB Page (100)

**Tarek** : My name's Tarek. I was born in 2006. I'm the oldest child in my family. My sister Dina was born in 2008 and my brother Ali was born in 2011. So, what exciting things have I done in my life? I've been to Jordan! My family went on holiday there when I was ten, so in 2016. I love handball and started playing it when I was 12. I play for a team and we've won a competition! We won it in 2020. That was amazing. What amazing things have you done?

## Reading

SB page (42)

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. **When**<sup>(1)</sup> I was little, I always loved to **draw**<sup>(2)</sup> and **paint**<sup>(3)</sup> but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always **understand**<sup>(4)</sup> the lessons and it was really **hard**<sup>(5)</sup>. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They **discovered**<sup>(6)</sup> that I had **dyslexia**<sup>(7)\*</sup>. This means it is difficult for my **brain**<sup>(8)</sup> to read and **spell**<sup>(9)</sup>. **After that**<sup>(10)</sup>, I got more help at school and I started to understand more.

When I took my exams, I got really good **results**<sup>(11)</sup>. I was **surprised**<sup>(12)</sup> and happy. **Later**<sup>(13)</sup>, I got a prize for my **art**<sup>(14)</sup>.



- ١- عندما
- ٢- يرسم بالرصاص
- ٣- يرسم بالألوان
- ٤- يفهم
- ٥- صعب
- ٦- يكتشف
- ٧- عسر القراءة
- ٨- المخ
- ٩- يتعجى
- ١٠- بعد ذلك
- ١١- نتائج
- ١٢- مدهش
- ١٣- لاحقاً
- ١٤- الرسم

and then I decided I would like to be an **artist**<sup>(15)</sup> one day. Now, I **volunteer**<sup>(16)\*</sup> at a **charity**<sup>(17)</sup> for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

Say it correctly

- \* dyslexia
- \* volunteer

- ١٥- فنان/رسام
- ١٦- يتطوع
- ١٧- جمعية خيرية
- ١- ينطق المقطع الملون في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق المقطع [dis]
- ٢- ينطق حرف [o] في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة [got]

SB Page (43)

Different families have lived in our house for over 200 years. I have lived here with my family since 2016. Before that, we lived in Cairo. My parents have changed some of the house when we moved here. For example, my mum wanted a new bathroom! My grandmother has lived with us for four years. It is a happy, family home.

WB Page (99)

Karim has enjoyed **windsurfing**<sup>(1)</sup> for about two years. He usually goes with his older brother. A few months ago, he decided to windsurf alone. He did not tell his brother this. It was **windy**<sup>(2)</sup>, but that is good if you want to windsurf.



- ١- يركب الأمواج
- ٢- شديد الرياح
- ٣- فجأة
- ٤- بعيداً عن
- ٥- خائف/مرعوب
- ٦- أعادوه

In the afternoon, the wind **suddenly**<sup>(3)</sup> became very strong. The wind took Karim **far from**<sup>(4)</sup> the beach. He was very **scared**<sup>(5)</sup>.

Some people in a boat came to help Karim. After that, they **took him back**<sup>(6)</sup> to the beach.

Karim has not windsurfed alone since that time. Now, he always windsurfs with an older person. He has learned an important lesson!

WB Page (100)

## Events In Judy's life

- 1- I was born in Manchester in England.
- 2- When I was a baby, my parents moved to Egypt.
- 3- Before I started school, I learned to speak Arabic.
- 4- When I started preparatory school, nobody knew that I was English!
- 5- After my thirteenth birthday, I went to England and visited my cousins who still live there.
- 6- Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here!



## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

1. To \_\_\_\_\_ means to find out some new information about something. **SB**  
 a. achieve b. volunteer c. discover d. decide

2. \_\_\_\_\_ tell you how you have done in an exam. **SB**  
 a. Words b. Awards c. Causes d. Results

3. \_\_\_\_\_ is a learning disability which affects reading and writing. **2203**  
 a. Environment b. Dyslexia c. Volunteer d. Hyperloop

4. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who does work without being paid. **2203**  
 a. volunteer b. farmer c. nurse d. player

5. \_\_\_\_\_ is the sport or activity of riding on water on a sailboard. **Longman**  
 a. Boxing b. Windsurfing c. Gymnastics d. Snorkelling

6. To \_\_\_\_\_ means to succeed in doing something good or that you want to do.  
 a. train b. discover c. achieve d. spell

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

7. Scientists often discover new and exciting things about space. "Discover" is a synonym to \_\_\_\_\_ **WB**

a. uncover b. cover c. hide d. cover up

8. We have just had the results of our tests, and we all did well! The antonym of "results" is \_\_\_\_\_ **WB**

a. troubles b. timelines c. causes d. events

9. The synonym of the word "noisy" is \_\_\_\_\_ **شمال، صبياء 2022**

a. boring b. loud c. difficult d. slow

10. He could achieve his goals. The antonym of "achieve" is \_\_\_\_\_

a. fail b. do c. carry out d. pass

11. The bomb has made a huge hole in the ground. The opposite of "huge" is \_\_\_\_\_

a. noisy b. enormous c. scared d. tiny

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

12. We add the suffix \_\_\_\_\_ to the word "gymnast" to refer to the activity.

a. -ous b. -ism c. -ics d. -ing

13. When we add the suffix \_\_\_\_\_ to the word "wind", it turns it into an adjective.

a. -ed b. -ly c. -y d. -ist

14. The verb "surprise" can be turned into an adjective by using the suffix \_\_\_\_\_

a. -ful b. -able c. -ous d. -ed

## Guessing the meaning

15. Rami has achieved great success; he has \_\_\_\_\_ an amazing job. **Longman**  
 a. made b. done c. ignored d. agreed
16. He came first at school. This means he got good exam \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. results b. gymnastics c. causes d. timelines
17. This child can't read or write. This means he / she suffers from \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. charity b. dyslexia c. brain d. flu

## Speaking

## ① Telling a story about something that happened in your life

سرد قصة عن شيء حدث لك في حياتك  
 - عندما تسرد قصة، حاول تنظيم أفكارك قبل أن تتحدث. فكر في أن تجعل قصتك أكثر تشويقاً من خلال إضافة الظروف والصفات الموضحة بالأمثلة:

Ex. Suddenly, there was a huge, noisy storm!

Ex. Today I'm going to tell you about a good thing that happened to me.

- لابد أن تجيب عن الأسئلة الآتية عند سرد قصة:  
 - When? Where? - What happened? - How did you feel?

## ② Important things you have achieved in your life

أشياء مهمة حققتها في حياتك  
 - يمكن استخدام زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن أشياء مهمة حققتها في حياتك ونكمل بالإجابة في زمن الماضي البسيط

Ex. A: I have learnt to swim.

B: When did you do that?

A: I did that last month.

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 &amp; 6

## ① Finish the following dialogue:

Samy is talking to his friend Hany about an interesting book.

Samy : Hi Hany, What are you doing?

Hany : ① \_\_\_\_\_?

Samy : ② \_\_\_\_\_?

Hany : It's called "Oliver Twist".

Samy : Is it interesting?

Hany : ③ \_\_\_\_\_?

Samy : ④ \_\_\_\_\_?

Hany : It was written by Charles Dickens.

Samy : Can you lend me this story?

Hany : ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_



2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

discovered - speaking - traffic - results - discovering - dyslexia

Adam was born in Cairo. He started walking and 1 at an early age. He has loved drawing since he was a child. He was happy when he started primary school. However, his parents 2 that he didn't like reading or writing. They knew he had 3. After that, he got help at school and started to achieve good 4.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... is a condition that makes it difficult for someone to read and spell.  
a. Education b. Dyslexia c. Ability d. Charity
- To ..... means to offer to do something without expecting any reward.  
a. achieve b. volunteer c. windsurf d. discover
- The word "result" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. cause b. final c. diary d. outcome
- My class did research into our community needs. The results were really amaz- .....  
a. -ing b. -ant c. -ed d. -ness

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Have you ever ..... (make) a kite?
- No, I have ..... (ever) won a competition at school.
- I've lived in the same house ..... (for) I was born.
- Samir ..... (has born) in Cairo in 2001.
- Nancy first ..... (has travelled) to Italy in 2010.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a person you know"

- What's the biography of?
- Where did he / she study?

- I write this biography of.....
- He / She studied.....

- Who's that person?
- What does he / she do?

- He / She is .....
- He / She works .....

## Review

### Key Vocabulary

adventure	مغامرة	hard of hearing	ثقيل السمع	achieve (d)	ينجز / يحقق
gymnastics	رياضة الجمناز	results	نتائج	discover (ed)	يكتشف
orphanage	دار للأيتام	canoe	قارب صغير / زورق	care (d) about	يقلق / يهتم
huge	ضخم	awake	مستيقظ	join (ed)	ينضم / يندمج
deaf	أصم	noisy	صاخب	start (ed)	يبدأ
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	raft	قارب خشبي	follow (ed)	يتبع
the countryside	الريف	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	dream (n) (ed)	حلم - يحلم
experience	تجربة حياتية / خبرة	play (ed)	يلعب / يمارس	snorkel (led)	يعطس بانبوب تنفس
dyslexia	صعوبة القراءة والتهجي	volunteer (ed) (n)	متطوع - متطوعة	windsurf (ed)	يركب الأمواج

### Important phrases

ride a horse	يركب حصان	visit an orphanage	يزور ملجأ
travel by plane	يسافر جواً بالطائرة	see a film	يشاهد فيلم
sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
try food	يجرب طعام	win a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
drink coffee	يشرب قهوة	do the housework	تقوم بأعمال المنزل
write a list	يكتب قائمة	go to a farm	يذهب إلى مزرعة
make food	يحضر / يُعد طعام	swim in a pool	يسبح في حوض سباحة
Join a sports club	ينضم لنادي رياضي	start school	يبدأ الدراسة
learn a language	يتعلم لغة	win a match	يفوز بمباراة
learn sign language	يتعلم لغة الإشارة	move to another country	ينتقل لدولة أخرى



## Language

## 1-Remember: The past simple tense تذكر: زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل + فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل	فاعل + didn't + Inf.	Did + فاعل + Inf.?

## Keywords

كلمات دالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

## Usage

استخدام يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

Ex. She played the piano yesterday.

Ex. She didn't try food from other countries.

## 2-The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

## Form

التصريف الثالث للفعل + has ('s) + p.p. اسم مفرد He / She / It /  
 التصريف الثالث للفعل + have ('ve) + p.p. اسم جمع I / We / You / They

Ex. They have ('ve) played music.

Ex. He has never ridden a horse.

Ex. Have you been to another country?

Ex. Where have you been?

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية في الماضي)

Ex. I have lived in London.

٢- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال أثره موجود:

## Usage

Ex. Look what you have done; who will clean the floor?

Ex. I have just eaten lunch.

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثاً «أي قبل قليل»

## Keywords

مع زمن الماضي البسيط a short time / a moment ago = (للإثبات) نؤا just

Ex. I have just cleaned the floor. = I cleaned the floor a short time ago.

من قبل / سبق لك ever

Ex. Have you ever written a story?

Ex. Ali is the funniest boy I have ever met.

## never

(للنفي) أبداً / مطلقاً

Ex. My father has never done a sport.

## always

دائماً

Ex. I have always listened to music

بداية الحدث + منذ since	مدة الحدث + لمدة for
Friday / yesterday / last week / August / 2010 / 2 o'clock / then / he moved.....	a day / a week / a month / 2 days / 3 months / 5 year / an hour / a long time / all of his life.

Ex. I haven't visited Aswan since 2019 / for two years.

## How long...? كم المدة...؟

• نستخدم السؤال How long....? مع المضارع التام عندما نسال عن أمر ما حدث في الماضي ومستمر حدوثه حتى الآن.

Ex. How long have you been married?

Ex. I have been married since 2011 / for ten years.

## have / has been - have / has gone

• He has been to London. = (He went there and came back). ذهب إلى لندن وعاد

• He has gone to London. = (He is still in London) ذهب إلى لندن وما زال هناك

## Speaking

## 1 Talking about experiences

التحدث عن التجارب الحياتية

## Question

A: Which people in your family have been to another country?

## Answer

B: My father has been to England.

A: Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain?

B: Yes, my brother has climbed a mountain in Sinai.

- ويمكن السؤال عن التجارب الحياتية باستخدام How long....? كالتالي:

## Question

A: How long have you lived in your house?

## Answer

B: I have lived in my house since 2005.

A: How long have you been in this class?

B: I have been in this class for two hours.

A: How long have you known your best friend?

B: I have known my best friend recently.

## 2 Telling a story about something that happened in your life

السؤال والاجابة عن التجارب الحياتية الشخصية

- نسال شخص عن تجربة حياتية مر بها باستخدام زمن المضارع التام مع ever كالتالي:

A: Have you ever moved to a new place?

- إذا كانت الإجابة عن السؤال بـ Yes نواصل الأسئلة لمعرفة المزيد باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط باستخدام When / Where / Which كالتالي:

B: Yes, I have.

A: Where did you move?

B: I moved to Alex.



### 3 Telling a story about something that happened in your life

سرد قصة عن شيء حدث لك في حياتك

- عندما تسرد قصة، حاول تنظيم أفكارك قبل أن تتحدث. فكر في أن تجعل قصتك أكثر تشويقاً من خلال إضافة الظروف والصفات الموضحة بالأمثلة.

Ex. Suddenly, there was a huge, noisy storm!

Ex. Today I'm going to tell you about a good thing that happened to me.

- لابد أن تجيب عن الأسئلة الآتية عند سرد قصة.

- When? Where? - What happened? - How did you feel?

### 4 Important things you have achieved in your life

أشياء مهمة حققتها في حياتك

- يمكن استخدام زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن أشياء مهمة حققتها في حياتك ولكمّل بالإجابة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex. A: I have learnt to swim.

B: When did you do that? A: I did that last month.

## General Exercises on Unit 4

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Arwa and Ahmed are talking about experiences.

Arwa : Have you ever travelled abroad?

Ahmed : 1 .....

Arwa : Where did you go?

Ahmed : 2 .....

Arwa : France! 3 .....

Ahmed : I went there last year.

Arwa : 4 .....

Ahmed : I went there with my family.

Arwa : Did you go there on business or on holiday?

Ahmed : 5 .....

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 wonderful - snorkelled - never - ever - diving - driving Longman

I travelled to Hurghada last summer. Hurghada is the most amazing city I have

1 ..... visited. I spent a 2 ..... time there. I 3 ..... in the sea.

Also, I went 4 ..... with the help of my instructor.

### 2 since - do - make - for - ride - instrument

Longman

We have a nice house in our village. I have lived there 1 ..... I was a child. In the summer, I usually 2 ..... several activities. I sometimes like to play my favourite musical 3 ..... Also, in my spare time, I like to 4 ..... a horse.

### 3 train - try - have done - am doing - fell - competition

I like gymnastics very much. I 1 ..... gymnastics for about three years. I 2 ..... on Fridays. A few months ago, my coach asked me to enter a 3 ..... Unluckily, I couldn't participate because I 4 ..... down while I was practising at home.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ..... means to swim with your face underwater using special equipment.

SB

a. climb b. snorkel c. bike d. fish

2. The pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping are called a/an .....

الأفكار 2022

a. idea b. raft c. dream d. canoe

3. .... is a learning disability which affects reading and writing. شمال سيناء 2023

a. Experience b. Leaflet c. Dyslexia d. Delivery

4. "....." is the final number that people or teams get. Longman

a. Result b. Cause c. Reason d. Effect

5. Most people in my city go to beaches in summer. The synonym of "most" here is the .....

a. minority b. little c. least d. majority

6. Adel was worried about driving cars. "Worried" is similar in meaning to .....

a. anxious b. relaxed c. tired d. quiet

7. The sun is a huge star. The antonym of "huge" is ..... الدقهلية 2022

a. great b. tiny c. enormous d. large

8. Omar is bad at doing maths sums. We add the suffix ..... to turn "bad" into an adverb.

a. -ly b. -in c. -ful d. -y

9. The prefix ..... turns the verb "wake" into an adjective.

a. super- b. dis- c. un- d. a-

10. Riad is clever at using this musical instrument. This means he can ..... it well.

a. play b. repair c. buy d. break



11. Nadalikes to live in a quiet peaceful place. This means she likes to live in  
a. a country b. a city c. the countryside d. a market
12. Sign ..... is using hand movements instead of spoken words.  
a. sport b. activity c. language d. subject

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mona has just ..... (clean) the house.  
2. Mr Rami has been at this school ..... (for) 2020.  
3. Hatem ..... (have) lived in Alexandria for many years.  
4. I have lived here ..... (for) I was born.  
5. We have known each other since we ..... (are) ten years old.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of holidays"

(محبب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع،

- Do you like holidays? Why?
- Where do you like spending holidays?
- What can people do on beaches?
- Why are holidays important?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية،

- I like.....
- I like spending holidays.....
- People can ..... on beaches.
- Holidays help us to.....



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mai is meeting a tourist in the Egyptian Museum.

Mai : Nice to meet you

Tourist : 1

Mai : 2

Tourist : I'm from Italy.

Mai : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : 3 ..... I have come here three times before.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your friend if any of his / her brothers has got married.
2. Your friend asks you how long you have had a mobile phone.
3. Your friend asks you which people in your family have been to another country.
4. You need to know if your friend has ever been to Aswan.
5. You are asked about the musical instrument you have played.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

SB & WB Exercises

1. Hatem ..... to help the elderly in the nearby charity home.  
a. volunteered b. explained c. discovered d. invented
2. When we were on holiday, we went down a river in a/an ..... It was great fun.  
a. canoe b. sequel c. aquarium d. team
3. The children use old pieces of wood to make a/an ....., which they took to the river.  
a. aquarium b. raft c. plane d. ship



4. My grandfather has ..... many things in his life. I am very proud of him.  
a. pretended      b. spelled      c. robbed      d. achieved
5. Scientists often ..... new and exciting things about space.  
a. volunteer      b. discover      c. paint      d. windsurf
6. Last night, I had a strange ..... I thought I was flying!  
a. idea      b. dream      c. raft      d. job

### Longman Exercises

7. I like reading ..... stories.  
a. adventurer      b. adventures      c. adventure      d. adventurous
8. Who are you waiting ..... at the train station?  
a. of      b. for      c. to      d. from
9. He is ..... He can't hear.  
a. deaf      b. blind      c. dumb      d. clever
10. Streets are usually ..... early in the morning in the winter.  
a. fog      b. foggy      c. sun      d. cloud
11. You should care ..... your young brother.  
a. of      b. to      c. from      d. about
12. Rami has achieved great success; he has ..... an amazing job.  
a. made      b. ignored      c. done      d. agreed
13. The view is .....; it's awesome.  
a. amazing      b. amazed      c. ugly      d. ordinary
14. The heavy rain started .....  
a. carelessly      b. happily      c. sadly      d. suddenly
15. How long have you practised your favourite sport? - I have ..... it for five years.  
a. made      b. run      c. done      d. gone
16. I was very surprised when I saw the present; I was .....  
a. shocked      b. amazed      c. annoyed      d. amazing
17. My sister is getting married today. We are hosting a ..... party at home.  
a. wedding      b. graduation      c. birthday      d. death
18. My grandfather has different ..... in life. He is wise enough to make good decisions.  
a. exercises      b. experiments      c. experiences      d. exchanges
19. There is no similarity between the two cars. They are both .....  
a. different      b. the same      c. difficult      d. awesome

20. Come in, Reda. Adel isn't asleep; he is ..... He is waiting in his room.  
a. not inside      b. outside      c. aware      d. awake
21. He has had hearing problems all his life, so he started to learn ..... language.  
a. symbol      b. sign      c. signal      d. ear
22. He became a member of the club after ..... it.  
a. joining      b. entering      c. going      d. playing
23. My brother ..... at a charity for children with special needs. He gives a hand in various ways.  
a. lives      b. looks      c. aims      d. volunteers
24. The view is amazing; it's .....  
a. strange      b. awesome      c. ordinary      d. interested
25. No one sleeps with me in my room; I sleep .....  
a. alone      b. only      c. lonely      d. one

### Bit by Bit Exercises

26. You have to get a passport and a ticket to travel ..... plane.  
a. by      b. on      c. in      d. at
27. Visiting the zoo is an exciting ..... for kids.  
a. experiment      b. exam      c. experience      d. exercise
28. Tourists like to go ..... along the Red Sea beaches.  
a. marrying      b. snorkelling      c. studying      d. cooking
29. When she lost her parents, she was sent to a / an .....  
a. cage      b. bank      c. cinema      d. orphanage
30. My cousin is ..... married next month.  
a. getting      b. coming      c. giving      d. having
31. It takes hours of practice to learn to ..... the guitar.  
a. plan      b. blow      c. fly      d. play
32. We went camping last month and slept in a .....  
a. school      b. lake      c. tent      d. torch
33. Our manager always comes to work ..... time. He's a successful man.  
a. on      b. by      c. for      d. about
34. I use sign language because I'm hard of .....  
a. sleeping      b. working      c. listening      d. hearing
35. Sally hurt her leg while she was doing .....  
a. cakes      b. physics      c. mathematics      d. gymnastics
36. This boy needs to read and write more because he suffers from .....  
a. fever      b. flu      c. dyslexia      d. headache



37. The ..... was attended by a large number of music lovers.  
 a. wedding b. concert c. match d. test
38. Don't ..... to bring me your camera. We need it at the party.  
 a. forget b. regret c. remember d. remain
39. Huda spoke loudly in the library. She was .....  
 a. noisy b. quiet c. windy d. calm

## B Language

### SB & WB Exercises

40. Kamal and Lina have been married ..... last year.  
 a. since b. just c. for d. ever
41. How long ..... you enjoyed your favourite hobby?  
 a. have b. are c. has d. do
42. How long have Laila and Hassan ..... married?  
 a. were b. be c. are d. been
43. My parents got married ..... 2001.  
 a. ago b. in c. for d. since
44. We have ..... moved house. We've always lived in the same place.  
 a. ever b. never c. just d. always
45. Nahla is not here this week because she ..... to France for a holiday.  
 a. has gone b. has been c. was being d. had been
46. How ..... have you lived in this house?  
 a. many b. much c. long d. far
47. Has he finished on time? Yes, he .....  
 a. is b. does c. has d. hasn't
48. Have you ..... made a cake?  
 a. never b. since c. yet d. ever
49. I have ..... played a musical instrument. I don't like music.  
 a. ever b. never c. yet d. already
50. We have known each other since we ..... ten years old.  
 a. has b. was c. were d. are
51. Your mum and dad ..... in that house since 2008.  
 a. has lived b. lived c. have lived d. were living

WB

## Bit by Bit Exercises

52. Adly didn't ..... to the North Coast last year.  
 a. go b. went c. gone d. going
53. Roqia ..... born in 1992.  
 a. was b. were c. have d. has
54. Amira has ..... loved playing with children. She enjoys her time with them.  
 a. never b. ever c. always d. yet

### 4 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite hobby"

أهوايةك المفضلة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What's your favourite hobby?
- Where do you practise it?
- Who helps you to practise it?
- How is your hobby useful?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- ..... is my favourite hobby.
- I go to ..... to practise it.
- ..... helps me there.
- My hobby is very interesting because .....



# Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

## 1- A short story about an experience

(Lessons 1 &amp; 2)

I was born into wonderful family. I have lived in a town in the south of Egypt all my life. I like living here. There are lots to do. I joined a handball club. I have won lots of matches with my team. It's really fun. I have never been to another country. Last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins! It was so big and busy, but it was fun. We went to lots of museums. I am very interested in history.

## 2- A short story I have just read

(Lessons 3 &amp; 4)

I've just read a nice story. about a poor fisherman. One day, he caught a magic fish. "If you let me go, I'll give you a wish," said the fish. "I wish I lived in a palace," he said. When he got home, he saw that his wish came true. The fisherman caught the magic fish again. It gave him another wish. "I wish I was rich," he said. When he got home, his palace was full of gold. The magic fish decided that the fisherman became too greedy. It took away all of the fisherman's wishes, and the fisherman was poor again.

## 3- A biography of a person I know

(Lessons 5 &amp; 6)

Helen Keller was born on June 27, in America. Her father worked for a newspaper. Her mother took care of the home. When Helen was around one and a half years old she became very sick. She had lost both her sight and her hearing. She needed some special help. Her parents asked a teacher to teach Helen words.

The teacher taught Helen how to read. Later in her life, Helen became a great famous scientist.

## 4- A review of holidays

(General Exercises)

We all like going on holidays. People all over the world like spending their holidays on beaches. Hurghada is wonderful. People like its sunny weather. They enjoy snorkelling and diving. People can do other water sports. They can water-ski, go sailing or go fishing. They can go on sea trips. They spend wonderful time on the Red Sea. Holidays are our best way to relax.

## 5- My favourite hobby

(Al Azhar)

Reading is my favourite hobby. I go to the school library twice a week. There, the librarian helps me choose my books. I prefer history books and adventure stories. I also go to the bookshop to buy new books. When I get a new book, I read it and write a review about it.

## 6- A review of something I have

achieved

(Test)

This is a review about something I have achieved. I was born in England. When I was a baby, my parents moved to Egypt. Before I started school, I learned to speak Arabic. It was nice to learn Arabic. Soon, I was able to read and write it well. At school, nobody knew that I was English! After my thirteenth birthday, I went to England. I visited my cousins there. Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here!



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue

Omar is asking Nour about his family.

Omar : Which one of your family has been to another country?

Nour : ① .....

Omar : Which country has your uncle been to?

Nour : ② .....

Omar : ③ .....

Nour : To have a university degree in Japanese language.

Omar : ④ .....

Nour : No, I haven't travelled abroad but I want to visit England one day.

Omar : I hope you will achieve your goals.

Nour : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

### 5 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

win - yet - repair - just - achieve - dream

We all have goals in life we want to ① ..... You may have a goal to ② ..... a competition. Someone else may have a ③ ..... to travel abroad. For me, I haven't achieved my goals ④ .....

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Karim!

I am planning a camping trip by the lake with my cousins. I know how much you like camping and it's been a while since I last saw you. Would you like to come?

We are going to leave on Saturday morning and we have enough tents, so you don't have to bring your own. However, you should bring a sleeping bag and anything else you think you might need. My cousins Amr and Fady are going to bring a few sandwiches, but there is also a supermarket close to the campsite, so we can go there



if we need more food. Oh, we will return on Sunday evening at about eight. Anyway, let me know if you can make it. Take care, Ali

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "there" refers to .....  
a. the lake b. the camp  
c. the supermarket d. the tent
- Ali seems to be a/an ..... person.  
a. shy b. cruel c. stressful d. active
- The underlined word "planning" means .....  
a. staying b. understanding  
c. organizing d. selling

### B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the letter talking about?

5. How long will the trip last?

6. What should Karim bring?

### C Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A / An ..... is a place for the care and education of children who have no parents.  
a. club b. orphanage c. prison d. park Longman
- ..... is learning difference that some people are born with which means that they find it difficult to read, write or spell.  
a. Dyslexia b. Education c. Ability d. Agriculture
- The synonym of the word "elderly" is .....  
a. safe b. young c. cute d. old الأقصر 2023
- We add the suffix "....." at the end of the word "head" to mean pain in the head.  
a. -ful b. -ache c. -er d. -ness
- He can't hear me very well. This means he is .....  
a. hard of hearing b. hearing well c. easy hearing d. well hearing
- My cousin works in a charity for free. This means he ..... at a charity.  
a. volunteers b. hurts c. achieves d. windsurfs

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A: Has he ..... (finishes) on time? B: Yes, he has.
- Have you ..... (gone to) London on business? WB
- I've lived here ..... (for) I got married to your grandfather.
- Your mum and dad ..... (live) in that house since 2008.
- Different families have lived in our house ..... (since) over 200 years. خفر الشيخ 2022

### D Writing

#### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of something you have achieved"

محتاج عنه قبل الاختبار

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Why do you write this review?
- What happened to you when you were a baby?
- What have you learned?
- What happened later?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I write my review to ..... - When I was a baby, .....
- I have learned ..... - After that, .....



prep.  
3

New  
Hello!

5  
UNIT

## Young role models

### Objectives

#### Reading:

A text about a business person and a space engineer; a biography of a friend; an article about a sports tournament; a biography of a tennis player

#### Writing:

A description of someone's job; a paragraph about a tournament or a competition; a biography of a role model

#### Listening:

A conversation about a role model; an interview with an inventor; a conversation sharing good news

#### Speaking:

Discussing jobs; talking about sports tournaments; responding to good news

#### Language:

The present perfect with yet and already

Life Skills: Respect for diversity

## Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44-47 WB pages 102-103

### Key Vocabulary

role model  
championship  
equipment  
competition  
hyperloop  
blind  
tournament  
space engineering  
space technology

قدوة (نموذج يحتذى به)  
بطولة  
معدات (الشيء لا يبعد)  
مسابقة - منافسة  
هايبرلوب (نظام نقل سريع)  
كفيف (أعمى)  
دورة مباريات  
هندسة الفضاء  
تكنولوجيا الفضاء

campaigner  
volunteer  
achievement  
speech  
goal  
achieve (d)  
challenge (d) (n)  
enter (ed)  
award (ed) (n)

استمع إلى المفردات



مناضل  
مطوع  
إنجاز  
خطاب / حديث  
هدف  
يحقّق / ينجح  
يتحدى - تحدّي  
يدخل (مسابقة)  
يمنح جائزة - جائزة (رسمية)

### Jobs

business person  
sports champion  
astronaut  
musician  
mathematician\*  
computer programmer

رجل / سيدة أعمال  
بطل رياضي  
رائد فضاء  
موسيقي  
عالم في الرياضيات  
مبرمج كمبيوتر

artist  
space scientist  
space engineer  
engineer  
manager

فنان - رسّام  
عالم فضاء  
مهندس فضاء  
مهندس  
مدير



### Vocabulary

space science  
engineering student  
emergency  
crossword  
discussion

علم الفضاء  
طالب هندسة  
طوارئ  
الكلمات المتقاطعة  
مناقشة  
The Middle East  
disabled people  
receive (d)  
design (ed) (n)  
pass (ed)

الشرق الأوسط  
دوى الهمم  
يستلم  
يصمم شيء - تصميم  
يحتاج



### Definitions

campaigner

مناضل

a person whose job is to try and change the way people do things in society

١- مجتمع  
٢- يخلّد / يثبّت  
٣- يحترم

mathematician

متخصص / عالم في الرياضيات

someone who studies, works with or teaches maths

role model

قدوة (نموذج يحتذى به)

someone that you want to copy because you respect them

sports champion

بطل رياضي

a person who wins a sports competition



championship	بطولة	a competition to find the best team or player in a sport
scientist	عالم	someone who works with science
artist	فنان - رسام	someone who is good at art
musician	موسيقي	someone who is good at music
enter	يدخل (مسابقة)	decide to <b>take part</b> in something such as a competition
goal	هدف / طموح	something that you hope to do in the future
speech	خطاب - حديث	a talk that someone gives to a group of people
tournament	دورة مباريات	competition in which many players or teams take part
astronaut	رائد فضاء	someone who travels and works in a <b>spacecraft</b>
award	جائزة	a prize for an <b>event</b> or competition
achieve	ينجز - يحقق	succeed in doing something good or that you want to do
achievement	إنجاز	something important that you have done

### Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
start	يبدأ	begin		finish / end	ينتهي
enter	يدخل (في مسابقة)	join / go into		exit / leave	يخرج / يغادر
different	مختلف	various		similar / the same	متشابه / نفس الشيء
pass	يجتاز / يمر	succeed in		fail	يفشل
right	صحيح	correct		wrong	خطأ

### Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	الاستخدام	Examples
astro-	space	تخص الفضاء	astro naut رائد فضاء
-er	person	تكون اسم الفاعل	engineer / programmer / manager مهندس / مبرمج / مدير
-ion			education / discussion تعليم / مناقشة
-ition	v → n	تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	competition مسابقة
-ment			equipment / achievement معدات / إنجاز
-ing			meeting اجتماع
-ship	n	تكون الاسم	championship بطولة

### Important Suffixes

Adding (-ian) or (-ist) to refer to persons / jobs

غالباً نضيف اللاحقتان -ian / -ist لتشير إلى الأشخاص / الوظائف، وهذه أمثلة للتوضيح:

librarian	أمين مكتبة	artist	فنان / رسام
musician	موسيقي	florist	بائع زهور
historian	مؤرخ	dentist	طبيب أسنان
politician	سياسي	chemist	كيميائي
electrician	كهربائي	scientist	عالم
mathematician	متخصص في الرياضيات	journalist	صحفي

### Expressions & Prepositions

give a speech	يلقي خطاب / حديث	win an award	يفوز بجائزة
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	join a team	ينضم لفريق
get paid for	يتلقى أجر عن	start a company	يبدأ تأسيس شركة
do a job	يقوم بمهمة / عمل	all around the world	حول العالم
achieve a goal	يحقق هدف	bad for	سيء لـ
finish school	ينهي دراسة مدرسية	believe in	يؤمن بـ
take part	يشارك	pass an exam	يجتاز امتحان
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	travel above the ground	يسافر فوق سطح الأرض
have a meeting	لديه اجتماع / لقاء		
win a competition	يفوز بمسابقة		

### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
go يذهب	went	gone
give يعطي	gave	given
get يحصل على	got	got
pay يدفع (مال / أجر)	paid	paid



# Language Notes

## 1 work on / work with

• **work on** يعمل على تطوير (مشروع مثلاً)

Ex. I'm **working on** a school project about pollution.

• **work with** يعمل / يتعامل مع

Ex. Every football team has had a doctor to **work with** them.

Ex. A mathematician is someone who **works with** maths.

## 2 work for / work as

• **work for** يعمل لدى / لصالح (شركة أو شخص)

Ex. I started **working for** a big company three years ago.

• **work as** يعمل كـ (وظيفة)

Ex. Noha has **worked as** a volunteer since she left school.

## 3 information / equipment

- هذه الكلمات تعامل معاملة المفرد ولا نضع أمامها أدوات نكرة a / an ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد (v + s / is / was / does / has)

Ex. The **information** about this project **is** in today's papers.

## 4 award / reward

• **award** جائزة رسمية

Ex. Mo Salah won a lot of **awards**.

• **reward** مكافأة

Ex. This bicycle was a **reward** for my success.

## 5 model / medal

• **model** نموذج

Ex. I like collecting **model** cars.

• **role model** نموذج يحتذى به (قدوة)

Ex. Dr Ahmed Zewail is a good **role model** for young people.

• **medal** ميدالية

Ex. My team won the gold **medal**.

## 6 champion / hero

• **champion** بطل رياضي

Ex. Manchester city is the **champion** this year.

• **hero** بطل (في الحياة / رواية)

Ex. My father is very successful. He's my **hero**.

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A scientist is someone who works ..... science.  
a. for b. as c. on d. with
- My uncle Munir works ..... a space engineer.  
a. for b. on c. as d. in
- Many Egyptian singers won international music .....  
a. rewards b. awards c. words d. wards
- Tamer is good at making plane .....  
a. medals b. model c. models d. modes
- In this sports competition, the ..... receives a golden cup.  
a. hero b. model c. champion d. volunteer
- This equipment ..... suitable for diving.  
a. is b. were c. are d. have



## Reading

SB page (45)

استمع إلى الصوت



My cousin, Gamal, is a **business person**<sup>(1)</sup>. When he finished university, he got a job with a big **company**<sup>(2)</sup> in Cairo. He's worked there for three years now.



I think he's got a very important job. He's the **manager**<sup>(3)</sup> of a **team**<sup>(4)</sup> of people and they have **meetings**<sup>(5)</sup> every day. He works very hard. Sometimes, he has to meet people from companies in other countries. He has travelled to lots of interesting places. Last year, he went to Nigeria and Brazil.

- 1- رجل أعمال
- 2- شركة
- 3- مدير
- 4- فريق
- 5- اجتماعات

Say it correctly

• **mathematician**

• ينطق حرفي (ci) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الصوت شـ [sh]



Samar Abdelfattah has always been interested in space. As a young child, she wanted to be an **astronaut**<sup>(1)</sup>. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study **space engineering**<sup>(2)</sup>.

While Samar was at university, a **space technology**<sup>(3)</sup> company had a **competition**<sup>(4)</sup>. Students had to **design**<sup>(5)</sup> a **hyperloop**<sup>(6)</sup> - a new, very fast form of **transport**<sup>(7)</sup> that travels above the ground.

Samar decided to **enter the competition**<sup>(8)</sup> and asked other **engineering students**<sup>(9)</sup> from the university to join her team.

Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samar's team was the only one from Africa or **the Middle East**<sup>(10)</sup>. They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the **award**<sup>(11)</sup>.

Three years later, Samar started her **own company**<sup>(12)</sup>. Now she is a **space engineer**<sup>(13)</sup> and a business person. She also gives **speeches**<sup>(14)</sup> to other young engineers to help them **achieve**<sup>(15)</sup> their goals.



- ١- رائدة فضاء
- ٢- هندسة الفضاء
- ٣- تكنولوجيا الفضاء
- ٤- مسابقة / منافسة
- ٥- يصمم شيء
- ٦- هايبرلوب / نظام نقل سريع
- ٧- مواصلات
- ٨- يدخل المسابقة
- ٩- طلاب هندسة
- ١٠- الشرق الأوسط
- ١١- جائزة
- ١٢- شركتهما الخاصة
- ١٣- مهندس فضاء
- ١٤- خطابات / أحاديث
- ١٥- يحقق / ينجز

Say it correctly

design  
hyperloop

لا ينطق حرف [g] في هذه الكلمة  
ينطق حرفي [hy] في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (high)

#### Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. What's the text mainly about?
2. Infer from the text what Samar studied.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in two sentences.

عما يتحدث النص أساساً؟  
استنتج من النص ماذا درست سمر.  
لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملتين.

#### Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Samar Abdelfattah wanted to be an astronaut.
2. She entered a competition.
3. She won and travelled to the USA.
4. She is a space engineer and a business person now.

أرادت سمر عبد الفتاح أن تكون رائدة فضاء.  
دخلت مسابقة.  
فازت وسافرت إلى الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.  
إنها الآن مهندسة فضاء وسيدة أعمال.

١. Samar Abdelfattah (a space engineer).  
٢. Space engineering.  
٣. Samar interested in space. She studied space engineering at Cairo University.

Binita who is from a village in India, was five years old when she became **blind**<sup>(1)</sup>. This was a big **challenge**<sup>(2)</sup> for her. She went to a school for blind children until she was eleven, when she joined a different school with children who weren't blind.

At school, Binita found that the children quickly learnt about her problems. They now know that just because she is blind does not mean she cannot do 99% of the things that they can do!

- ١- كيف (أعمى)
- ٢- تحدي

- ٣- مناقشة
- ٤- ذوي الهمم

Now she is a **campaigner**<sup>(3)</sup> for other people who are **disabled**<sup>(4)</sup>. Her next challenge is to help everyone understand that being disabled does not mean you cannot achieve your goals.

Say it correctly

campaigner

لا ينطق حرف [g] في هذه الكلمة

## Audioscript

SB Page (47)

Seleem : Hi, Mazin! What are you reading?

Mazin : It's an article about Magdy Abdel Sayed. He's a campaigner for people who are disabled.

Seleem : So, is he disabled?

Mazin : Yes, he's been disabled all his life. He's done lots of **amazing**<sup>(1)</sup> things - but he has had lots of challenges.

Seleem : What was his life like as a child?

Mazin : Well, he couldn't move without help until he was five years old.

Seleem : Did he go to school?

Mazin : Yes, but it wasn't easy. Some schools couldn't have Magdy as a student because they didn't have the right equipment for disabled people.

Seleem : So what happened?

Mazin : Magdy really wanted to go to school and his parents wanted him to have a good **education**<sup>(2)</sup>. They found a school for him and he was an **excellent**<sup>(3)</sup> student.

Seleem : Were there a lot of challenges for Magdy at school?

Mazin : Yes, there were, but he never stopped trying when things were difficult. Before he left school, he won an award from Cambridge University for his achievements.

Seleem : That's amazing! What did he do when he finished school? Did he get a job or go to university?

Mazin : Well, after Magdy won the award, a lot of companies wanted to give him a job, but he decided to go to university.

Seleem : Of course - because education was very important to him.

Mazin : Yes, but it wasn't the only important thing. Magdy has always **believed in**<sup>(4)</sup> helping other people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for different **charities**<sup>(5)</sup>.

Seleem : And does he still help people now?

Mazin : Yes, he does. He works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs. He also gives speeches about how everyone can achieve their goals.



- ١- مذهل
- ٢- تعليم
- ٣- ممتاز
- ٤- يؤمن بـ
- ٥- جمعية خيرية



# Videoscript

[SB Page (47)]

Have you ever looked at the sky at night? You have probably seen the moon, **planets** and stars in space.



People have already visited space many times. A Russian astronaut, Yuri Gagarin, went in 1961. And in 1969, an American astronaut called Neil Armstrong was the first man on the moon.

Today, there are astronauts on a **satellite** called the **International Space Station**. This flies around our planet every 90 minutes. The astronauts on the space station do **scientific** experiments to study space. They usually stay on the space station for about six months. And they even do exercises for two hours every day to keep fit.

Space has interested Egyptians for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians were the first **civilization** to study the stars and the planets, and they made some important **discoveries**.

They first discovered the **equinox**. This happens in March and September every year and it is when the **position** of the sun in the sky means that the day and the night are the same length.

We are still making important discoveries today. At the **Egyptian Space Agency** in Cairo, engineers from the agency and students from Cairo University have already built satellites. They now want to send an Egyptian astronaut to **explore** space. Nobody from Egypt has visited space yet, but they will in the future.

- ١- الكواكب
- ٢- قمر صناعي
- ٣- المحطة الفضائية
- ٤- الدولة
- ٥- علمي
- ٦- لائق بدنيا
- ٧- التزامم
- ٨- حضارة
- ٩- اكتشافات
- ١٠- الاضطراب الشمسي
- ١١- وضع / مكان
- ١٢- وكالة الفضاء المصرية
- ١٣- يستكشف

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

- A / An ..... is someone who studies, works with or teaches maths. **Longman**  
a. campaigner b. mathematician c. scientist d. artist
- A / An ..... is a person whose job is to try and change the way people do things in society. **2023**  
a. mathematician b. volunteer c. engineer d. campaigner
- A / An ..... is someone that you want to copy because you respect them.  
a. role model b. award c. speech d. artist
- A / An ..... is a prize you get for an event or a competition. **2023**  
a. discount b. goal c. award d. direction
- An ..... is something important you have done. **2023**  
a. opportunity b. aquarium c. environment d. achievement

## Lessons 1 & 2

- A / An ..... is someone who works with science.  
a. scientist b. artist c. astronaut d. musician
- A / An ..... is a competition in which many players or teams take part.  
a. speech b. tournament c. goal d. award
- A ..... is a person who wins a sports competition.  
a. campaigner b. scientist c. musician d. sports champion
- A / An ..... is a talk that someone gives to a group of people.  
a. speech b. goal c. achievement d. championship
- A ..... is something that you hope to do in the future.  
a. champion b. speech c. goal d. space

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- I'll start university next year. The antonym of the verb "start" is .....  
a. finish b. succeed c. fail d. give
- I succeeded in the exam. "Succeeded" gives the meaning of .....  
a. last b. filled c. missed d. passed
- The synonym of the word "right" is .....  
a. different b. correct c. wrong d. similar
- I always enter reading competitions. The verb "enter" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. exit b. go into c. leave d. go out

### Prefixes & Suffixes

- The suffix ..... in the word "art" refers to a person or a job.  
a. -er b. -ist c. -n d. -ment
- The verb "achieve" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix .....  
a. -ed b. -er c. -ment d. -ian
- The prefix ..... is related to space.  
a. dis- b. trans- c. hyper- d. astro-
- We turn the verb "compete" into a noun by using the suffix .....  
a. -ition b. -ment c. -er d. -ly

### Guessing the meaning

- The man over there can't see. This means he is .....  
a. late b. blind c. deaf d. dumb
- Khalid works with disabled people without money. This means that he is a / an .....  
a. scientist b. artist c. volunteer d. engineer
- Our team came first in the tournament. This means it won the .....  
a. equipment b. test c. speech d. championship



# Language

## The present perfect and the past simple

إرجع إلى شرح الزمنين في الوحدة السابقة.

### الفرق بين زمنى المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

The present perfect tense	The past simple tense
• نستخدمه للتحدث عن حدث بدأ في الماضى ولازال مستمر في الحاضر	• نستخدمه للتحدث عن حدث وقع في الماضى وانتهى
• We <b>have lived</b> in Giza for eight years. (We still live there.)	• We <b>lived</b> in Giza from 2000 to 2008. (We no longer live there.)
• نستخدمه للتحدث عما انجزه شخص وقابل للزيادة والتكرار (عندما يكون الشخص لا زال على قيد الحياة)	• نستخدمه للتحدث عما انجزه شخص في الماضى ولكنه غير قابل للزيادة والتكرار (الوفاء الشخص مثلاً)
• Salah <b>has scored</b> many goals.	• Naguib Mahfouz <b>wrote</b> many novels.
• نستخدمه للتعبير عن حدث وقع في الماضى ولكننا لا نعرف متى حدث بالضبط	• نستخدمه عندما نعرف متى وقع الحدث بالضبط في الماضى
• Ali <b>has bought</b> a new car. (We don't know when.)	• Ali <b>bought</b> a new car last week. (We know this is a fact.)
• نستخدمه للتعبير عن حدث وقع في الماضى وله نتيجة في الحاضر	• نستخدمه للتعبير عن حدث وقع في الماضى وليس له نتيجة في الحاضر ولا مرتبط به

## Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

- Last year, I ..... (travel) to meetings around the world.
- Our football team ..... (win) the last match.
- My cousins have lived in Mansoura ..... (since) six months.
- Nada ..... (didn't visit) the pyramids since her childhood.
- She ..... (be) abroad since 2020.

WB

القاهرة 2022

الدمشقية 2022

الغربية 2022

المنيا 2022

## Longman Exercises

- Why did he ..... (travelled) to London last week?
- A month ago, we ..... (are) in our village.
- Hatim returned from the United States ..... (since) 2020.
- Tamer has just ..... (arriving); you can come and see him.

## Bit by Bit Exercises

- Last Friday, I ..... (watch) a nice film.
- We ..... (has finished) our homework.
- My sister has ..... (reading) a lot of interesting stories.
- Dad has just ..... (phone) his friend.
- Mustafa has just ..... (park) his car.
- ..... (Has) you played squash before?
- A: What did he have? B: He ..... (has) a car.

## Speaking

### Asking and answering questions about challenges

السؤال والإجابة عن التحديات  
- نسأل ونجيب بمعلومات عما واجه شخص ما من تحديات لتحقيق هدفه كالتالى:

#### Question

- Which university did he / she go to?  
- أى جامعة ذهب / ذهبت إليها؟
- What competition did he / she enter?  
- أى مسابقة اشترك / اشتركت فيها؟
- Who were in his / her team?  
- من كان في فريقه / فريقها؟
- Where did other teams come from?  
- من أين أتت الفرق الأخرى؟
- What has he / she achieved?  
- ما الإنجاز الذى حققه / حققته؟

#### Answer

- He / She went to.....University.  
- ذهب / ذهبت إلى جامعة .....
- He / She entered a ..... competition.  
- اشترك / اشتركت في مسابقة .....
- ..... was / were in his / her team.  
- ..... كان في فريقه / فريقها .....
- They came from different countries.  
- لقد أتوا من دول مختلفة.
- He / She achieved.....  
- لقد حقق / حققت .....



# General Exercises

on Lessons 1 &amp; 2



## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Youssef and Shady are talking about Dr Ahmed Zewail.

Youssef : Hi, Shady. What are you reading?

Shady : 1.....?

Youssef : 2.....?

Shady : Dr Zewail went to Alexandria University.

Youssef : 3.....?

Shady : Yes, he won the Nobel Prize for chemistry.

Youssef : That's a great achievement! 4.....

Shady : You must work hard to be like him.

Youssef : 5.....

Shady : Me too, I'll do my best.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

achievements - rule - worked - role - works - campaigner

I admire Dr Magdy Yacoub. He is my 1..... model. He did a lot of 2..... in medicine. He's a 3..... for people who have heart diseases. He 4..... in England many years ago.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is someone who travels and works in a spacecraft. Longman

a. cyclist b. scientist c. astronaut d. engineer

2. She did well in the exam. This means she ..... it. Longman

a. posted b. passed c. possessed d. praised

3. Don't make the same mistake again. "The same" is opposite in meaning to ..... Longman

a. different b. difficult c. suitable d. old

4. To refer to a person who works with science, we add the suffix .....

a. -able b. -ing c. -ist d. -ous

5. We can add the suffix ..... to the noun "champion" to give another noun.

a. -ship b. -ness c. -ism d. -ation

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Egypt had fewer people 50 years ..... (age).
- Noha ..... (work) as a space engineer for a year.
- My mum ..... (has played) tennis when she was young.
- They ..... (will come) on time, haven't they?
- ..... (Has) she hit your car by mistake last night?

Longman

Longman

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of an interesting job"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية الموضوع:

- What jobs do you know?
- What do you think the most interesting job?
- Which job do you like writing about?
- What's his / her job? What does he / she do?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The most interesting job for me is .....
- He / She works as .....
- I want to write about .....
- He / She enjoys .....



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 104-105

## Key Vocabulary

biography	سيرة ذاتية	pandemic	جائحة
creative	مبدع	bubble	فقاعة طبية (مكان معزول)
app (application)	تطبيق	organiser	منظم
quarter finals	ربع النهائيات	spectators	المشاهدون / الجمهور
finals	النهائيات	create (d)	يبدع / ينشئ / يخلق
stadium	استاد	score (d)	يسجل هدف
medical team	فريق طبي	test (ed)	يختبر - يفحص
coronavirus	فيروس كورونا	volunteer (ed) (n)	ينطوع - منطوع

## Vocabulary

poem	قصيدة شعر	tour	جولة سياحية
concert	حفل موسيقى	twice	مرتين
dream	حلم	success	نجاح
company	صحبة / رفاق	medal	ميدالية
the Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	viewer	مشاهد
safe	آمن	stay (ed)	يقيم - يبقى
health centre	مركز صحي		

## Short form of words

application = app	تطبيق (على الهاتف)	mathematics = maths	الرياضيات
television = TV	تلفاز (تليفزيون)	photograph = photo	صورة فوتوغرافية
aeroplane = plane	طائرة		

## Definitions

app (application)	تطبيق	software <sup>(1)</sup> you can use on your computer or phone	البرنامج حاسب
competition	مسابقة	an event in which people try to be the best at something	
create	يبدع / ينشئ / يخلق	to make something new	
creative	مبدع / خلاق	good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something	

## Lessons 3 & 4

biography	سيرة ذاتية	a book or text about someone's life	٢- طواريء
bubble	فقاعة طبية (مكان معزول)	a group of people who can meet during a health emergency	٣- ينظم
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة كورونا	the cause of the health emergency which began in 2019, when many people became ill around the world	٤- يشارك
organiser	منظم	someone who organises or plans an event	
spectator	مشاهد / متفرج	someone who watches a sport or an event	
quarter finals	ربع النهائيات	the part of a competition when there are only eight teams or people in it	
competitor	متسابق / متنافس	a person or team that takes part in a competition	

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / opposite المضاد
possible	ممكن	probable	impossible مستحيل
create	يبدع / ينشئ	make	destroy يدمر
nervous	متوتر	anxious / worried	calm هادئ
big	كبير	large	small صغير
champion	بطل	winner	loser خاسر
clean	ينظف	wash	pollute يلوث
incredible	رائع / لا يصدق	really good / fantastic	credible يمكن تصديقه
nobody	لا أحد	no one	everyone كل واحد / الجميع

## Important Synonyms

contest	منافسة / مسابقة / تنافس	competition	مسابقة / منافسة
competitor	منافس	player	لاعب
staff	طاقم العمل	workers	العاملين
tournament	دورة رياضية	sports event	حدث رياضي

## Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
in-	تضع عكس المعنى	incredible لا يصدق
im-	تضع عكس المعنى	impossible مستحيل
-er	تكون اسم الفاعل	organiser / cleaner منظم / منظف
-or	تكون اسم الفاعل	viewer مشاهد
-or	تكون اسم الفاعل	spectator / competitor مشاهد / متسابق
-ive	تحويل الفعل إلى الصفة	creative مبدع



## Expressions & Prepositions

feel nervous	يشعر بتوتر	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة / بمهمة
create an app	ينشئ تطبيق	score a goal	يسجل هدف
play in a concert	يعزف في حفل موسيقي	have a test for.....	يقوم بعمل فحص ل.....
have a contest	لديه مسابقة	ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة
have lunch	يتناول الغداء	on TV	في التلفاز
have a tour	يذهب في جولة سياحية	on the Nile	في النيل
make.... safe	يجعل.... آمناً	by night	بحلول الليل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	Past simple	Past Participle
<b>Present</b>		
go	went	gone
hold	held	held
make	made	made

## Language Notes

### 1 spectators / viewers / audience

#### • spectators

الجمهور (من يشاهدون مباراة / حدث)

Ex. There weren't any spectators in the stadium because of coronavirus pandemic.

#### • audience

الحضور أو الجمهور (بالمسرح / داخل دار السينما)

Ex. The audience was/were silent during the play.

#### • viewers

المشاهدون (من يشاهد شيء بالتلفزيون)

Ex. Many viewers watched the programme on TV.

### 2 go (with activities)

- تستخدم go مع الأنشطة والرياضيات التي تنتهي بـ (-ing):

go	{	travelling	يسافر	shopping	يذهب للتسوق
		swimming	يذهب للسباحة	fishing	يذهب للصيد

Ex. We can go travelling together, it will be fun.

### 3 reach

يَبْلُغُ / يتوصل إلى شيء (نهائيات / قرار / اتفاق / حل وسط... إلخ)

Ex. The Egyptian team did an excellent job and reached the quarter finals.

## 4 biography / autobiography

### • biography

سيرة ذاتية  
(يكتبها شخص عن آخر)

Ex. In this book, the writer writes a biography about Shakespeare.

### • autobiography

سيرة ذاتية  
(يكتبها شخص عن نفسه)

Ex. You can read the autobiography of Taha Hussein in his book "Al Ayam".

## Check on Language Notes

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- About 40,000 ..... attended the match in Cairo Stadium.  
a. spectators b. tournaments c. finals d. organisers
- When you visit Cairo, you can go ..... at Khan El Khalili.  
a. shops b. shop c. the shopping d. shopping
- She's too young to ..... such a decision.  
a. arrive b. reach c. reach to d. arrive at
- I'm reading a / an ..... of Charles Dickens written by a French author.  
a. autobiography b. photography c. biography d. biology

## Reading

SB page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص



My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems<sup>(1)</sup>. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote! She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be creative<sup>(2)</sup>. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts<sup>(3)</sup> already. She felt very nervous<sup>(4)</sup> but she was amazing<sup>(5)</sup>. Aya would like to volunteer<sup>(6)</sup> to teach writing and music to children one day<sup>(7)</sup>. Her other dream<sup>(8)</sup> is to create an app<sup>(9)</sup> to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit! Maybe<sup>(10)</sup> we can go travelling together.

- 1- قصائد شعر
- 2- مبدع
- 3- حفلات موسيقية
- 4- متوتر
- 5- مذهل
- 6- يتطوع
- 7- يوماً ما
- 8- حلم
- 9- تنشيء تطبيق
- 10- ربما

SB Page (50)

## IN THE BUBBLE

Today, the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship<sup>(1)</sup> in Egypt finished. It has been the biggest handball tournament<sup>(2)</sup> ever. The Egyptian team did an excellent job<sup>(3)</sup> and reached the quarter\* finals<sup>(4)</sup> (the last eight). There were over 600 competitors<sup>(5)</sup> from 32 countries.



- 1- بطولة العالم
- 2- لكرة اليد للرجال
- 3- دورة رياضية
- 4- مهمة ممتازة
- 5- ربع النهائيات
- 6- متسابقون



They have played over 100 games and scored<sup>(1)</sup> more than 5,500 goals! All of this was during the coronavirus pandemic<sup>(2)</sup>. Many people said it wasn't possible, but the contest<sup>(3)</sup> in Egypt has been fantastic<sup>(4)</sup>.

The medical team<sup>(5)</sup> have worked for months to make the tournament safe<sup>(6)</sup>. Firstly, there haven't been any spectators<sup>(7)</sup>. Also, the players and staff<sup>(8)</sup> have had tests<sup>(9)</sup> for coronavirus every 48 hours. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside this "bubble"<sup>(10)</sup>. These hotels all have a health centre<sup>(11)</sup> and every team has had a doctor to work with them. Lots of cleaners<sup>(12)</sup> have worked day and night<sup>(13)</sup> to clean the stadiums<sup>(14)</sup> and the hotels and make them safe.

The medical team were from the Ministry of Health<sup>(20)</sup> and the Ministry of Youth and Sports<sup>(21)</sup>. They have done such an incredible<sup>(22)</sup> job that the organisers<sup>(23)</sup> of the 2021 Olympics<sup>(24)</sup> in Japan have asked them for their advice. What an amazing achievement<sup>(25)</sup>!



\*quarter  
\*staff

ينطق الجزء الملون (uar) مثل نطق (our) في كلمة (four)  
ينطق حرف (a) هنا مثل نطقه في كلمة (part) أو نطقه في كلمة (cat)

### Reading Skill

1. The passage is mainly about .....  
a. a medical team b. a handball tournament c. the Ministry of Health d. coronavirus  
2. Infer from the text who made the tournament safe.  
3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence.

### Writing Skill

1. The Egyptian handball team did an excellent job.  
2. The players and staff have had tests for coronavirus.  
3. They stayed inside the bubble.  
4. The medical team did an amazing achievement.

قام الفريق المصري لكرة اليد بمهمة ممتازة.  
خضع اللاعبون وفريق العمل للاختبارات على فيروس كورونا.  
ظلوا داخل الفقاعة الطبية (العزل الطبي).  
قام الفريق الطبي بإنجاز عظيم.

3. The medical team have done incredible job.  
2. The medical team.  
1. b. a handball tournament.

WB Page (105)

Egypt has already won the Africa Cup of Nations<sup>(1)</sup> seven times. That is a fantastic (an incredible) achievement! In 2023, the contest (tournament) will be in Ivory Coast<sup>(2)</sup>, who have already been winners

(champions)<sup>(3)</sup> twice before. The players (competitors) will be from 23 other countries and the games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium, in Abidjan, holds 60,000 people (spectators). The organisers are sure<sup>(4)</sup> that it will be a great success<sup>(5)</sup>.



- 1- كأس الأمم الأفريقية  
2- ساحل العاج  
3- أبطال  
4- متأكدون  
5- نجاح

## Audioscript

SB Page (49)

**Interviewer** : So Haytham, you are only 18 years old and you have already created<sup>(1)</sup> an app<sup>(2)</sup>, is that right?

**Haytham** : Yes! I created an app last year.

**Interviewer** : What does your app do?

**Haytham** : It's an app to help people organise<sup>(3)</sup> their schoolwork and homework. I needed all my work and timetables to be in the same place so I made it to help me! Then my friends liked it too, so I decided to let other people use it, too!

**Interviewer** : That sounds great! When can we use it?

**Haytham** : People have used it in a few schools so you can use it now.

**Interviewer** : Have you created any other apps yet?

**Haytham** : No, I haven't yet, but I have lots of ideas<sup>(4)</sup>!

**Interviewer** : Have you got a job at a big technology company yet?!

**Haytham** : No, not yet! I have already talked to some about my ideas but I haven't finished school yet and I want to go to university too.

- 1- ينكر/ينشئ  
2- تطبيق  
3- ينظم  
4- أفكار

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

1. A / An ..... is a book or text about someone's life. Longman  
a. archaeology b. geology c. biography d. geography  
2. A / An ..... is software you can use on your computer or phone. Longman  
a. competition b. biography c. bubble d. application  
3. A / An ..... is someone who watches a sport or an event. Longman  
a. spectator b. organiser c. quarter d. player  
4. A / An ..... is an event in which people try to be the best at something.  
a. bubble b. pandemic c. competition d. biography  
5. "....." means to make something new.  
a. Create b. Reach c. Score d. Volunteer  
6. A / An ..... is someone who organises or plans an event.  
a. spectator b. organiser c. competitor d. worker  
7. "....." means good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something.  
a. Active b. Negative c. Native d. Creative



### Synonyms & Antonyms

8. The synonym of the word "incredible" is .....  
 a. fantastic      b. terrible      c. dirty      d. nervous
9. The word "nervous" is similar in meaning to .....  
 a. dangerous      b. anxious      c. terrible      d. calm
10. The verb "clean" is the synonym of the verb .....  
 a. start      b. create      c. end      d. wash
11. The antonym of the word "nobody" is .....  
 a. on one      b. nothing      c. everyone      d. none
12. The antonym of the word "big" is .....  
 a. creative      b. large      c. fast      d. small
13. My dream is to create an app to help children learn better. "Create" here is like .....  
 a. make      b. visit      c. use      d. teach
14. I have just won the swimming competition. The word "competition" can be replaced by .....  
 a. list      b. contest      c. prize      d. medal
15. "....." is the opposite of the word "possible".  
 a. Impossible      b. Unpossible      c. Irpossible      d. Inpossible

### Prefixes & Suffixes

16. We use the prefix ..... to change the word "credible" into the opposite.  
 a. im-      b. bi-      c. in-      d. un-
17. The suffix "....." is added to the word "view" to get the noun for a person.  
 a. -er      b. -ment      c. -ive      d. -or
18. The suffix "....." to make the adjective of the verb "create"  
 a. -al      b. -ive      c. -ment      d. -er
19. The verb "organise" is turned into a noun by using the suffix .....  
 a. -ment      b. -al      c. -er      d. -or
20. We can add the prefix ..... to give the opposite of "possible".  
 a. un-      b. ir-      c. im-      d. dis-

### Guessing the meaning

21. She wrote a story about a famous writer. This means she wrote a/an .....  
 a. letter      b. biography      c. email      d. app.
22. A competition is a festival to find the best team or player in a sport. A competition here means a .....  
 a. show      b. concert      c. friendship      d. championship
23. During Coronavirus Pandemic, players are kept in a healthy place. This means they are kept in a .....  
 a. bubble      b. stadium      c. tournament      d. contest

## Language

### The present perfect tense with "yet" and "already"

بعد / حتى الآن yet

• تستخدم "yet" مع زمن المضارع التام في آخر الجملة المنفية:  
 Ex. She **hasn't been** to another country **yet**.

• تستخدم في نهاية السؤال:  
 Ex. **Has she learnt** a musical instrument **yet**?

بالفعل already

• تستخدم مع الجملة المثبتة في آخر الجملة أو قبل الفعل الاساسي للجملة بمعنى مسبقاً / قبل الوقت المتوقع:  
 Ex. She's **played** in two concerts **already**.

Ex. She **has already written** a book of stories.



١- يمكن أن نستخدم yet في آخر الجملة الاستفهامية للتعبير عن الضجر من التأخير في تنفيذ شيء ما:

Ex. **Haven't you finished** the cooking **yet**? I'm very hungry.

٢- يمكن استخدام already في الجملة الاستفهامية لتعبير عن دهشة المتكلم من سرعة تمام الحدث على غير المتوقع:

Ex. Have you finished the test **already**? **It's too early**.

Ex. **Amazing!** Have you **won** the first prize **already**?

## Exercises on Language

○ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

- I've ..... (ever) seen that film.
- He's already ..... (learn) three languages.
- I haven't finished my homework ..... (never).
- We've ..... (yet) eaten our lunch.
- He has ..... (yet) talked to some companies about his ideas.
- Haytham has created an app ..... (never).
- Haytham ..... (has created) any other apps yet.
- People in a few schools have ..... (already use) the app.
- Has Hassan ..... (since) talked to three schools about pollution?
- Nada ..... (came) to the party yet.

SB

SB

SB

SB

SB

SB

SB

SB

WB

القيومية 2023



# Longman Exercises

11. Don't worry, I have ..... (never) brought you the money you need.
12. Did you visit Taher in the hospital?  
-Yes, I ..... (already visit) him with all my friends.

# Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Sherif has ..... (ever) tried fish. He likes it.
14. Hany has already ..... (be) to Europe.
15. .... (Have) Salma cooked lunch yet?
16. Have you written that poem ..... (since)? How amazing.
17. .... (Has) you been to Paris yet?
18. He ..... (haven't) met the manager yet.
19. A: Have they arrived in Tanta ..... (since)? B: No, not yet.
20. I can't believe it. Have you finished ..... (ever)?
21. Our friends haven't reached their goals ..... (just).
22. Has she finished her homework ..... (never)?
23. We've ..... (since) designed the bridge, but we haven't finished it yet.
24. Dalia has bought her friend's birthday present ..... (yet).
25. A: Have the kids come back from school?  
B: No, not ..... (just).

# Speaking

## Talking about sports tournaments

التحدث عن الدورات (المسابقات) الرياضية

### Question

- What was the last sports tournament you watched in a stadium or on TV?  
ماذا كانت آخر دورة (مسابقات) رياضية شاهدتها في الاستاد أو في التلفاز؟
- Who won?  
من فاز؟
- Did you enjoy it? Why?  
هل استمتعت بها؟ لماذا؟

### Answer

- I watched the Africa Cup of Nations in Cameroon on TV.  
شاهدت بطولة كأس الأمم الأفريقية في الكامبيون في التلفاز.
- Senegal won.  
فازت بها السنغال.
- Yes, it was exciting when Egypt was in the final match.  
نعم، لقد كانت مثيرة عندما كانت مصر في المباراة النهائية.

# General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

## on Lessons 3 & 4

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mohab is asking Hany about his achievements.

- Mohab : What have you done already, Hany?
- Hany : ① .....
- Mohab : ② .....
- Hany : Yes, I have joined many school concerts for years.
- Mohab : Have you won any awards?
- Hany : Yes, I have. ③ .....
- Mohab : I play the guitar. I will receive an award next week.
- Hany : Really! ④ .....! Is this the first time you receive an award?
- Mohab : ⑤ .....
- Hany : Best wishes.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

biographies - tournaments - hasn't finished - players - has finished - friendship

Ramy likes writing ① ..... of sports persons. He wrote many about famous ② ..... and sports ③ ..... Now, he is writing about Mohamed Salah but he ④ ..... it yet.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "....." means a group of people who can meet during a health emergency.  
a. App b. Bubble c. Pandemic d. Final
2. The opposite of "champion" is .....  
a. winner b. organiser c. loser d. creative
3. "Staff" gives the meaning of ".....".  
a. workers b. competitors c. apps d. contests
4. The adjective "clean" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix .....  
a. -ist b. -or c. -ic d. -er
5. Brazil and Argentina met in the last match. They met in the .....  
a. final b. bottom c. top d. fun



#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I have ..... (ever) had lunch outside. I don't like eating out. (just).
- Manal hasn't washed up the dishes ..... (yet).
- Ahmed has ..... (yet) travelled to London. (ago)?
- You're still ill. Have you been seen by a doctor ..... (have visited) London since 2010.
- My father ..... (has gone) to London once.

#### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a tournament"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

## Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51-53 WB pages 106-108

### Key Vocabulary

scholarship

score

athlete

later

culture

منحة دراسية

مجموع النقاط / الأهداف

شخص رياضي

فيما بعد / لاحقاً

حضارة / ثقافة

news

recycle (d)

perform (ed)

respond (ed)

connect (ed)

استمع إلى المقريبات



أخبار

يعيد تدوير / تصنيع

يؤدي / يعزف

يستجيب

يصل / يوصل - يربط

### Vocabulary

Polish

teenager

international

swimmer

fact file

top university

problem solving

natural way

NASA

water pollution

بولندي

مراهق

دولي

سباح

ملف حقائق

أفضل جامعة

حل مشكلة

طريقة طبيعية

وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية (ناسا)

تلوث المياه

recycled water

dirty water

society

share (d)

believe (d)

repair (ed)

return (ed)

research (ed)

pretend (ed)

مياه مُعاد تدويرها

ماء غير صالح

مجتمع

يشارك

يصدق

يُصلح

يعود

يبحث

يتظاهر / يدعى

### Definitions

scholarship

منحة دراسية

money that a university or school gives to someone to pay for their education

### Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / opposite	المضاد
international	دولي	universal	national / local	محلي	
repair	يصلح	fix / mend	damage	يتلف	
respond	يستجيب	reply	question	يسأل	
dirty	متسخ	unclean	clean	نظيف	
connect	يربط / يصل	join	disconnect	يفصل	

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What tournament are you writing about?
- How many competitors were there?
- How many games did they play?
- How many goals did they score?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have watched ..... recently.
- There were ..... competitors.
- They played ..... games.
- They scored ..... goals.



# Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
re-	again تفيد معنى «مرة أخرى»	recycle بعيد تدوير
inter-	between تعطي معنى «بين»	international دولي
-al	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	natural / international طبيعي / دولي
-y	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	dirty قذر
-ish	nationality / language تفيد الجنسية أو تشير إلى اللغة	Polish بولندي
-ship	تكون اسم	scholarship منحة دراسية

## Expressions & Prepositions

do an exam	يؤدي امتحان	learn new skill	يتعلم مهارة جديدة
do well	يبلغ بلاء حسناً	come first	يأتي في المركز الأول
Well done!	أصنعت!	have a baby	يرزق بمولود
follow a dream	يتبع حلم	happy for	سعيد بشأن
respond to news	يستجيب للأخبار	connect .... with	يصل / يربط بـ
get 100%	يحصل على 100%	compare ...with	يقارن ...بـ
get a scholarship	يحصل على منحة دراسية	until now	حتى الآن

## Conjugations of

### Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bear	تلد	bore	born
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
break	يكسر	broke	broken
mean	يقصد	meant	meant
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

## Language Notes

### 1) news

• كلمة (news) تعامل معاملة المفرد ولا نضع قبلها أدوات نكرة a/an ويليهما فعل لفاعل مفرد: (v+s - is - was - does - has)  
Ex. The news that he told me was important.

### 2) good / well

• good (adj)

جيد (صفة)

Ex. They are good athletes.

• well (adv)

بطريقة جيدة (ظرف)

Ex. The players played very well.

### 3) hard / hardly

• hard (adj)

صعب / صلب / شاق (صفة)

Ex. It's hard to drive in bad weather.

• hard (adv)

بجد / بجدية / بقوة (ظرف)

Ex. The staff worked so hard in the company today.

• hardly (adv) = almost not

بالكاد / بصعوبة / تقريباً لا... (ظرف)

Ex. I can hardly read without my reading glasses.

### 4) connect / contact / communicate

• connect (ed)

يصل / يوصل

Ex. I try to connect with a university in the USA for a scholarship.

• contact (ed)

يتصل بـ «لا تتبع بحرف جر»

Ex. You can contact us by email.

• communicate (d)

يتواصل

Ex. Deaf people communicate with each other using sign language.

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The latest news ..... surprised me a lot.  
a. have                      b. are                      c. has                      d. were
- I worked hard and I did ..... in the last test.  
a. well                      b. good                      c. will                      d. bad
- He works ..... , so he is always successful.  
a. hardly                      b. hardship                      c. harden                      d. hard
- This application helps to ..... students with universities in the USA.  
a. tie                      b. connect                      c. communicate                      d. contact



# Audioscript

SB Page (51)

استمع إلى التوضيح


١- يخمن  
٢- يجتاز / ينجح  
٣- مجموع الدرجات

Malak : Hi Fareeda!

Fareeda : Hi Malak, guess<sup>(1)</sup> what? I just got the results of my music exam!

Malak : Yes? How did you do?

Fareeda : I passed<sup>(2)</sup>!

Malak : Of course you did! Well done! Great job!

Fareeda : But also, I got the highest score<sup>(3)</sup> in the class!

Malak : Wow, you did really well - what an amazing achievement!

Fareeda : I can't believe it, I was so nervous doing the exam.

Malak : I knew you would do well. I'm really happy for you! You worked really hard.

Fareeda : Thanks Malak.

Say it

correctly

- guess

لا ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة

SB Page (53)

Fares : Guess what? I have good news!

Mazen : What is it?

Fares : I have got a scholarship<sup>(1)</sup> to a university in Canada<sup>(2)</sup>!

Mazen : Well done<sup>(3)</sup>! That's incredible<sup>(4)</sup>!

Fares : Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play tennis and study hard.

Mazen : I'm really happy for you. You will play at an important tournament soon.

١- منحة دراسية  
٢- دولة كندا  
٣- أحسنت!  
٤- لا يصدق

WB Page (106)

Mother : You look happy, Nader.

Nader : I am! I've won a short story competition!

Mother : Well done! Was that a competition at your school?

Nader : No, it was a short story competition for everyone.

Mother : For everyone? What an amazing achievement. Didn't you win the school competition last year?

Nader : Yes, I came second<sup>(1)</sup> in the class, so I worked harder this year!

Mother : I knew you would do well<sup>(2)</sup>. You worked really hard.

Nader : Thanks. I'll get the award next week.

Mother : I'm really happy for you! I'll come and watch!

١- حصلت على المركز الثاني  
٢- أبلى بلاءً حسناً


# Reading

SB page (52)

Lessons 5 &amp; 6

## A biography about Nada Zaher

Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria, Egypt. As a child<sup>(1)</sup>, she played a lot of tennis. When she was a teenager<sup>(2)</sup>, she found out that she had a sports scholarship to go to Columbia University<sup>(3)</sup> in the USA. Then she went to the USA to study and play tennis. After university, she returned<sup>(4)</sup> to Egypt and decided to help more international athletes<sup>(5)</sup> to study in other countries.


١- ك طفلة  
٢- مرافقة  
٣- جامعة كولومبيا  
٤- عادت  
٥- رياضيون دوليون  
٦- يصل / يربط  
٧- أحلام

So, she started a company to connect<sup>(6)</sup> athletes with universities in the USA and helped them to find scholarships. Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow their dreams<sup>(7)</sup>.

Say it

correctly

\* athlete

١ تنطق الحروف (th) هنا كما تنطق في كلمة (think)

٢ وينطق المقطع (ete) مثل نطق كلمة (eat)

## Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة [الإجابة أسفل]

1. What's the text mainly about?

2. Infer from the text what she played as a child.

3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence.

عن ما يتحدث النص في الأساس؟  
استنتج من النص ماذا كانت تلعب أثناء الطفولة.  
لخص الفقرة الأخيرة في جملة.

## Writing Skill

[جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي]

1. Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria.

ولدت ندى زاهر في الاسكندرية.

2. When she was a teenager, she had a sports scholarship.

عندما كانت في سن المراهقة حصلت على منحة دراسية رياضية

3. She helped international athletes in Egypt.

ساعدت الرياضيين الدوليين في مصر.

3. Nada Zaher helped students to follow their dreams.

١- أبلى بلاءاً حسناً  
٢- أبلى بلاءاً حسناً

1. A biography about Nada Zaher.

Answers

WB Page (106)

## New Message

Hi,

I've got some good news. I've won an award! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for children. We play games with the children and read them stories. The nurses at the hospital decided to give my family an award for our work. We're getting it next week! Can you come and watch us get it?



Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great scientist. After she finished Preparatory School, she started at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths School (STEM)\* in Alexandria.

She then learnt more and more about science as well as how to look after the environment and Egypt's culture. When she was at school, she came first in Egypt in the NASA\*International Space Apps Challenge, a problem-solving<sup>(1)</sup> competition for scientists around the world.

Later, she worked on a school project<sup>(2)</sup>. She found a natural way<sup>(3)</sup> for villages to clean dirty water<sup>(4)</sup> and to recycle<sup>(5)</sup> used water.

The recycled water is used to help plants to grow<sup>(6)</sup>, and the project can also help to stop water pollution<sup>(7)</sup>. She sent her project to the Society for Science<sup>(8)</sup> in the USA. In 2021, her project won fourth<sup>(9)</sup> place in another international competition for science and engineering. Now, Fatma wants to do more things to help science.

- ١- حل مشكلة
- ٢- مشروع مدرسي
- ٣- طريقة طبيعية
- ٤- مياه غير صالحة
- ٥- يعيد تدوير
- ٦- ينمو
- ٧- تلوث المياه
- ٨- مجتمع العلوم
- ٩- الرابع



Say it correctly

-pollution

١ ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (flu) وليس كما ينطق في كلمة (unit)

\* STEM

\* NASA = The National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

مدرسة (ستيم) للعلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات  
الإدارة الوطنية للملاحة الجوية والفضاء (وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية) (ناسا)

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

1. A ..... is money that a university or school gives to someone to pay for their education.
- a. score      b. culture      c. scholarship      d. teenager

### Synonyms & Antonyms

2. The verb "repair" is similar in meaning to .....
- a. destroy      b. fix      c. damage      d. miss
3. The antonym of the adjective "dirty" is .....
- a. polluted      b. real      c. sad      d. clean
4. The synonym of the verb "connect" is .....
- a. join      b. disconnect      c. lose      d. respond
5. The word "international" is similar in meaning to .....
- a. real      b. national      c. scholar      d. universal

## Prefixes & Suffixes

6. The prefix "re-" in the verb "recycle" means to do something .....
- a. badly      b. again      c. well      d. four times
7. The suffix ..... turns the word "nature" into an adjective.
- a. -ness      b. -ship      c. -al      d. -ition
8. The prefix "inter-" in the word "international" means .....
- a. between      b. on      c. over      d. by
9. We add the suffix ..... to the word "dirt" to turn it into an adjective.
- a. -ly      b. -y      c. -al      d. -er
10. We can add the suffix "....." to the noun "scholar".
- a. -ness      b. -ish      c. -ship      d. -ous

## Guessing the meaning

11. She did well in the concert. This means she ..... well.
- a. performed      b. connected      c. guessed      d. recycled
12. Samya will study at Cairo University without paying any money. This means she got a .....
- a. problem      b. score      c. scholarship      d. research
13. We should find ways to clean dirty water and use it again. This means we should ..... water.
- a. research      b. recycle      c. believe      d. pollute

## Speaking

### Responding to good news

الاستجابة للأخبار السارة

#### The news

- 1- Our national team won the finals.  
لقد فاز فريقنا القومي في النهائيات.
- 2- I've got a scholarship at Colombia University.  
لقد حصلت على منحة دراسية بجامعة كولومبيا.
- 3- I have passed my exams.  
لقد اجتزت امتحاناتي.

#### Response

- Well done! Great news!  
عمل جيد. ياله من خبر رائع!
- That's great news! I'm really happy for you.  
ياله من خبر سار! أنني سعيد من أجلك.
- Great! You've worked very hard.  
حسنًا! لقد اجتهدت في عملك.



## General Exercises

## on Lessons 5 &amp; 6



## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Fares is telling Mazen good news.

Fares : Guess what? I have good news.

Mazen : 1. ....?

Fares : I have got a scholarship to a university in Canada!

Mazen : 2. ....! That's incredible.

Fares : Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play tennis and study hard.

Mazen : 3. .... Will you play at an important tournament soon?

Fares : 4. ....

Mazen : Best wishes! 5. ....?

Fares : Yes, I'm ready.

Mazen : Well done!

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

student - has worked - scholarship - have worked - scientist - company

Shady is a great 1. .... He studies science at Cairo University. He

2. .... hard till he got a 3. .... to study at a famous American

University. He wishes he would be a great 4. .... in the future.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word ..... is similar in meaning to respond.

- a. question      b. reply      c. ask      d. stop

2. The opposite of "connect" is .....

- a. unconnect      b. inconnect      c. disconnect      d. deconnect

3. She passed all her exams. This means that she did ..... in the exams.

- a. well      b. good      c. bad      d. badly

4. The red team won 10-1. This means that the red team ..... a lot of goals.

- a. saved      b. scored      c. responded      d. did

5. This person competes in sports competitions. This means he is a / an .....

- a. athlete      b. teenager      c. surgeon      d. score

## 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a successful athlete (Nada Zaher)"

مختار عنه في أحر الوحدة

## Lessons 5 &amp; 6

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Who are you going to write about?

- What does he / she do?

- When did he / she play tennis?

- Where was he / she born?

- Where did he / she study?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I am going to write about .....

- He / She played .....

- He / She went to the USA .....

- He / She was born in .....

- He / She won a scholarship.....



## Key Vocabulary

championship بطولة	campaigner	مناضل	spectators المشاهدين / الجمهور
equipment معدات (الاسم لا يعد)	volunteer	متطوع	يعيد تدوير / تصنيع
coronavirus فيروس كورونا	achievement	إنجاز	يبدع / ينشيء / يخلق
competition مسابقة - منافسة	organiser	منظم	يسجل هدف
bubble فقاعة طبية	speech	خطاب / حديث	يحقق / ينجز
blind كفيف (أعمى)	goal	هدف	يؤدي / يعزف
athlete شخص رياضي	news	أخبار	يستجيب
tournament دورة مباريات	biography	سيرة ذاتية	يختبر - يفحص
quarter finals ربع النهائي	creative	مبدع	يدخل (مسابقة)
finals النهائي	app (application)	تطبيق	يصل / يوصل - يربط
scholarship منحة دراسية	culture	حضارة / ثقافة	يتحدى - تحدى
stadium استاد	later	فيما بعد / لاحقاً	ينتطوع - متطوع
medical team فريق طبي	score	مجموع النقاط / الأهداف	award (ed) (n)
pandemic جائحة	role model	قدوة (نموذج يحتذى به)	يمنح جائزة - جائزة (رسمية)
space technology تكنولوجيا الفضاء	space engineering	هندسة الفضاء	hyperloop
			هايبربول (نظام نقل سريع)

## Jobs

business person رجل / سيدة أعمال	space scientist عالم فضاء
sports champion بطل رياضي	space engineer مهندس فضاء
astronaut رائد فضاء	computer programmer مبرمج كمبيوتر
mathematician متخصص / عالم في الرياضيات	engineer مهندس
musician موسيقي	manager مدير
artist فنان - رسام	



## Language

Review

## The present perfect with "yet" and "already"

بعد / حتى الآن yet

• تستخدم "yet" مع زمن المضارع التام في آخر الجملة المنفية:

Ex. I haven't completed my study yet.

Ex. Has your father arrived from London yet?

• تستخدم في نهاية السؤال:

بالمفع already

• تستخدم مع الجملة المثبتة في آخر الجملة أو قبل الفعل الأساسي للجملة بمعنى مسبقاً / قبل الوقت المتوقع:

Ex. We've entered three competitions already.

Ex. I have already achieved my goal.

## Speaking

## 1) Asking and answering questions about challenges

السؤال والاجابة عن التحديات

## Question

## Answer

1- Which university did he / she go to?

- He / She went to.....University.

2- What competition did he / she enter?

- He / She entered a ..... competition.

## 2) Talking about sports tournaments

التحدث عن الدورات الرياضية

## Question

## Answer

- What was the last sports tournament you watched in a stadium or on TV?

- I watched the Africa Cup of Nations in Cameroon on TV.

- Who won?

- Senegal won.

- Did you enjoy it? Why?

- Yes, it was exciting when Egypt was in the final match.

## 3) Responding to good news

الاستجابة للأخبار السارة

نعبر عن سعادتنا بالأخبار السارة فنقول:

- Well done! Great news!

- That's great news!

- I'm really happy for you.

- Great!

- That's amazing!

- What an amazing achievement!



# General Exercises on Unit 5

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ayman is talking to Medhat about an interesting match he has seen recently.

Ayman : Hi Medhat! Did you watch yesterday's match?

Medhat : ① .....

Ayman : You missed a wonderful match. Our national team won the match.

Medhat : ② ..... What team were they playing against?

Ayman : They were playing against Zambia.

Medhat : ③ .....

Ayman : Our team scored four goals for nothing.

Medhat : ④ .....

Ayman : Yes. There were many spectators there. You can watch it on YouTube.

Medhat : ⑤ .....

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 scored - has got - goals - gets - prize - athlete

Yesterday, Mohamed Salah ① ..... two ② ..... His team won the match, and they'll play the final next week. He ③ ..... "Man of the match" and won a big ④ .....

2 made - done - since - for - civilization - equinox



The ancient scientists were keen on the study of the universe. Space has interested the Egyptians ① ..... thousands of years. They were the first ② ..... to study the stars and the planets. They have ③ ..... some important discoveries. For example, they first discovered the ④ ..... , which happens in March and September every year.

3 equipment - had been - campaigner - campaign - article - has been

Longman

I like reading very much. I have read a/an ① ..... about Magdy Abdel Sayed. He is a/an ② ..... for people who are disabled. He ③ ..... disabled all his life. It wasn't easy for his family to find a school with the proper ④ ..... for him, where he proved to be an excellent student.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/ An ..... is an event in which people try to be the best at something.  
a. application      b. competition      c. artist      d. spectator
2. A/ An ..... is a software you can use on your computer or phone.  
a. scholarship      b. mathematician      c. musician      d. application
3. The synonym of the verb "begin" is .....  
a. start      b. connect      c. stop      d. finish
4. The noun "competition" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. success      b. study      c. contest      d. award
5. The suffix "-ish" in the word "Polish" refers to the .....  
a. person      b. nationality      c. job      d. place
6. When my teacher asked me, I answered quickly. This means I ..... fast.  
a. recycled      b. connected      c. responded      d. played
7. He scored many goals in the match. This means that he is a good .....  
a. team      b. athlete      c. scholar      d. artist

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (travel) to my grandmother last week.
2. We have never ..... (meet) a foreigner before.
3. I ..... (not visit) Alexandria since I was very young.
4. How long have Ola and Ahmed ..... (be) married?
5. Mona has just ..... (clean) the house.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of an international competition"

امتحان عنه في آخر الوحدة

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What is the competition's name?      - How long does it take?
- Where is it?
- Do you know all the athletes participating in it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I am going to write about a competition which is called.....
- It is held in.....
- I know most of the athletes .....





### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amr and Zeyad are talking about a handball match.

Amr : What are you doing?

Zeyad : ① ..... It's Egypt against Chile.

Amr : ② ..... ?

Zeyad : Yes, they have scored 25 goals so far.

Amr : ③ ..... !

Zeyad : I think so. They will win the match, ours is a good team.

### 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask a friend what challenge he / she has had in his / her life.

2. You're asked about a great thing you have just done.

3. Your sister asks you if you have done the shopping. You didn't.

4. A friend asks you about your role model.

5. Your younger brother has got a good job.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Vocabulary

#### SB & WB Exercises

- Gamal is the ..... of the company.  
a. business b. champion c. musician d. manager
- Samar wants to be a/ an ..... She wants to explore the space.  
a. artist b. astronaut c. mathematician d. musician
- Nahla's ..... is to pass all her exams with top marks!  
a. challenge b. change c. charge d. check
- Schools should have ..... for disabled people.  
a. crosswords b. equipment c. engineers d. speeches

### Al Azhar Exercises

- Samar travelled to the USA to receive her .....  
a. champion b. review c. word d. award
- Gamal started working ..... the company three years ago.  
a. on b. for c. to d. about
- A space ..... company had a competition and Samar entered it.  
a. technology b. championship c. tournament d. award
- Aya is a very ..... person.  
a. expensive b. possible c. final d. creative
- "App" is a short form of .....  
a. apple b. bubble c. application d. apply
- ..... means to make something new.  
a. Create b. Translate c. Achieve d. Score
- Aya wants to ..... to work with children.  
a. reach b. score c. volunteer d. bear
- "Maths" is a short form of .....  
a. mothers b. mathematics c. machines d. mathematicians
- ..... is a similar word to "winners".  
a. Champions b. Competitors c. Players d. Staff
- There were 32 teams in the .....  
a. staff b. app c. biography d. contest
- Nobody could watch the handball matches at the .....  
a. bubbles b. spectators c. stadiums d. apps

#### Longman Exercises

- The 2021 World Men's Handball ..... was held successfully in Egypt.  
a. Championship b. Champion c. Challenge d. Charge
- Most students try hard to improve their language .....  
a. scales b. skills c. skulls d. skates
- It isn't possible to reach the station on time; it's ..... because you're too late.  
a. dishonest b. unimportant c. impossible d. incorrect
- The scientist won a/an ..... for his contributions to helping humanity.  
a. present b. award c. money d. ward
- Our country has made many great ..... in different fields.  
a. achievers b. achievement c. achieves d. achievements
- I can't believe what has happened; it's .....  
a. possible b. believable c. incredible d. credible
- I don't know who ..... the goal in the final match yesterday.  
a. registered b. scored c. remembered d. forgot



54. Haven't you done your exams?   
 a. since b. yet c. just d. ago
55. Doha did well in the chess competition.   
 a. ago b. since c. yesterday d. already
56. .... you been to Paris yet?   
 a. Has b. Have c. Does d. Is

#### 4 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your role model"

بنى سوف 2023  
محب عنه في آخر الوحدة

- Where do you live?
- What does your city look like?
- What activities do you do in your city?

- I live in .....
- My city is .....
- I can do many things in my city such as .....

## Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

Writing Skills

### 1- A review of an interesting job

(Lessons 1 &amp; 2)

We see many people with different jobs around us. I want to write about an interesting job I like. It's my father's job. He is a teacher of English. He always says that his job is very interesting. He enjoys being with his students. They all love him so much. They say he is an excellent teacher. He has been a teacher for fifteen years. I'd like to be a teacher like him. He is my role model.

### 2- A review of a tournament

(Lessons 3 &amp; 4)

I'm going to write about a tournament. It was the Africa Cup of Nations of handball. There were twenty four teams. The matches were so great. The players played 8 games. They scored 5548 goals, that is a big score. The players were friendly to each other. Finally, Egypt won the tournament. The last match was against Angola. Our team played very well. The tournament was so exciting.

### 3- A biography of a successful athlete (Nada Zaher)

(Lessons 5 &amp; 6)

Nada Zaher is a great Egyptian tennis player. She was born in Alexandria. When she was very young, she won a sports scholarship. It was at Columbia University in the USA. When she came back home. She helped international athletes to study in other countries. Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow their dreams.

### 4- A review of an international competition

(General Exercises)

The Africa Cup of Nations was held in Cameroon. It took about three weeks. Our national team took part in it, and the players were very serious. They did well in the games. Everyone wished they would win the competition. Our team reached the final. We faced Senegal at the final match. Unfortunately, we lost by the penalty kicks.

### 5- My role model

(Al Azhar)

Fatma EI-Banna is my role model. She was born in Alexandria in 2003. She loved science. She dreamed to be a scientist. She started her study at (STEM) in Alexandria. Now she is doing researches on the environment and culture.

### 6- A biography of a famous campaigner

(Magdy Abdel Sayed)

(Test)

Magdy Abdel Sayed is an Egyptian campaigner. He is 29 years old. He studied at the American University in Cairo. He was born with a disability. He helps disabled people in the Egyptian society. However, he works hard to achieve his goals in life. He won the Cambridge Award in 2008. He can do anything he wants in life. We are all proud of him. Youth should take him as a role model. They should follow their dreams and try hard to achieve them.





### A Language Functions

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue

Nader is telling his mother good news.

**Mother**: You look happy, Nader,

**Nader**: I am! ① .....

**Mother**: Well done! What was that competition about?

**Nader**: ② .....

**Mother**: ③ .....?

**Nader**: Yes, I came second in class, so I worked harder this year!

**Mother**: I'm really happy for you. ④ .....?

**Nader**: I'll get the award next week.

**Mother**: I'll come and watch!

**Nader**: ⑤ .....

### B Reading Comprehension

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

tournament - musicians - yet - already - performed - competition

A great music ① ..... started in our university last week. Famous artists and ② ..... attended to choose the best performers. Three of my friends

③ ..... well and we all admired them. The competition hasn't ended

④ .....

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Marie Curie was born in Warsaw 1867, Poland. She was taught in Warsaw high school. In 1891, she moved to Paris where she studied physics at the Sorbonne University. She received her degree in science in 1893. Two years later, she married the French chemist Piere Curie. Marie Curie needed money very much so she had to teach physics at a secondary school for girls.

In 1903, she received the Nobel Prize for physics. Although her life was not long, she achieved many things in a very short time. She did many experiments and got many degrees and prizes in science. Her husband was also a great scientist who got many degrees in science and had many prizes. They were both very great scientists who served science and added many things to the world.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
a. Poland    b. Warsaw    c. Marie Curie    d. Sorbonne University
- The underlined word "her" refers to .....  
a. Marie    b. Marie's husband    c. Marie's country    d. Marie's family
- Marie studied physics in .....  
a. German    b. London    c. Poland    d. Paris

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- Where was Marie Curie born?  
.....
- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.  
.....
- Why did Marie work in a secondary school?  
.....

### C Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A / An ..... is someone who is good at art.  
a. scientist    b. artist    c. campaigner    d. award
- A ..... is a person or team that takes part in a competition.  
a. final    b. bubble    c. competitor    d. spectator
- The word "different" is similar in meaning to .....  
a. major    b. similar    c. various    d. important
- The noun "wood" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix .....  
a. -en    b. -ful    c. -ly    d. -ion
- Our team got the most goals in the tournament. This means it got the best .....  
a. score    b. number    c. athlete    d. culture
- Tourists can enjoy Egypt's old and modern art. This means it has got great .....  
a. future    b. culture    c. picture    d. texture



5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Gamila has already ..... (clean) the floor of her room.
- Have you ..... (get) your university degree yet?
- I ..... (do) my homework an hour ago.
- ..... (Have) you go to the concert in the Opera House yesterday? (yet).
- How wonderful! You have repaired the car alone .....

### Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a famous campaigner ( Magdy Abdel Sayed)"

امحاض عنه قبل الاجتياز

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Who are you going to write about?
- Where did this person study?
- What does this campaigner do?
- What awards did he/ she win?
- What should youth do?

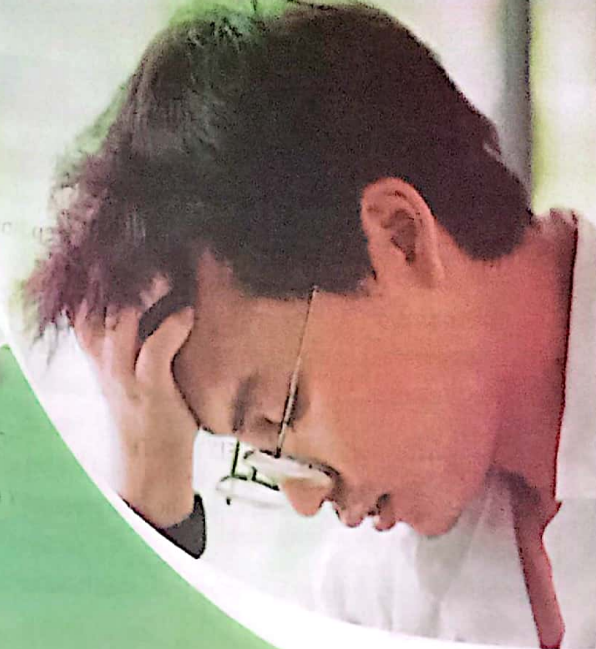
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I am going to write about .....
- He/ She studied at .....
- He/ She does great effort to .....
- He/ She won an award from .....
- Youth should follow .....

## New Hello!

# 6 UNIT

## What's wrong?



### Objectives

#### Reading:

An online problem page; a blog about a problem; a news article about mindfulness; a case study about a problem

#### Writing:

A paragraph about ways to relax; an email suggesting how to help a friend; a poster helping people with mental health issues

#### Listening:

A conversation about teenage

problems; a discussion about mindfulness; people talking about and responding to problems

#### Speaking:

Discussing teenage worries; showing that you are listening; suggesting solutions to problems

#### Language:

had to / didn't have to, was / wasn't able to, could / couldn't

#### Life Skills:

Empathy





## Key Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	positive	إيجابي
teenager = teen	مراهق	negative	سلبي
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	upset	منزعج / متضايق
social life	الحياة الاجتماعية	mental health	الصحة العقلية / النفسية
school work	أعمال مدرسية	billion	مليار ( ألف مليون )
cyberbullying	التنمر الإلكتروني	secret	سر
skills	مهارات	understanding	فهمهم
abilities	قدرات	similar interests	اهتمامات متشابهة
appearance	المظهر	lonely	شاعر بالوحدة
anxious	قلق / متوتر	support (ed)	بدعم
embarrassed	مُحرج	report (ed) (n)	يبلغ عن / يحذر عن أن - تقرير

## Vocabulary

height	ارتفاع	PE (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية
unkind	غير لطيف	behaviour	سلوك / تصرف
text message	رسالة نصية	sort	نوع
common	شائع / منتشر	unsure	غير متأكد
daily life	الحياة اليومية	experience (d)	يخوض تجربة
importance	أهمية	fail (ed)	يفشل
teen problems	مشكلات المراهقة	disappoint (ed)	يُحبط
art club	نادي للرسم	offer (ed) (n)	يقدم / يعرض - عرض
situation	موقف	look (ed)	يبدو
completely	تمامًا	study (n) / (ied)	دراسة / يدرس
scary	مخيف		

## Definitions

achievement	إنجاز	something important that you have done
anxious	قلق	worried that something bad might happen
appearance	المظهر	the way that someone or something looks
billion	مليار	a thousand million

## cyberbullying

التنمر عبر الإنترنت

when you say unkind or cruel<sup>(1)</sup> things about someone online

١- قاسي  
٢- غير مستريح  
٣- عقل

## embarrassed

مُحرج

feeling uncomfortable<sup>(2)</sup> when people are watching you or after they have seen you do something that you think is wrong or not very good

## mental health

الصحة العقلية / النفسية

the health of your mind<sup>(3)</sup>; how happy you are

## positive

إيجابي

seeing only good things

## negative

سلبي

seeing only bad things

## secret

سر

something that you do not want other people to know

## social life

الحياة الاجتماعية

the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people

## support

بدعم

help and encourage someone

## upset

منزعج

unhappy because something bad has happened

## lonely

شاعر بالوحدة

unhappy because you are not with other people  
- you feel you have no friends with you

## understanding

فُتفهم

showing that you understand a person's situation

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
anxious	قلق	nervous		calm	هادئ
embarrassed	مُحرج	uncomfortable		confident	واثق
positive	إيجابي	hopeful		negative	سلبي
upset	منزعج / متضايق	worried		happy	سعيد
support	بدعم	encourage		discourage	يحبط
terrible	فظيع	awful		pleasant	سار
common	شائع	popular / usual		uncommon	غير شائع
similar	مشابه	alike		different	مختلف
ability	قدرة	cleverness		inability	عدم قدرة



## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
cyber-	internet متعلق بالانترنت	cyberbullying التنمر الإلكتروني
un-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	unkind / unhappy / unsure قاسي / غير سعيد / غير متأكد
-ance	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	appearance مظهر
-ment		achievement إنجاز
-al		social اجتماعي
-ive	adjective تكون الصفة	positive / negative إيجابي / سلبي
-ous		anxious متوتر
-ed		embarrassed مُحرج
-ly	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	scarily مخيف
-ing		understanding مُتفهم
-er	person تكون اسم الفاعل	teenager مراهق
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	completely تمامًا

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

What's wrong?	ماذا بك؟	worry about يقلق بشأن
For me, ....	بالنسبة لي	think about / of يفكر في
get anxious about	يقلق بشأن	embarrassed about مُحرج بشأن
share experiences	يتشارك التجارب	look after يعتني بـ
in a positive way	بطريقة إيجابية	unhappy with ذريع بشأن
Nobody knows	لا أحد يعرف	help ....with يساعد.... في
finish school	ينهي الدراسة	different from / to مختلف عن
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	a long way from بعيد جداً عن
keep a secret	يحفظ السر	belong to ينتمي لـ / يخص
have a haircut	يقص شعره	laugh at يسخر من
do well / badly	يبدى بلاءً حسناً / سيئاً	On the other hand,... من الناحية الأخرى

## Conjugations of

## Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spread	ينتشر / ينتشر	spread	spread
show	يعرض / يبين	showed	shown
spend	ينفق / يقضي	spent	spent
keep	يحفظ / يحفظ	kept	kept

## Language Notes

## 1 feel (felt / felt) + adj.

• feel bad يشعر بالأسى / يشعر بالسوء / بالحزن / بوعكة صحية

• feel upset يشعر بالضيق

• feel anxious يشعر بالقلق

• feel embarrassed يشعر بالحرج

Ex. I felt upset when I read the bad comments on my post.

Ex. Salem asked me for some money and I felt embarrassed because I didn't have any.

## 2 spend (spent / spent) / waste (d)

- يستخدم الفعل (spend) مع الوقت بمعنى (يقضي وقت لفعل شيء معين).

- يستخدم الفعل (waste) مع الوقت بمعنى (يهدر / يضيع الوقت).

spend / waste + time + V-ing.

Ex. I spend lots of time playing video games.

Ex. It's bad to waste your time on social media.

- يستخدم الفعل (spend) مع المال بمعنى (ينفق مال).

- يستخدم الفعل (waste) مع المال بمعنى (يهدر / يضيع المال).

spend / waste + money + (on) + V-ing / noun

Ex. Ali spends much money on (buying) sports equipment.

Ex. Don't waste your money on (buying) silly things or you'll feel upset.

## 3 a day = daily = every day

- تأتي الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة بمعنى (يوميًا):

Ex. He is paid 100 pounds a day / daily / every day.

- تأتي كلمة (daily) كصفة بمعنى (يومي) أو ظرف بمعنى (يوميًا).

Ex. I always check my daily mail. (يومي)

Ex. I check my mail daily. (يوميًا)

## 4 encourage

يشجع .... أن .... encourage + obj. + to + Inf.

Ex. The teachers at our school encourage us to do activities.



## Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nawal ..... a lot of time doing useful things on the internet.  
a. spends      b. stands      c. wastes      d. says
2. I ..... anxious waiting to hear about my exam results.  
a. fall      b. failed      c. felt      d. filled
3. I have a shower ..... in summer.  
a. days      b. daily      c. day      d. in day
4. My dad always encourages me ..... sports.  
a. doing      b. do      c. to doing      d. to do

## Audioscript

SB Page (55)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Hisham:** I agree that most of these are common<sup>(1)</sup> problems for teenagers<sup>(2)</sup>. Most of us aren't completely<sup>(3)</sup> happy with our appearance<sup>(4)</sup>. I'm embarrassed<sup>(5)</sup> about being so tall, for example.

**Kamal:** You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height<sup>(6)</sup> is a positive<sup>(7)</sup> thing! For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious<sup>(8)</sup> about them.

**Hisham:** I guess we're all good at different things, and not so good at others. I'm not bad at art or music, but I'm terrible at sports. I always feel that everyone is laughing at<sup>(9)</sup> me in PE.

**Kamal:** Cyberbullying<sup>(10)</sup> is a problem, too. I'm glad I haven't experienced<sup>(11)</sup> it.

**Hisham:** Yes, that is really scary<sup>(12)</sup>. For a few months, one of my sister's friends got unkind text messages from someone at her school. It made her feel really upset<sup>(13)</sup>.

**Kamal:** What did she do?

**Hisham:** She told a teacher, and the school spoke to all the students about how it could hurt people. Then it stopped.

**Kamal:** It's good that she talked to someone about it.

**Hisham:** That's right.

Say it correctly

في هذه الكلمة ينطق صوت [k] بعد حرف [n] ويليه الصوت [sh] قبل حرف [s] • anxious



- ١- شائع  
٢- المراهقون  
٣- تمامًا  
٤- المظهر  
٥- مخرج  
٦- الطول  
٧- إيجابي  
٨- قلق جداً  
٩- يسخر من  
١٠- التنمر عبر الإنترنت  
١١- يجرب  
١٢- مخيف  
١٣- ملزعج

## Reading

SB page (55)

Today, nearly four billion<sup>(1)</sup> people use social<sup>(2)</sup> media<sup>(3)</sup> in their daily lives<sup>(4)</sup>. Some studies<sup>(5)</sup> have found that around 63% of people report<sup>(6)</sup> feeling upset and anxious after using social media. On the other hand, social media can be helpful because we can share experiences<sup>(7)</sup> and support<sup>(8)</sup> each other. People can spread<sup>(9)</sup> positive messages<sup>(10)</sup> this way about the importance<sup>(11)</sup> of looking after our mental health<sup>(12)</sup>.



- ١- مليار (ألف مليون)  
٢- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي  
٣- حياتهم اليومية  
٤- دراسات  
٥- يبلغ عن / يخبر  
٦- يشارك التجارب  
٧- يدعم  
٨- يشر  
٩- رسائل إيجابية  
١٠- أهمية  
١١- الصحة العقلية / النفسية

Say it correctly

social

ينطق حرف [c] في هذه الكلمة مثل [ش sh] ولا ينطق حرف [i]

SB Page (56)

Teen problems<sup>(1)</sup>

1. Nobody knows that I failed my English speaking test<sup>(2)</sup>, and I feel very embarrassed<sup>(3)</sup> about it. Yesterday, I told my best friend and I said, "Please don't tell anyone because nobody knows. It's a secret<sup>(4)</sup>". The next day, my friend's mother, who is British<sup>(5)</sup>, offered to help me with my English. I felt very unhappy with my friend because she told somebody. She said she was only trying to help me, but I don't want to tell her any of my secrets any more.

Magda

## Advice

Your friend shouldn't tell anyone your secret. Friends must keep secrets. However, you don't have to see this as a negative<sup>(1)</sup> thing since<sup>(2)</sup> she only wanted to help. Why don't you think about your friend's mother's kind offer?

2. I have a lot of friends, but we have very different opinions about things. They say I mustn't talk to some people in the class. We don't always agree, and I feel that I am very different from them. It makes me feel lonely<sup>(3)</sup>.

١. مشكلات المراهقة  
٢. اختبار تحدث لغة  
٣. أشعر بخرج شديد  
٤. سر  
٥. بريطانية  
٦. سلبية  
٧. لأن  
٨. أشعر بالوحدة



Salma

## Advice

How about joining a club to meet people with **similar interests**? You don't have to **belong to** only one group of friends.

3. My parents want me to be a doctor when I **finish school**.

A doctor has to be good at science subjects, however, and the work is too difficult for me. I don't want to **disappoint** them, but I really don't think I can be a doctor.

## Advice

You should talk to them and tell them how you feel. They might be more **understanding** than you think.

WB Page (109)

## - appearance

I **had a haircut** last week and I think it is **terrible**! I'm embarrassed to go out and see my friends!

## - social life

All the students in my class go out all the time and visit each other's houses. I live a long way from the school, so I never go out or see any friends after school.

## - cyberbullying

Somebody has sent a few of the boys in my class **unkind** messages on social media. I'm worried that I will start **receiving** them, too.

## - skills and abilities

I've tried to join an **art club**, a **language club** and a **music club**, but every time I go, I can't do what they suggest. I'm just not good at these things!

## - achievements

My sister is 18 and she has won lots of competitions and done really well in her **exams**. I don't think I will ever be as good as her!

- ١- اهتمامات مشابهة
- ٢- ينتمي لـ / يخص
- ٣- ينهى الدراسة
- ٤- يحبط
- ٥- متفاهم

- ١- يقص الشعر
- ٢- فظيع
- ٣- الحياة الاجتماعية
- ٤- غير لطيف
- ٥- يتلقى / يتسلم
- ٦- مهارات وقدرات
- ٧- نادي للرسم
- ٨- نادي للغة
- ٩- نادي للموسيقى

## Videoscript

SB Page (55)

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

Social media is very popular in Egypt. Almost 50 million people in the country often use it. They spend three hours a day **on average** to connect with their friends, watch videos and share photographs. People often communicate with each other in both Arabic and English on social media.

But do you know how people communicated with each other in the past? They weren't able to send messages or videos on their smartphones and they couldn't look at each other's photographs on social media. **Important events** in ancient Egypt were recorded using a form of writing called **hieroglyphics**.

But there were also people called "**scribes**" who used an easier form of hieroglyphics called **hieratic** to record what was happening every day. Scribes were important people and they recorded the **laws**, the food that farmers grew, and the amount of money people gave to the **pharaohs** every year.

Because many people weren't able to write, they had to ask scribes to write letters and messages to send to their friends and family. In fact, we know a lot about Ancient Egypt today because of the work of these scribes. Maybe in the future, people will know about Egypt today because of all the social media messages.

## Reading Skill

مهاراة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The text is mainly about .....

- a. communicating in the past
- b. hieroglyphics
- c. social media in ancient Egypt.
- d. pharaohs

2. Infer from the text how important events in ancient Egypt were recorded.

استنتج من النص كيف كان يتم تسجيل الأحداث الهامة في مصر القديمة. لخص الفقرة الثالثة في جملة.

3. Summarise the third paragraph in one sentence.

## Writing Skill (اجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Social media is very popular in Egypt.

تحتض وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي بشعبية كبيرة في مصر.

2. People often communicate with each other on social media.

غالبا ما يتواصل الناس مع بعضهم البعض على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي.

3. People in the past weren't able to send messages or videos on their smartphones.

لم يكن الناس في الماضي لديهم القدرة على ارسال الرسائل والفيديوهات على هواتفهم الذكية.

الكتابة كانت الوسيلة الوحيدة للتواصل في مصر القديمة.

3. Scribes were important people who recorded what was happening every day in ancient Egypt.

2. By using a form of writing called hieroglyphics, scribes recorded what was happening every day in ancient Egypt.

1. Communicating in the past.

Answers

- ١- في المتوسط
- ٢- أحداث هامة
- ٣- اللغة الهيروغليفية
- ٤- الكتبة
- ٥- خاص باللغة
- ٦- قوائم
- ٧- الفراعنة



## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

- \_\_\_\_\_ means the way that someone or something looks.  
a. Social media b. Appearance c. Achievement d. Social life
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people.  
a. Appearance b. Cyberbullying c. Social life d. Mental health
- Your \_\_\_\_\_ shows the health of your mind, or how happy you are.  
a. Secret b. Mental health c. Cyberbullying d. Appearance
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is something important that you have done.  
a. opportunity b. aquarium c. achievement d. environment
- "\_\_\_\_\_ " is unkind things we say or write about someone online.  
a. Texting b. Suggesting c. Thinking d. Cyberbullying
- To \_\_\_\_\_ is to help and encourage someone.  
a. support b. catch c. beat d. challenge
- An \_\_\_\_\_ is something that you do not want other people to know.  
a. cyberbullying b. secret c. achievement d. skill

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

- I'm embarrassed about being so tall. The word "embarrassed" is similar in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. relaxed b. calm c. uncomfortable d. confident
- The antonym of the word "upset" is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. sad b. happy c. free d. angry
- Don't worry; it isn't the coronavirus. It is a common cold. "Common" here has the same meaning as \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. strange b. harmful c. usual d. painful
- Try not to have negative thoughts. "\_\_\_\_\_ " is opposite in meaning to "negative".  
a. Careful b. Hateful c. Positive d. Competitive
- The two hotels are similar in size. The word "similar" can be replaced by \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. different b. alike c. dissimilar d. private
- Teachers should always support their students. The antonym of the verb "support" is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. encourage b. assist c. discourage d. help
- Parents are naturally anxious about their children. The word "anxious" is the antonym of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. nervous b. angry c. worried d. calm

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

- The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ is added to the verb "achieve" to make the noun.  
a. -sion b. -ment c. -ion d. -ness
- We can turn the verb "understand" into a noun by using the suffix \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. -ment b. -er c. -ance d. -ing
- We can use the suffix \_\_\_\_\_ to change the verb "embarrass" into an adjective.  
a. -ive b. -ed c. -ous d. -ible
- The prefix "cyber-" in the word "cyberbullying" refers to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. internet b. skill c. science d. love
- The prefix "un-" in the word "unkind" refers to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. synonym b. verb c. opposite d. noun
- My parents usually support us; they \_\_\_\_\_ us to achieve more success.  
a. stop b. encourage c. let d. make
- Unfortunately, he didn't pass; he \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.  
a. failed b. succeeded c. filled d. overcame
- Fadi is \_\_\_\_\_, he is worried about the exam result. He is afraid he won't pass.  
a. relaxed b. anxious c. quiet d. rich

## Guessing the meaning

## Language

## 1- Necessity / Unnecessity / Prohibition

الإلزام والضرورة / وعدم الضرورة / المنع والتحريم

## 1. must

كل الضمائر + must + inf.

• تستخدم بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء في المضارع وهنا يعبر المتحدث عن ضرورة نابعة من المشاعر والرغبات الخاصة به.

Ex. Friends **must keep** secrets.

## mustn't

كل الضمائر + mustn't + inf.

• تستخدم بمعنى (يجب ألا) للأشياء التي من الضروري تجنبها أو للتعبير عن النهي أو التحريم.

Ex. I **mustn't talk** to some people in the class.Ex. People **mustn't smoke** in hospitals. It's not allowed.

يمكن السؤال بـ (هل؟) كما يلي: Must + فاعل + inf. ...?

Ex. **Must I go** to the train station on time?

يمكن السؤال بكلمة استفهام كما يلي: Must + فاعل + inf. ...? كلمة استفهام

Ex. What **must I do** to be healthy?



## 2. have to / has to

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع → have to + inf.  
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has to + inf.

• نستخدم بمعنى (الابد ان / من الضروري ان) عندما نتحدث عن قواعد أو أمور مفروضة علينا ولا خيار لنا فيها في المضارع:

Ex. I **have to take** the medicine.

Ex. She **has to get** a passport to travel to London.

## don't / doesn't have to

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't have to + inf.  
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't have to + inf.

• نستخدم بمعنى (ليس من الضروري ان) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع:  
أي أنك لست ملزماً أو مضطراً للقيام بفعل معين

Ex. You **don't have to** see this as a negative thing.

Ex. She **doesn't have to** hurry. She isn't late for school.

• يمكن السؤال بـ (هل) في المضارع كما يلي:

## Do / Does + فاعل + have to + inf. ..?

Ex. Do you **have to do** the job now? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

• يمكن السؤال بكلمة استفهام كما يلي:

## do / does + فاعل + have to + inf. ..? + كلمة استفهام

Ex. What **do** you **have to do** before driving a car?

Notes

1- You .....(have) to take your coat. It's sunny outdoors.

وردت هذه الجملة في امتحان الجيزة 2022

- تبدو الجملة صحيحة لكن عندما نقرأ الجملة إلى نهايتها تجد المعنى سيختلف إلى

النفى لأن الجملة الثانية توضح ذلك: It's sunny outdoors.

**Answer** You **don't have** to take your coat. It's sunny outdoors.

Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Where do the boys have ..... (go) today?
- You ..... (has to) be at school on time. It is a rule.
- Nada ..... (have to) finish the test before 2 o'clock.
- You ..... (must) park here. It's against the law.

## 2- Giving advice

إعطاء النصيحة

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

## should / shouldn't

ينبغي / ينبغي ألا

• نستخدم **should / shouldn't** لإعطاء النصيحة أو التحدث عن أشياء ينبغي أو لا ينبغي أن تفعلها. ودائماً

ما يأتي بعدهما مصدر الفعل:

• للنصيحة بفعل شيء نستخدم:

Subject فاعل + should + inf. ينبغي أن

Ex. You **should talk** to them.

• للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء نستخدم:

Subject فاعل + shouldn't + inf. ينبغي ألا

Ex. People **shouldn't tell** others this sort of information.

• لطلب النصيحة نستخدم:

٢. سؤال (بكلمة استفهام):

should + فاعل + inf...? + كلمة استفهام

Ex. When **should** we **visit** Mr Omar?

١. سؤال بـ (هل...؟)

Should + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. **Should I go** out now?

Yes, you should.

No, you shouldn't.

Notes

١. نستخدم مصدر الفعل فقط «بدون to» بعد **should / shouldn't**

Ex. You **should study** well.

٢. لاحظ استخدام الأفعال الآتية بعد **should / shouldn't**

be / have / do

Ex. You **should be** more careful.

Ex. Ahmed **should have** his books with him today.

Ex. You **should do your** homework after school.

Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A: ..... (Have) I do my homework now?  
B: Yes, you should.
- This dog is angry. You ..... (should) go near it.



### 3- might (be) ربما (لا يكون) / might not (be) ربما (لا يكون)

نستخدم might (not) عندما نكون غير متأكدين من حدوث شيء ما في المضارع.

Ex. I **might go** to the stadium, but I'm unsure.

Ex. No one answers the phone. There **might not be** anybody there.

تعبيرات مساوية لـ might تدل على عدم التأكد من حدوث شيء

- I'm not sure ....	لست متأكدًا	- I (don't) think	(لا) أعتقد
- I'm not certain ....	لست متأكدًا	- I don't know	لا أعرف
- It's possible...	من الممكن	- I'm unsure	لست متأكدًا

Ex. He might help you, but I **am not certain**.

#### Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Amira ..... (mustn't) be at home. I'm not sure.
- She ..... (must) come early; I'm not certain.

### Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

#### SB, WB & Exams

- You ..... (should) say unkind things to people on social media. **WB**
- She doesn't ..... (has to) go by bus. She could take a tram or a train, too. **WB**
- I'll tell you a secret, but you ..... (must) tell anyone! **WB**
- Tarek is worried because he ..... (must) do badly in his exams. **WB**
- You ..... (mustn't) know the password before you can use that computer. **WB**
- You must ..... (to read) quietly in the library. **WB**
- I ..... (mustn't) get up early tomorrow, because it is a holiday! **WB**
- What do you ..... (must) to do when crossing the street? **WB**
- A doctor ..... (have to) be good at science subjects. **WB**

#### Longman Exercises

- I ..... (have to) buy more bread; we have a lot at home.
- You ..... (might) always eat healthy food; that's my advice.

- You ..... (can) park here; it isn't allowed.
- Everyone ..... (shouldn't) follow the right health habits.
- You ..... (must) take things that belong to others.

#### Bit by Bit Exercises

- You ..... (have to) call us back. It's unnecessary.
- Sameh ..... (must) join the university. I'm not sure.
- You ..... (shouldn't) drink enough water every day.
- Ramy should ..... (has) a rest from work. It's my advice.
- All the guests ..... (has to) pay for their stay before leaving the hotel.
- You ..... (must) park here. There is a "No parking" sign.
- People ..... (shouldn't to) throw rubbish in the streets.
- My uncle might ..... (to join) us tomorrow. I'm not sure.
- You should ..... (knocks) on the door before you enter.
- You ..... (must) cross the street now, the cars are really fast.
- You have to ..... (arriving) at school on time.
- My brother doesn't ..... (has to) wear a uniform at work.
- Children ..... (should) swim in the swimming pool alone. They aren't allowed to do that.
- ..... (Must) I have to brush my teeth every day?

### Speaking

#### 1) Discussing the use of technology and social media

مناقشة استخدام التكنولوجيا ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

- توضح النقاط الآتية الجوانب الإيجابية والسلبية في استخدام التكنولوجيا ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي:

#### 1. How can the uses of technology be positive or negative for your mental health?

**Positive :** People can spread positive messages on social media about the importance of looking after our mental health.

**Negative :** 63% of people report feeling upset and anxious after using social media

#### 2. How do you use technology and social media in a positive way in your life?

- Social media can be helpful because we can share experiences and support each other.



## ② Discussing teenagers' worries

نسال ونجيب عن هموم التي يواجهها المراهقون كالآتي:

## Question

- What problem are you embarrassed about?

- ما المشكلة التي انت محرج بشأنها؟

- Why is Nada unhappy with her friend?

- لماذا نادى غير سعيدة مع صديقتها؟

- Why does Ahmed think his friends are different to him?

- لماذا يعتقد احمد ان اصدقاءه مختلفون عنه؟

- How does Amira feel about science subjects?

- كيف تشعر أميرة بخصوص المواد العلمية؟

- Why is Omar anxious about what his parents will think?

- لماذا عمر قلق لما يفكر فيه والديه؟

## Answer

- I failed the speaking test.

- رسيت في اختبار التحدث.

- She doesn't keep secrets.

- إنها لا تحفظ الأسرار.

- They have very different opinions.

- لهم آراء مختلفة.

- They are difficult to her.

- صعبة بالنسبة لها.

- They want him to be a doctor and he doesn't want to disappoint them.

- إنهم يريدونه ان يكون طبيباً ولا يريد ان يحبطهم.

## General Exercises

## on Lessons 1 &amp; 2



القاهرة 2023

## ① Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Samar about how she can chat using the internet.

Ahmed : Hello, Samar.

Samar : Hi, Ahmed.

Ahmed : What are you doing?

Samar : ① .....

Ahmed : ② .....

Samar : To chat, you just need a smartphone and the internet.

Ahmed : Can you see each other?

Samar : ③ .....

Ahmed : That's a great! ④ .....

Samar : Yes, you can. ⑤ .....

## ② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

must - similar - mustn't - mental - cyberbullying - anxious

Using social media can make you feel upset and ① ..... It has a bad effect on your ② ..... health. You can meet people with ③ ..... interests but you ④ ..... keep your personal information secret.

## ③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... means worried that something bad might happen.  
a. Unkind b. Anxious c. Unsure d. Social
- Saying unkind or cruel things about someone online means .....  
a. cyberbullying b. thanking c. understanding d. regarding
- Try to be positive. The word "positive" is the opposite of .....  
a. terrible b. negative c. horrible d. disappointed
- We can add the prefix "....." to get the antonym of the adjective "sure".  
a. in- b. dis- c. im- d. un-
- The doctor could check the health of your mind. This means he could check your .....  
a. embarrassed b. mental health c. cyberbullying d. appearance
- Ali asked me not to tell anyone about what he told me. This means he told me a / an .....  
a. way b. joke c. story d. secret

## ④ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What do you ..... (has) to do at home to help your parents? **WB**
- She ..... (has to) hurry because she still has a lot of time to catch the train. Longman
- She mustn't ..... (disobeys) school rules. Longman
- I ..... (shouldn't) visit my grandparents. I haven't seen them for a long time.
- Omar ..... (must) come to the party today. I'm not certain.

## ⑤ Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of what you must or mustn't do at school"

**WB**

محاب عنه في أحر الوحدة

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What must you do at school?
- What mustn't you do?
- Must you take your smartphone to school?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- There are many rules .....
- We must .....
- We mustn't .....



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 111-112

## Key Vocabulary

mind	العقل	include (d)
mindfulness	التركيز الذهني / البقطة	joke (d) (n)
mindful	متنبه / يقظ	breathe (d)
feelings	مشاعر	relax (ed)
breathing	عملية التنفس	cyberbully (ied)
angry	غاضب	

استمع إلى المفردات



يشمل / يتضمن  
يمزح - مزاح - نكتة  
يتنفس  
يستريح  
يتنمر عبر الإنترنت

## Vocabulary

blog	مدونة على الإنترنت	happiness	سعادة
certain	معيّن / محدد	waterfall	شلال
comment	تعليق	life jacket	سترة النجاة
carefully	بحرص	engine	محرك (موتور)
mistake	خطأ	thoughts	أفكار
luckily	لحسن الحظ	realise (d)	يدرك
calmly	بهدوء	apologise (d)	يعتذر
deeply	بعمق	revise (d)	يراجع
afterwards	بعد ذلك	face (d)	يواجه
result	نتيجة	improve (d)	يحسن

## Definitions

joke	يمزح	say something to make people laugh
cyberbully	يتنمر عبر الإنترنت	say unkind or cruel things about someone online
include	يشمل / يتضمن	allow or want someone or something to be part of something
mindfulness	التركيز الذهني / البقطة	being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings and what is around you at the moment
relax	يستريح / يسترخي	become comfortable and less worried
breathe	يتنفس	take air in and out of your body
feelings	مشاعر	what you feel, such as happy, upset, etc.

## Lessons 3 & 4

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	مضاد
mindful	متنبه / يقظ	aware	mindless / unaware	غافل
angry	غاضب	cross / furious	calm	هادئ
relax	يستريح	rest	worry	يقلق
include	يشمل / يتضمن	involve	exclude	يستبعد
luckily	لحسن الحظ	fortunately	unluckily	لسوء الحظ
certain	معيّن / محدد	particular	uncertain	غير محدد
happiness	السعادة	pleasure	sadness	الحزن

## Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
mis-	wrong	mis:take خطأ
-ness	adj → n	mindful:ness / happi:ness بقطة / سعادة
-ing	v → n	breath:ing التنفس
-ful	n → adj	mind:ful يقظ
-ly	adj → adv	calm:ly / deep:ly / bad:ly / lucki:ly بهدوء / بعمق / بشكل سيء / لحسن الحظ
-ise	n → v	real:ise / apolog:ise يدرك / يعتذر

## Expressions & Prepositions

say sorry	يناسف	start the engine	يشغل المحرك
hurt ..... badly	يصيب ..... بشدة	go home	يذهب للمنزل
(be) friends with	يصاحب / يصادق	breathe in	يتنفس (شهيق)
do something wrong	يرتكب خطأ	breathe out	يتنفس (زفير)
face your mistakes	واجه أخطاءك	revise for a test	يراجع من أجل اختبار
stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر	(a) part of	جزء من
do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل	walk around	يتجول
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	kind to	عطوف على
do / have a test	يجري اختبار	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
have a positive result	يحقق نتائج إيجابية	reason for	سبب لـ



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		Past simple	Past Participle
Present			
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
sing	يغنى	sang	sung

## Language Notes

### 1) everyday / every day

• everyday (adj) + noun

يومي

Ex. Social media is used widely in everyday life.

• every day (adv)

كل يوم (غالباً في أول الجملة أو آخرها)

Ex. I go to work every day.

Ex. Every day, I go to work.

### 2) breathe / breathing / breath

• breathe (d) يتنفس

Ex. The doctor asked me to breathe deeply.

• breath (n) نفَس (الهواء الذي يدخل الرئتين)

Ex. Take a deep breath and you will feel relaxed.

• breathing (n) عملية التنفس

Ex. Astronauts have special breathing equipment.

### 3) (go - come - get - reach - arrive) home

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال مع كلمة (home) بدون حرف جر

Ex. I went / came / got / reached / arrived home late yesterday.

### 4) include / contain / consist of

• include يتضمن / يشمل

Ex. The coach included me in the team.

• consist of يتكون من (ما بعدها يشكل كل ما قبلها)

Ex. A football team consists of eleven players.

• contain يحتوي على شيء بداخله

Ex. What does that box contain?

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Using the internet became part of ..... life.  
a. every day      b. a day      c. on day      d. everyday
- The room is full of smoke; I can't .....  
a. breath      b. breathing      c. breathe      d. breathed
- I asked the music teacher to ..... me in the new school chord.  
a. contact      b. include      c. contain      d. consist

## Reading

SB page (58)

استمع إلى النص



I always wanted to be part of a certain group<sup>(1)</sup> of popular<sup>(2)</sup> students. One day, they suggested that we cyberbully a boy in my class called Eyad, so I wrote an unkind comment<sup>(3)</sup> about him on social media.



I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise<sup>(4)</sup> that they were joking<sup>(5)</sup> and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Eyad read my comment and the next day he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to include<sup>(6)</sup> me in their group. I am so embarrassed about<sup>(7)</sup> what I did.

However, I hope my experience<sup>(8)</sup> will have a positive result<sup>(9)</sup> too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested<sup>(10)</sup>. You should think before you do something. Some online<sup>(11)</sup> messages can hurt people very badly.

I was able to say sorry<sup>(12)</sup> to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully<sup>(13)</sup> and always be kind to people.

Hussein

- ١- مجموعة معينة
- ٢- محبوب
- ٣- تعليق
- ٤- يدرك
- ٥- يمزح
- ٦- يتضمن / يضم
- ٧- مخرج بشأن
- ٨- تجربة حياتية
- ٩- نتائج إيجابية
- ١٠- يقترح
- ١١- في الانترنت
- ١٢- يعتذر
- ١٣- يحرص



# THE DAILY NEWS

As part of a **plan**<sup>(1)</sup> to **improve**<sup>(2)</sup> students' **mental health**<sup>(3)</sup>, more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced **mindfulness**<sup>(4)</sup> as a part of the **timetable**<sup>(5)</sup>. In mindfulness class, students learn to **breathe**<sup>(6)</sup> slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy.

We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do in the future. However, trying to think only about the present helps us to **relax**<sup>(7)</sup> and to really think **deeply**<sup>(8)</sup> about everything we are doing at the moment. This helps to stop us from **feeling**<sup>(9)</sup> anxious or worried about things we have done or have to do. Students say that mindfulness helps them to **feel better**<sup>(10)</sup> about themselves, and **afterwards**<sup>(11)</sup> they **do better**<sup>(12)</sup> at their school work, too.

Say it correctly

\* breathe

لاحظ ان حرفي (th) في هذه الكلمة ينطقان مثلما ينطقا في كلمة (this)

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special **life jacket**<sup>(1)</sup> and he said I could walk carefully around the boat but I couldn't run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I couldn't see the beach, only the sea. Then the **engine**<sup>(2)</sup> stopped! We tried to **start**<sup>(3)</sup> it, but we couldn't. I could swim well, but I knew that I couldn't swim to the beach. So my uncle was able to telephone for help! They said they could send a **helicopter**<sup>(4)</sup> to help us. However, **suddenly**<sup>(5)</sup> the engine started again! So, we didn't have to go home on a helicopter.



- ١- سترة نجاة
- ٢- محرك (موتور)
- ٣- يشغل
- ٤- طائرة مروحية
- ٥- فجأة

**Ashraf** : I understand my feeling better now. For example, when I feel **angry**<sup>(1)</sup>, I play a sport. I usually find I play better!

**Lamar** : It's a nice, sunny day in spring. My friends want me to play a game with them, but I'm feeling **anxious**<sup>(2)</sup>. We had a test last week and I did **badly**<sup>(3)</sup>. We have another test next week and I don't think it will be easier.

**Hisham** : It's morning. I can hear the wind in the trees and the birds **singing**<sup>(4)</sup>. I am **breathing**<sup>(5)</sup> slowly and carefully.

- ١- غاضب
- ٢- قلق
- ٣- بشكل سيئ
- ٤- يتنفس
- ٥- يتنفس

# Audioscript

**Boy 1** : In mindfulness classes, we learn that it's OK to have **negative thoughts**<sup>(1)</sup>, like when we feel angry. We don't have to feel bad about that. It helps me to understand my feelings. And try to turn them into something positive. Mindfulness is about being kind to yourself, and kind to other people, too.

**Girl 1** : In the class, you have to close your eyes, **breathe in**<sup>(2)</sup>, **count**<sup>(3)</sup> to 5, then **breathe out**<sup>(4)</sup> slowly. Breathing like this makes you **feel calm**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Boy 2** : In the class, we try not to think about all our problems, we should only think about the things that are around us. Think about the present only, what's happening right now. The reason for this is -we can't change the future or the past, we can only do something about the present.

**Girl 2** : In mindfulness, you have to learn to find **happiness**<sup>(6)</sup> in simple things. For example, when you eat a favourite food, think about how it smells, tastes and looks this is a new way of doing everyday things.

- ١- افكار سلبية
- ٢- يستنشق الهواء
- ٣- يعد
- ٤- يخرج الهواء
- ٥- تشعر بالهدوء
- ٦- سعادة

# Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

1. .... means being able to think calmly about your feelings and what is around you at the moment. WB
  - a. Carelessness
  - b. Sadness
  - c. Mindfulness
  - d. Weakness
2. To .... means to take air in and out of your body. WB
  - a. breathe
  - b. relax
  - c. cyberbully
  - d. joke
3. " .... " means what you feel, such as happy, upset, etc. WB
  - a. Thoughts
  - b. Feelings
  - c. Cyberbullying
  - d. Symbols
4. To .... is to become comfortable and less worried. WB
  - a. exhaust
  - b. relax
  - c. joke
  - d. breathe
5. To .... means to say unkind or cruel things about someone online.
  - a. improve
  - b. face
  - c. cyberbully
  - d. realise
6. To .... is to say something to make people laugh.
  - a. relax
  - b. cyberbully
  - c. play
  - d. joke



## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

الشرقية 2023

7. "....." is the synonym of the word "happiness".  
 a. Sadness b. Pleasure c. Regret d. Initiative
8. Fortunately, the car wasn't damaged in the road accident. "Fortunately" here means ".....".  
 a. luckily b. badly c. completely d. unluckily
9. The coach couldn't exclude that player from the team, although he was not physically fit. The antonym for "exclude" is ".....".  
 a. improve b. separate c. include d. contain
10. Please don't be angry with me. The word "angry" is an opposite of .....  
 a. cross b. calm c. furious d. displeased
11. Mustafa does a lot of work; he can relax after school. The verb "relax" is a synonym of .....  
 a. work b. worsen c. worry d. rest
12. Hazem is mindful when the teacher explains the lesson. The word "mindful" is an antonym of .....  
 a. awake b. aware c. mindless d. conscious

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

13. To change "happy" into a noun, delete "y" and add ".....".  
 a. -ness b. -iness c. -ity d. -ment
14. To change the verb "take" into a noun meaning "error", add the prefix ".....".  
 a. un- b. mis- c. dis- d. re-
15. We can turn the adjective "mindful" into a noun by adding the suffix .....  
 a. -ing b. -er c. -ance d. -ness
16. The suffix ..... is added to the adjective "calm" to turn it into an adverb.  
 a. -ful b. -ing c. -ly d. -ness
17. We use the suffix ..... to turn the verb "breathe" into a noun.  
 a. -ing b. -ness c. -able d. -ist

## Guessing the meaning

18. Some bad people say unkind or cruel things about others online. This means bad people ..... others online.  
 a. relax b. joke c. cyberbully d. breathe

## Language

## 1- Necessity and Unnecessity in the past

الضرورة وعدم الضرورة في الماضي [Lessons 1-2].

راجع شرح الضرورة وعدم الضرورة في المضارع [Lessons 1-2].

• تستخدم بمعنى (اضطر إلى/ كان من الضروري أن) عندما نتحدث عن أمور كان من الضروري القيام بها أو فعلها في الماضي:  
 + had to + inf. كل الضمائر

Ex. I had to tell my parents about the problem that I faced.

+ didn't have to + inf. كل الضمائر

• تستخدم بمعنى (لم يكن من الضروري أن) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي:

Ex. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested.

## Question السؤال

السؤال بـ «هل»:

Did + فاعل + have to + inf. ...?

Ex. Did you have to stay up late yesterday?

السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Did + فاعل + have to + inf. ...? كلمة استفهام

Ex. What did you have to do last night?

## الخط المتساويين (التي)

It wasn't necessary (for..)

It was unnecessary (for..)

It wasn't important (for..)

to + inf. = didn't + have to + inf. فاعل

## Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I couldn't attend the last part of the film because I ..... (have to) leave the cinema early.
- You ..... (don't) have to go to the concert yesterday; it was cancelled.
- Nada ..... (had) to do the washing up. Her mum did it.
- They ..... (have to) take a taxi yesterday.
- ..... (Do) you have to go to school last week?
- You ..... (didn't have) make coffee for us. We have a machine to make it!

SB



## 2- Ability and Inability in the past

## Ability

## القدرة

could - was / were able to

للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + was / were able to + inf.

Ex. I was able to say sorry to Eyad.

Ex. We were able to push the car.

فاعل + could + inf.

Ex. I could swim when I was six.

## Inability

## عدم القدرة

للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في الماضي نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + (was / were) not able to + inf.

Ex. I wasn't able to come with you to the concert because I was ill.

فاعل + could not (couldn't) + inf.

Ex. My brother couldn't swim until he was about ten.

## Question السؤال

يمكن السؤال عن القدرة في الماضي بـ (هل.....؟) كما يلي:

Was / Were + فاعل + able to + inf.....?

Ex. Was Jana able to walk to school?

- Yes, she was.

- No, she wasn't.

Could + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. Could you read when you went to school?

- Yes, I could.

- No, I couldn't.

يمكن السؤال بكلمة استفهام كما يلي:

كلمة استفهام + was / were + فاعل + able to + inf.....?

Ex. What were you able to do at the museum?

كلمة استفهام + could + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. What could Hassan do when he was in Alexandria?

## Check ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- People were able to (watching) TV in the 1960s.
- I (can) ride a horse when I was young.
- My mother told me I (not able to) walk until I was about three!
- Mustafa (can swim) in the Red Sea last summer.

الاستجابة 2022 SB

## القدرة وعدم القدرة في الماضي

## Notes

1- يستخدم الفعل (could) في الإثبات عادةً للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي دون تحديد موقف معين.

Ex. I could drive a car at the age of ten.

بينما يستخدم الفعل (couldn't) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في الماضي سواء مع تحديد موقف معين أو بدون تحديد.

Ex. I couldn't go shopping yesterday because I was so tired.

2- تستخدم (was / were able to) للتعبير عن القدرة في موقف معين في الماضي، وتستخدم (was / were not able to) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في موقف معين في الماضي.

Ex. I was able to get full marks last year.

Ex. I wasn't able to do the homework as I was outside.

## لاحظ الفرق بين الجمل الآتية:

Ex. I arrived at the station late, but I was able to catch the train.

من الخطأ هنا أن تستخدم (could) حيث أن الجملة تعبر عن قدرة في موقف معين.

## أما في حالة النفي:

Ex. I couldn't / wasn't able to win the first prize.

هنا من الصواب أن نستخدم أيًا من (couldn't) أو (wasn't able to).

## Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

- I ..... (could) understand the film because it was in a language I don't understand. SB
- Hazem is really tired this morning. He ..... (have to) stay up late last night to revise for a maths test. SB
- In the mountains, we could ..... (to see) an amazing waterfall. WB
- We ..... (not had to) walk to the museum, because there was a bus. WB
- Fatma ..... (were not able) to walk to school because she hurt her leg. WB
- It was very windy, so planes ..... (not able) to leave the airport. WB
- Tarek ..... (have to) go to the dentist yesterday because his tooth hurt. WB
- Although he was tired, he ..... (able) play the match. WB
- Last Thursday was a holiday. So, I ..... (not have to) go to school. I stayed home. WB
- I ..... (have to) tell my parents about the problem that I faced. WB

## Longman Exercises

- I am so sorry; I ..... (am able) to come on time yesterday because the bus had broken down.
- My neighbour ..... (not have to) leave for work because he was still ill.



## Unit 6 What's wrong?

13. I ran fast, but I ..... (could) win the race!  
 14. .... (Do) you have to wait for a longer time? – Yes, because the manager was busy.  
 15. The pilot ..... (has to) land suddenly as there was something wrong with the plan.
- Bit by Bit Exercises**
16. I ..... (wasn't able) climb that tree when I was six.  
 17. Heba ..... (has to) phone me before she came to my house.  
 18. Were you ..... (ability to) get a prize in the last competition?  
 19. I couldn't ..... (reading) in English when I was very young.  
 20. Our class ..... (has to do) a test this morning. It was easy.  
 21. He was able to cross the canal fast. This means that he ..... (have) the ability to cross it.  
 22. He ..... (wasn't able to) do that task alone, could he?

### Speaking

#### 1) Being still good friends with someone

الإبقاء على صداقة قوية مع شخص ما

- للسؤال والإجابة عن قوة الصداقة بين الأشخاص نقول:

A: Do you think that ..... is still good friends with.....?

- هل تعتقد أن ..... مازال في صداقة قوية مع.....؟

B: Yes, I think so. / No, I don't think so.

A: Do you think that ..... is a good friend? Why / Why not?

- هل تعتقد أن ..... صديق جيد؟

B: Yes, I think so. He never cyberbullies other students.

No, I don't think so. He always cyberbullies other students.

#### 2) Talking about mindfulness

الحديث عن التركيز الذهني

##### Question

- Would you like to try mindfulness? Why?

- هل تود أن تجرب التركيز الذهني؟ لماذا؟

- How do you think mindfulness could help you?

- كيف برأيك يمكن للتركيز الذهني أن يساعدك؟

##### Answer

- Yes, because it helps me to understand my feelings, and try to turn them into something positive.

- نعم، لأنه يساعدني على فهم مشاعري، ومحاولة تحويلها إلى شيء إيجابي.

- In mindfulness, I can learn how to find happiness in simple things.

- بالتركيز الذهني، يمكنني تعلم كيفية الحصول على السعادة في الأشياء البسيطة.

## Lessons 3 & 4

- How can you find happiness in a simple thing like eating your favourite food?

- كيف يمكنك أن تجد السعادة في شيء بسيط مثل أكل طعامك المفضل؟

- How can breathing help you?

- كيف يمكن للتنفس أن يساعدك؟

- Why does mindfulness teach us not to think about the future or the past?

- لماذا يعلمنا التركيز الذهني ألا نفكر في المستقبل أو الماضي؟

- I can think about how it tastes, smells and looks.

- يمكنني التفكير في الطعم والرائحة وكيف يبدو الطعام.

- It makes me feel calm.

- يجعلني أشعر بالهدوء.

- Because we can't change things about the future or the past.

- لأننا لا يمكننا أن نغير أشياء في المستقبل أو في الماضي.

### General Exercises

#### on Lessons 3 & 4

#### 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Salem is talking to Mrs. Amal about a problem with his friends.

Mrs Amal : Why do you look upset?

Salem : ① .....

Mrs Amal : A problem with your friends? ② .....

Salem : They want me to start smoking.

Mrs Amal : ③ .....

Salem : No, I didn't. I know that it's wrong and harmful.

Mrs Amal : They are bad friends.

Salem : ④ .....

Mrs Amal : That's right. We should be friends with good people.

Salem : ⑤ .....

#### 2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

friend - feelings - cyberbullied - could - friends - couldn't

I was upset at school this morning. I went to explain my ① ..... to my teacher. He ② ..... make me relax. I told him that my friends had ③ ..... me. He advised me to be ④ ..... with good ones.

#### 3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is impolite to cyberbully people online. The word "cyberbully" means .....

- a. keep      b. annoy      c. protect      d. encourage  
 2. The prefix "mis-" in the word "mistake" gives the meaning of .....  
 a. wrong      b. lovely      c. right      d. brave



3. Exercise helps me to calm down when I'm angry. The word "angry" is the same meaning as .....  
 a. glad b. happy c. furious d. pleased
4. Funny people say a lot of things to make us laugh. This means they .....  
 with us. a. breathe b. joke c. include d. cyberbully
5. I want Omar to be part of our team. This means I want to ..... Omar in our team.  
 a. include b. joke c. breathe d. relax

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The baker's was closed, but we ..... (could) to buy some bread from the shop next door. **SB**
2. Before we had the internet, we ..... (have to) find all our information in books. **SB** 2023
3. Sorry Mum, I ..... (not able to) do the shopping for you, because the shops were closed when I got there. **SB** 2022
4. We ..... (have to) walk to the museum because there was a bus. **SB** 2023
5. .... (Do) you have to see your doctor? – Yes, I was really ill. **Longman**

### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about a mistake you made."

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

- Who made the mistake?
- What was the mistake?
- How did you feel?
- What did you do in the end?

- Yesterday, I made .....
- My friends and I suggested.....
- I was so embarrassed about .....
- I apologised .....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

## Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61 - 63 WB pages 113 - 115

### Key Vocabulary

good listener  
meet up with  
an example  
clear

مستمع جيد  
يلتقي / يتقابل مع  
مثال  
واضح

Go on  
cope with  
listen (ed)  
interrupt (ed)

استمر في / تابع (الحديث)  
يتعامل مع / يتغلب على  
ينتصت إلى  
يقاطع (شخص أثناء الكلام)



### Vocabulary

only if  
serious  
way  
member  
machine  
medicine  
unhelpful  
depressed

فقط إذا  
خطير / جاد  
طريقة / طريق  
عضو في (أسرة / نادي مثلاً)  
آلة / ماكينة  
الطب  
غير متعاون  
مكتئب

diary  
digital  
tablet  
seem (ed)  
explain (ed)  
mind (ed)  
email (ed)  
try (ied)

يوميات  
رقمي  
كمبيوتر لوصي (تابلت)  
يبدو  
يشرح / يفسر  
يمنع  
يرسل بريد الكتروني  
يحاول

### Definitions

clear

واضح

easy to understand

cope with

يتعامل مع

manage<sup>(1)</sup> or be able to do something,  
although<sup>(2)</sup> it is difficult

1- يتصرف  
2- بالرغم من

interrupt

يقاطع أثناء الكلام

stop someone from speaking or doing something by suddenly speaking

### Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
clear	واضح	obvious		unclear	غير واضح
go on	يستمر	continue		stop	يتوقف
depressed	مكتئب	disappointed		cheerful	مبتهج



Suffixes لواحق الكلمات		Examples	
Suffix	Use الاستخدام		
-er	person	listener	مستمع
-ous	adj.	serious	جاد / خطير
-ful		unhelpful	غير متعاون
-ly	adj → adv	clearly	بوضوح
-ed	v → adj.	depressed	مكتئب

## Expressions & Prepositions

make sure	يتأكد	explain my feelings	أفسر مشاعري
get ready	يستعد	ask for	يطلب
do nothing	لا يفعل شيء	leave for school	يغادر إلى المدرسة
do the shopping	يتسوق	interested in	مهتم بـ
do the housework	تقوم بأعمال المنزل	wear in red	يرتدي لوناً أحمر
feel worse	يشعر بالأسوأ	tell... about	يخبر... عن
go well	تسير على ما يرام	angry with	غاضب من
work harder	يعمل بجهد أكثر	calm down	يهذا
look interested	يبدو مهتماً	as soon as possible	في أقرب وقت ممكن
give ..... advice	يعطي... نصيحة	depressed about	مكتئب بشأن
give ... an example of	يعطي... مثال على	make you feel sad	يجعلك تشعر بالحزن
the way she looks	الطريقة التي تبدو عليها		

## Conjugations of

### Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
say	يقول	said	said
tell	يخبر	told	told
mean	يعني/ يقصد	meant	meant
get	يصل/ يحصل على	got	got
meet up	يلتقي/ يتقابل	met up	met up
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn



## Language Notes

### 1) Expressions that help you to order an email

- نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية في كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني لكي نرتب الأحداث:
- I will start by saying ..... سأبدأ بقول...
  - First of all, ..... أول كل شيء،
  - Secondly, ..... ثانياً،
  - Finally, ..... أخيراً،

### 2) else (adv)

[somewhere/everything/anybody]: تستخدم كلمة **else** بمعنى (آخر) بعد كلمات مثل:

Ex. I'm bored. Let's do **something else**.

Ex. Do you want **anything else**?

• تستخدم أيضاً بعد Why/How/Where/What/Who

Ex. Who **else** won a medal?

### 3) stop

• stop + V-ing يتوقف (عن شيء كان يفعله)

Ex. He **stopped bullying** others.

• stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي

Ex. While he was working, he **stopped to drink** coffee.

• stop + object + (from) + v. + ing. يمنع ... عن

Ex. Dalia tries to **stop** her brother (from) **playing** video games.

### 4) proud

• proud of + noun / V-ing. فخور بـ

Ex. I'm **proud of** my country.

Ex. I'm **proud of** achieving many goals.

• proud to + inf. فخور أن

Ex. I'm **proud to work** for an international bank.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I washed up, mum; do you want anything .....  
a. else                      b. too                      c. also                      d. again
- Mona can't stop ..... about her future.  
a. thinks                      b. thinking                      c. think                      d. to thinking
- My mum stopped me from ..... out.  
a. going                      b. go                      c. goes                      d. to go
- I am proud ..... Osama as a friend.  
a. had                      b. have                      c. to having                      d. to have



# Audioscript

SB Page (61)

استمع إلى النصوص



Narrator: Conversation 1

1 Boy 1: My friends aren't talking to me anymore. I feel really depressed<sup>(1)</sup> about it, I don't know what to do.

Boy 2: Oh, don't worry about them! They're boring anyway.

You can find new friends.

Narrator: Conversation 2

2 Boy 3: What's wrong, Khaled?

Boy 4: I'm really worried about something.

Boy 3: Tell me about it. What happened?

Boy 4: I heard some bad news yesterday.....

Boy 3: Go on..... It might help to talk about it, you know.

Narrator: Conversation 3

3 Girl 1: I think I'm going to fail my exams<sup>(2)</sup>.

Girl 2: Well, you aren't the only one. I'm doing badly, too.

Girl 1: But I really want to get good results. I want to go to university and study medicine<sup>(3)</sup>.....

Girl 2: I don't want to go to university! I want to get a job as soon as possible<sup>(4)</sup> and earn some money. Have I told you about my plan to travel to America?

Narrator: Conversation 4

4 Girl 3: I'm worried about my friend. She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't good for her.

Girl 4: I see. What makes you say that?

Girl 3: She just seems different. She's not the same person I used to know.

Girl 4: It's clear you're unhappy about it. Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Girl 3: She's not working hard at school anymore. When I speak to her about it, she just laughs and says I'm boring.

Girl 4: That must make you feel very sad.



١- مكتئب  
٢- أرسب في امتحاناتي  
٣- الطب  
٤- في أقرب وقت ممكن

## Reading

SB page (62)

Lessons 5 &amp; 6

Dalia gets ready<sup>(1)</sup> for school! She can hear her parents talking to her older brother<sup>(2)</sup>. He is not doing well at school and they are worried about his exams. She is worried about her brother, too. Before leaving for school, she says goodbye to her brother. He doesn't look happy and this makes her feel even worse<sup>(3)</sup>.



١- تستعد  
٢- الأخ الأكبر  
٣- أسوأ  
٤- ألعاب الفيديو

Dalia tries to stop her brother playing video games<sup>(4)</sup>. She tells him that he should study, but he does not listen. Then she looks on social media for some advice, but she can't find anything useful. Instead, her friends just tell her about what they did that day.

\*\*\*\*

The first lesson at school is science. Dalia works hard and does some good work. The afternoon lessons don't go well. Dalia can't stop thinking about her brother. How can she encourage him to work harder?

Dalia goes home. Her brother is playing video games. Dalia's parents don't know what to do about him.

She wants to tell her friends about her worries, but she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings. So she tells them she had a good day.

SB Page (63)

I'm worried about my friend. She is so unhappy<sup>(1)</sup> about her appearance. How can I help her feel more positive about herself? People like her and she has won prizes<sup>(2)</sup> for her art; the only negative thing about her is her opinion of herself. It's really bad for her mental health.

١- غير سعيدة  
٢- فازت بجوائز  
٣- رائع  
٤- قليلاً  
٥- فحرة  
٦- يمانع

I'm sorry she feels this way. You say that she has won art prizes - you could try to tell her that this is a wonderful<sup>(3)</sup> achievement.

I've just moved here and I'm the only person in my class who isn't from this country. I'm embarrassed to talk to people because I can't speak the language well. I haven't told anybody about this and I want it to be a secret. My parents know I feel a bit<sup>(4)</sup> lonely but they don't know why.

It can be upset being the only person from another country, but don't worry about your language ability<sup>(5)</sup>. Try to breathe in and out calmly, and then talk to people. Nobody minds<sup>(6)</sup> when people make mistakes!



- Mazin** : I had a **terrible** day at school.  
**Mother** : Tell me about it. What happened?  
**Mazin** : It was my English class. You see ...  
**Mother** : **Go on**. It might help to talk about it, you know.  
**Mazin** : We had a test and I was last in the class!  
**Mother** : That must make you feel very sad.  
**Mazin** : It was so difficult.  
**Mother** : Can you give me an **example** of what you **mean**?  
**Mazin** : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.  
**Mother** : It's **clear** you are unhappy about it. Why don't we talk to the teacher?

١- سيء / فظيع  
 ٢- استمر / تابع  
 ٣- الحديث  
 ٤- مثال  
 ٥- تعني  
 ٥- واضح

**New Message**

Hi friends,

I want to write about Dalia. I will start by saying we must do something. If we do nothing, Dalia will **continue** to feel lonely and upset. This will not help her.

So, **first of all**, it would be a good idea to talk to Dalia. She must tell us her feelings. Then, we will know how best to **support** her.

Secondly, why don't we talk to her teacher? I think it will be difficult to talk to her parents, but the teacher can tell them that Dalia is worried about her brother. I think this might help.

Finally, I think we should tell her that we are **proud** to have her as a friend. We should help her with her school work and also take her out so she can **relax** after school. This will make her feel better. Do you all agree? Email and let me know.

Best wishes, Riham.

١- تستمر  
 ٢- أولاً  
 ٣- يدعم  
 ٤- فخور  
 ٥- يسترضى

Taha's friends all live near to their school. When they have finished their homework, the friends all meet up to play in the park. Sometimes, they help each other with their school work, too. Taha lives a long way from the school. It takes an hour for him to get home to his small village. He does not have a father and he is worried because his mother is ill. So when he gets home, he has to look after his younger brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months ago, she had to go to hospital after she broke her leg. She was able to go home the next day, but she wasn't able to walk for many weeks.

She could go to school, but **of course** she couldn't do any sports until her leg was better. Her mother told her that she didn't have to do any **housework**, **either**. Her leg is better now, and yesterday she was able to play tennis with me. That was good, but the best thing is that she is not worried about being ill any more, because she knows she will get better!



١- بالطبع  
 ٢- أعمال المنزل  
 ٣- أيضاً

**Exercises on Vocabulary**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Definitions**

- To ..... is to manage or be able to do something, although it is difficult.  
 a. go on                      b. meet up with                      c. cope with                      d. listen
- To ..... means to stop someone from speaking or doing something by suddenly speaking.  
 a. listen                      b. interrupt                      c. make                      d. cope
- ..... means easy to understand.  
 a. Clear                      b. Talking                      c. Problem                      d. Speaking

**Synonyms & Antonyms**

- You are right; go on speaking. "Go on" and "....." have the same meaning.  
 a. hurry                      b. stop                      c. interrupt                      d. continue
- It was clear to us that there was a problem. The synonym of "clear" is  
 a. obvious                      b. dangerous                      c. serious                      d. unclear
- Muhammad could go on with his speech to tell his story. The verb "go on" is the opposite of "  
 a. go up                      b. stop                      c. continue                      d. mind
- She lived alone and got depressed. The antonym of "depressed" is  
 a. cheerful                      b. sad                      c. interesting                      d. disappointed

**Prefixes & Suffixes**

- We turn the adjective "clear" into an adverb by adding the suffix  
 a. -er                      b. -ous                      c. -ly                      d. -ed
- We can use the suffix ..... to turn the verb "help" into an adjective  
 a. -ous                      b. -ly                      c. -er                      d. -ful



10. The suffix ..... turns the verb "depress" into an adjective.  
 a. -ed                      b. -ly                      c. -ous                      d. -ion

### Guessing the meaning

11. This lesson is easy to understand. This means the lesson is .....  
 a. clean                      b. hard                      c. difficult                      d. clear
12. Mr Adel encourages his students to continue speaking. This means Mr Adel encourages his students to ..... speaking.  
 a. cope with                      b. go on                      c. meet up with                      d. interrupt
13. Mustafa looks interested while I am speaking. This means he is .....  
 a. a bad listener                      b. unhappy                      c. a good listener                      d. unhelpful

## Speaking

### 1) Showing good listening skills

- لتكون مستمع جيد للآخرين، عليك اتباع الآتي:  
 لا تخبرهم ماذا يفعلون.  
 اعطهم النصيحة فقط إذا طلبوها.  
 استمع دون أن تقاطعهم.  
 اهتم بما يقولون.  
 Ask questions to make sure you really understand the problem.  
 وجه أسئلة لتتأكد أنك حقاً تتفهم المشكلة.  
 Show that you are listening.  
 بين أنك تستمع.  
 Tell them everything is OK and their problem isn't serious.  
 أخبرهم بأن كل شيء على ما يرام وأن مشكلتهم ليست بالخطيرة.  
 Try to help them explain their feelings more clearly.  
 حاول أن تساعدكم على تفسير مشاعرهم بوضوح أكثر.

### 2) Speakers' expressions to show they are listening

- تعبيرات للمتحدثين تبين أنهم يسمعون  
 - يستخدم المتحدث الكلمات والتعبيرات الملونة ليبين أنه يسمع:  
 - Tell me about it. What happened?  
 - Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know.  
 - I see. What makes you say that?  
 - It's clear you are unhappy about it.  
 - Can you give me an example of what you mean?  
 - That must make you feel very sad.

## General Exercises

### on Lessons 5 & 6

### 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Jana is talking to her mother about a terrible day at school.

Mother : Why do you look unhappy, Jana?

Jana : 1. ....

Mother : 2. ....

Jana : It was my English class. You see. .... What happened?

Mother : 3. ....

Jana : We had a difficult test and I was the last in the class! It might help to talk about it, you know.

Mother : 4. ....

Jana : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write. .... ?

Mother : 5. ....

Jana : OK! I'll talk to my teacher. .... ?

### 2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

understanding - listened - able - listener - interrupted - ability

My teacher is a good 1. .... I talked to him about a problem and he never  
 2. .... me. He was very 3. .... He has the 4. .... to solve any  
 problem.

### 3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be ..... is to be sad and feel that you cannot enjoy anything.  
 a. cheerful                      b. happy                      c. depressed                      d. glad
2. I decided to ..... up with my cousins next Friday. We're going to the park.  
 a. say                      b. meet                      c. listen                      d. cope
3. We can get the noun for a person from the verb "listen" by adding the suffix  
 .....  
 a. -ing                      b. -er                      c. -or                      d. -ed



4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of your advice to solve your friend's problem".

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

## Review

## Key Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	secret	سر	mind (n) (ed)	العقل / يمانع
lonely	شاعر بالوحدة	appearance	المظهر	negative	سلبي
positive	إيجابي	anxious	قلق / متوتر	understanding	متفهم
upset	مزعج / متضايق	billion	مليار (الف مليون)	meet up with	يلتقي / يتقابل مع
breathing	عملية التنفس	feelings	مشاعر	support (ed)	يدعم
abilities	قدرات	an example	مثال	report (ed)	يبلغ عن / يحذر عن
social life	حياة اجتماعية	angry	غاضب	include (d)	يشمل / ينضم / يضم
teenager = teen	مرافق	skills	مهارات	joke (d) (n)	مزح - مزاح - نكتة
embarrassed	مذرج	mindful	منبه / يقظ	breathe (d)	يتنفس
mental health	الصحة العقلية / النفسية	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	relax (ed)	يستريح
mindfulness	التركيز الذهني / البقطة	cyberbullying	التنمر الإلكتروني	listen (ed)	يستمع إلى
school work	أعمال مدرسية	Go on	استمر في / تابع (الحديث)	cyberbully (ied)	يتنمر عبر الإنترنت
similar interests	اهتمامات متشابهة	good listener	مستمع جيد	interrupt (ed)	يقاطع
		clear	واضح	cope with	يتعامل مع - يتغلب على

## Language

## 1. must

• تستخدم بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء في المضارع وهنا يعبر المتحدث عن ضرورة تابعة من المشاعر والرغبات الخاصة به.

يجب أن + must + inf. (كل الضمائر)

Ex. I must be friends with good students.

## 2. mustn't

• تستخدم بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهي أو التحريم.

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Who has a problem?
- What was his/ her problem?
- What's your advice to him / her?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- ..... has a problem.
- The problem is .....
- My advice to him / her is .....



يجب ألا Subject (كل الضمائر) + mustn't + inf.

Ex. You **mustn't** make noise in the library.

### 3. have to / has to

• تستخدم بمعنى (الابد أن/ من الضروري أن) عندما نتحدث عن قواعد أو أمور مفروضة علينا ولا خيار لنا فيها أو من الضروري فعلها في المضارع:

I / We / You / They اسم جمع → have to + inf.  
He / She / It اسم مفرد → has to + inf.

Ex. We **have to** get a licence to drive a car.

### 4. don't / doesn't have to

• تستخدم بمعنى (ليس من الضروري أن) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع:

I / We / You / They اسم جمع + don't have to + inf.  
He / She / It اسم مفرد + doesn't have to + inf.

Ex. Ola **doesn't have to** do the housework. Her mother has done it.

### 5. should / shouldn't

• تستخدم **should / shouldn't** لإعطاء النصيحة أو التحدث عن أشياء ينبغي أو لا ينبغي أن تفعلها. ودائمًا ما يأتي بعدهما مصدر الفعل:

ينبغي أن Subject + should + inf.

Ex. You **should** do more exercises.

ينبغي ألا Subject + shouldn't + inf.

Ex. You **shouldn't** be friends with bad students.

### 6. might (be) / might not (be)

• تستخدم **might (not) + inf** عندما نكون غير متأكدين من حدوث شيء ما في المضارع.

Ex. I **might** go to the stadium, but I'm unsure.

### 7. had to

• تستخدم بمعنى (اضطر إلي/ كان من الضروري أن) عندما نتحدث عن أمور كانت مفروضة علينا أو كان من الضروري فعلها في الماضي:

subject (كل الضمائر) + had to + inf.

Ex. I **had to** do my homework yesterday.

• تستخدم الصيغة الآتية بمعنى (لم يكن من الضروري أن) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي:

subject (كل الضمائر) + didn't have to + inf.

Ex. I **didn't have to** drink much coffee last night.

### 8. was / were (not) able to - could / couldn't

• للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + was / were able to + inf.

Ex. I **was able to** carry the heavy box.

فاعل + could + inf.

Ex. I **could** win running races when I was young.

• للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في الماضي نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + (was / were) not able to + inf.

Ex. I **wasn't able to** come to your wedding because I was abroad.

فاعل + could not (couldn't) + inf.

Ex. My little brother **couldn't** walk until he was about three.

## Speaking

### 1) Being still good friends with someone

الإبقاء على صداقة قوية مع شخص ما

- للسؤال والإجابة عن قوة الصداقة بين الأشخاص نقول:

A: Do you think that ..... is still good friends with.....?

B: Yes, I think so. / No, I don't think so.

A: Do you think that ..... is a good friend? Why / Why not?

B: Yes, I think so. He never cyberbullies other students.

No, I don't think so. He always cyberbullies other students.

### 2) Talking about mindfulness

الحديث عن التركيز الذهني

#### Question

- Would you like to try mindfulness? Why?

- How do you think mindfulness could help you?

- How can you find happiness in a simple thing like eating your favourite food?

#### Answer

- Yes, because it helps me to understand my feelings, and try to turn them into something positive.

- In mindfulness, I can learn how to find happiness in simple things.

- I can think about how it tastes, smells and looks.

### 3) Showing good listening skills

لتكون مستمع جيد للأخرين، عليك اتباع الآتي:

- Don't tell them what to do.
- Give them advice but only if they ask for it.
- Listen without interrupting them.
- Look interested in what they are saying.
- Ask questions to make sure you really understand the problem.
- Show that you are listening.
- Tell them everything is OK and their problem isn't serious.
- Try to help them explain their feelings more clearly.



### 4 Speakers' expressions to show they are listening

تعبيرات للمتحدثين تبين أنهم يسمعون

- يستخدم المتحدث الكلمات والتعبيرات الملونة ليبين أنه يسمع:

- Tell me about it. What happened?
- Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know.
- I see. What makes you say that?
- It's clear you are unhappy about it.
- Can you give me an example of what you mean?
- That must make you feel very sad.

## General Exercises on Unit 6

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mazin is talking to his mother who is a good listener.

Mazin : I had a terrible day at school.

Mother: Tell me about it. 1 .....

Mazin : It was my English class. You see ...

Mother: 2 ..... It might help to talk about it, you know.

Mazin : We had a test and I was last in the class!

Mother: 3 .....

Mazin : Yes, I'm very sad. But it was so difficult.

Mother: Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Mazin : 4 .....

Mother: 5 ..... ?

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

#### 1 clearly - shouldn't - should - listening - interrupt - listener

To be a good 1 ....., you should listen to the speaker carefully. You shouldn't 2 ..... anyone when they are talking. You 3 ..... give them advice but only if they ask for it. Also, try to help them explain their feelings more 4 .....

#### 2 had to - must - kind - positive - negative - rules

Longman

Our parents usually ask us to be good to others. We should be 1 ..... to our friends. We 2 ..... cooperate with them to do school projects. We should exchange 3 ..... ideas with our classmates. We must follow school

4 .....

### 3 available - password - bully - must - mustn't - cyberbully

General Exercises

Longman

There are some tips to follow when using the internet. You 1 ..... be careful when you use the internet. Don't tell others your 2 ..... Respect others and never 3 ..... anyone. Don't use all 4 ..... websites; only use the ones you trust

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... means showing that you understand a person's situation. WB  
a. Cyberbullying    b. Secret    c. Understanding    d. Appearance
- To ..... means to allow or want someone or something to be part of something.  
a. exclude    b. apologise    c. improve    d. include
- Khaled always gets anxious about his exams. The word "anxious" is a synonym of .....  
a. calm    b. nervous    c. quiet    d. relaxed
- This letter is written in clear English. The word "clear" is the same meaning as .....  
a. unhappy    b. unclear    c. obvious    d. serious
- The rain will go on in the evening. The verb "go on" is an antonym of .....  
a. continue    b. keep on    c. stop    d. last
- The verb "support" is an opposite of .....  
a. encourage    b. help    c. discourage    d. develop
- The suffix ..... turns the noun "mind" into an adjective.  
a. -ous    b. -able    c. -ful    d. -ly
- The prefix "mis-" in the word "mistake" means .....  
a. public    b. right    c. wide    d. wrong
- We add the prefix ..... to refer to the internet.  
a. trans-    b. super-    c. cyber-    d. tech-
- We add the prefix ..... to give the opposite of the adjective "happy".  
a. in-    b. dis-    c. en-    d. un-
- My parents always ..... me to get high marks.  
a. introduce    b. encourage    c. provide    d. protect
- Taher is unhappy because he failed his exams. This means Taher is .....  
a. happy    b. upset    c. positive    d. pleased







**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What are social media?
2. How can social media help businesses?
3. Why do people use social media?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Social media have made a great ..... in our lives.  
a. charge      b. change      c. page      d. cage
5. Social media have become an ..... way of the human lifestyle.  
a. important      b. bad      c. unimportant      d. sad

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:****A Vocabulary****SB & WB Exercises**

1. I feel ..... about my terrible haircut.  
a. achieved      b. suggested      c. behaved      d. embarrassed
2. For me, exams are a problem. I get very ..... about them.  
a. positive      b. helpful      c. anxious      d. understanding
3. The unkind text messages made her feel really .....  
a. happy      b. upset      c. social      d. common
4. You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a/an ..... thing.  
a. positive      b. anxious      c. negative      d. unkind
5. .... life is the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people.  
a. Social      b. Negative      c. Worried      d. Cyberbullying
6. Go ..... It might help to talk about it, you know.  
a. up      b. into      c. in      d. on
7. I decided to ..... with my cousins next Friday. We're going to the park.  
a. cope      b. meet up      c. match up      d. help
8. It's ..... to me that Ahmed is very good at running. He is so fast!  
a. clean      b. fast      c. clear      d. serious
9. Although Reem's brother is only five, Reem always ..... him in her games  
a. includes      b. contains      c. applies      d. consists
10. The review of the book has nothing ..... to say about it. It sounds great!  
a. positive      b. expensive      c. active      d. negative

**Al Azhar Exercises**

11. You must tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to ..... you online.  
a. cyberbully      b. joke      c. breathe      d. improve
12. She has no friends. So she always feels .....  
a. lonely      b. interesting      c. tired      d. exciting
13. My grandmother is very ..... she always knows how I feel.  
a. understanding      b. positive      c. upset      d. embarrassed
14. The review of the book has nothing ..... to say about it. It sounds great!  
a. positive      b. useful      c. negative      d. awesome
15. Young children are not good listeners because they often ..... I .....  
a. think      b. interrupt      c. study      d. listen

**Longman Exercises**

16. A/An ..... is a person aged between 13 and 19 years.  
a. old man      b. baby      c. adult      d. teenager
17. What is the ..... for his sudden anger?  
a. rule      b. result      c. role      d. reason
18. I hope the test will be easy. - Don't worry, it's really .....  
a. complicated      b. fast      c. simple      d. long
19. In the hotel, no one stayed with me in my room; I stayed .....  
a. alone      b. only      c. lonely      d. together
20. I'm sad because I ..... badly at school.  
a. made      b. did      c. believed      d. happened
21. Sport is our daily activity. "Daily" here is similar in meaning to ".....".  
a. every day      b. day      c. everyday      d. urgent
22. I used to ..... a lot of sports when I was young.  
a. relieve      b. think      c. make      d. do
23. Children don't like scary films. "Scary" here means ".....".  
a. frightening      b. safe      c. frightened      d. quiet
24. Come and meet Faten. It's my pleasure to ..... her to you.  
a. see      b. know      c. introduce      d. produce
25. Sami isn't able to ..... with new habits easily.  
a. cope      b. admire      c. avoid      d. quarrel
26. Always be patient and don't ..... hope.  
a. loose      b. lose      c. remember      d. disappear
27. I'm not serious; I'm just .....  
a. jotting      b. joking      c. cheating      d. sharing
28. I can't ..... you in the game because you are still young.  
a. contain      b. dismiss      c. think      d. include



29. You should go to bed early; don't ..... late.  
a. make up      b. leave for      c. look for      d. stay up
30. I want to ..... my language skills. I need to make them better.  
a. delete      b. improve      c. move      d. weaken
31. He ..... that he was mistaken when he had thought about his behaviour again.  
a. realised      b. recognised      c. appeared      d. told

### Bit by Bit Exercises

32. I congratulated Ahmed on the great .....  
a. secret      b. achievement      c. problem      d. disappointment
33. .... is when you say unkind or cruel things about someone online  
a. Embarrassing      b. Disappointing      c. Supporting      d. Cyberbullying
34. Facebook and other social ..... are used by many people.  
a. media      b. model      c. medal      d. mood
35. Mr Mahmoud is a good ..... and he is very understanding.  
a. poster      b. baker      c. member      d. listener
36. I asked dad to ..... me some advice about my future.  
a. trust      b. keep      c. help      d. give
37. The patient began to ..... again normally.  
a. breath      b. breathe      c. breathing      d. breathed
38. This school introduces ..... as a part of the timetable.  
a. carelessness      b. mindfulness      c. comment      d. cyberbullying

### B Language

#### SB & WB Exercises

39. I ..... understand the film because it was in a language I don't understand.  
a. could      b. couldn't      c. was able to      d. wasn't able
40. Hana lost her ticket to the concert, but luckily, she ..... to buy another one that evening.  
a. couldn't      b. wasn't able      c. was able      d. able
41. Hazem is really tired this morning. He ..... stay up late last night to revise for a maths test.  
a. have to      b. had to      c. can      d. was able
42. I ..... go to the stadium, but I'm unsure.  
a. have to      b. might      c. should      d. must

43. It was very windy, so planes ..... to leave the airport.  
a. could      b. were able      c. were not able      d. was able
44. Tarek is worried because he ..... do badly in his exams.  
a. must      b. has to      c. might      d. have to
45. I'll tell you a secret, but you ..... tell anyone.  
a. mustn't      b. don't have to      c. might not      d. must
46. You ..... know the password before you can use that computer.  
a. might      b. should      c. must      d. has to
47. I ..... get up early tomorrow, because it is a holiday!  
a. don't have to      b. shouldn't      c. mustn't      d. doesn't have to
48. My father ..... go to work at 6 am tomorrow, for a meeting.  
a. might      b. has to      c. should      d. have to

### Bit by Bit Exercises

49. He ..... walk home. I gave him a drive.  
a. don't have to      b. had to      c. could      d. didn't have to
50. You ..... get a passport to travel abroad.  
a. has to      b. must      c. should      d. might
51. You ..... wear a school uniform. it's one of the school rules.  
a. have to      b. might      c. should      d. are
52. There is a knock طرقة on the door. It ..... be Hala, but I'm not sure.  
a. might      b. should      c. mustn't      d. has to

### 5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"School rules"

مكتبة عامة في المدرسة



# Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

## 1- A review of what I must or mustn't do at school (Lessons 1 & 2)

My name is Hossam. There are many rules in my school! We mustn't listen to music. We mustn't run in the corridors. We mustn't eat in the classroom. We mustn't take our smartphones to school. But we must arrive at school on time. We must wear a uniform. We must listen to our teachers. We must be polite. We must do our homework. If we break the school rules, we are punished.

## 2- A short story about a mistake I made (Lessons 3 & 4)

One day, my friends and I suggested that we cyberbully a boy in my class. So I wrote an unkind comment about him on social media. I didn't realise that my friends were joking, I was the only one to do that. I was so embarrassed about what I did. I said sorry to my friend the next day. He was very kind and accepted my apology. I think I have learnt a lot from this lesson.

## 3- A review of my advice to solve my friend's problem (Lessons 5 & 6)

My friend Mustafa has a problem. He makes friends with people he doesn't know. This is my advice to you and him. Your friends shouldn't tell anyone your secret. You should tell your parents or teachers what you have done. However, you don't have to see this as

a negative thing. You should talk to them and tell them how you feel. They might be more understanding than you think. You should join a club to meet people with similar interests. You don't have to belong to only one group of friends.

## 4- A review of teenagers' problems (General Exercises)

Teenagers usually face a number of problems. They usually get worried about their exams. They don't want to disappoint their parents. They find it difficult to study some subjects. They try to be careful about who they should make friends with. Teenagers usually have different opinions about things, too. That makes some of them feel lonely. Teenagers should know how to cope with their problems. They should try to meet up with each other. They should ask their parents or teachers for advice.

## 5- A review about ways to relax (Test)

It's important to find time to relax. Relaxing can help keep both your body and mind healthy. It helps you forget about the everyday problems that you face. Try to find ways to relax. This is good for your mental health. It's important to be friends with good people. You should meet up with them from time to time. You can join a sports club and practise a sport. You can go on holiday away from hard work from time to time. It is advisable to relax and enjoy your life.



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue

2022

You have just moved to another country and you have a problem.  
Teacher : Are you fine?

You : ① .....

Teacher : ② .....

You : I'm so embarrassed. ③ .....

Teacher : Don't worry. I can give you advice.

You : ④ .....

Teacher : You can practise English with me daily.

You : Really! ⑤ .....

Teacher : You can listen to English much more.

You : That's good. Thank you.

What else?

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Longman

Mindfulness - have - mindful - Cyberbullying - social - has

① ..... is a negative thing that happens online. We ② ..... to be careful when we use ③ ..... media. Some people can disappoint you. You must be ④ ..... You mustn't let anyone cyberbully you.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our world has become a small village because of many reasons. Means of communication have developed greatly. Means of transport have also developed. Another reason is that science develops every second. Now people can communicate using social media like Facebook, WhatsApp and Instagram.

The way we live has become different because of the new means of communications that are available now. We can call our friend in any part of the world in seconds. We can send messages to anyone all over the world with just a single click on the buttons or just by a very simple and a single touch. We can also travel to any part of the world in a short time. These means save both time and effort.



### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
a. social media    b. messages    c. Facebook    d. the world
- Means of communication and transport made our life .....  
a. harder    b. easier    c. mysterious    d. cruel
- ..... is an example of social media.  
a. A book    b. A pen    c. Facebook    d. Sport

### B. Answer the following questions:

- Why are means of communication and transport important?  
.....
- How can people communicate now?  
.....
- Give a suitable title to the passage.  
.....

### C Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To ..... means to help and encourage someone.  
a. receive    b. support    c. fail    d. disappoint
- Writing bad comments online is a form of .....  
a. Cyberbullying    b. Mindfulness    c. Happiness    d. Brightness
- The brothers look very similar. The verb "similar" is the opposite of .....  
a. as    b. like    c. different    d. alike
- We add the prefix ..... to the adjective "helpful" to get the opposite.  
a. in-    b. dis-    c. en-    d. un-
- I haven't received the exam yet. This means I'm very .....  
a. sleepy    b. calm    c. rude    d. worried
- They are able to solve teenagers' problems. This means they know how to ..... their problems.  
a. meet up with    b. interrupt    c. go on    d. cope with

WB

نور سعيد 2023

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I tried to go into the building, but the door was locked and I (not able) open it.
- You ..... (must) play with matches, Waleed.
- She ..... (could to) cook well when she was young.
- My father ..... (can't) buy this expensive car last year.
- The cat wasn't able ..... (catch) the bird.

SB

### D Writing

#### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of ways to relax"

محتاج منه قبل الاختبار

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What is today's life full of?
- What can you do to avoid worries and stress?
- How can relaxing help you?
- How can you relax?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Today's life is full of .....
- Relaxing can help you .....
- Relaxing is good for your .....
- You should meet up with .....



# Review B

SB pages 64-65 WB pages 116-117

## Key Vocabulary

list	قائمة	female	أنثى - أنثوي
swimming club	نادي للسباحة	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كاليمنجارو
national	محلّي / قومي	writing competition	مسابقة في الكتابة
equal	متساوي - عادل	train station	محطة قطار
opportunity	فرصة	organize (d)	ينظم
busy life	حياة مزدحمة بالعمل	support (ed) (n)	يدعم - دعم
Paralympics	الألعاب البارالمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	train (ed)	يتدرب - يدرب

استمع إلى المفردات



## Reading

SB page (64)

Aya Ayman Abbas is a young Egyptian **Paralympic**<sup>(1)</sup> swimmer<sup>(2)</sup> with an incredible list of achievements. She was born in Cairo and she joined a swimming club when she was six. She couldn't walk, but at the age of eight, she was already swimming in **national**<sup>(3)</sup> competitions. When she was 16, Aya became the first and **youngest**<sup>(4)</sup> Egyptian swimmer to enter the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games.

Aya had to face many challenges in her life. When she first started swimming, there weren't any swimming teams or **equal**<sup>(5)</sup> **opportunities**<sup>(6)</sup> for disabled people. Aya was able to achieve her goals with the support of her parents. However, since that time, life has become a lot more positive for young disabled athletes.

Aya is now a member of the Egyptian Paralympic team. Although she has a **busy life**<sup>(7)</sup> as a university student, she is also a campaigner for disabled sports people. She hasn't stopped training since her last event. She is a true role model to all Egyptians!



- ١- من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
- ٢- سباح
- ٣- محلّي / قومي
- ٤- الأصغر سنًا
- ٥- متساوي - عادل
- ٦- فرص
- ٧- حياة مزدحمة بالعمل

استمع إلى النصوص



WB Page (116)

Police in Australia found a man who was lost in the desert for 18 days. Robert Webber, who is 58, has driven from his hotel in the morning of January 2<sup>nd</sup>. He was not able to move his car after he went down a small **farm road**<sup>(1)</sup>. He tried to **walk back**<sup>(2)</sup> to his hotel, but he couldn't remember the way. For many days, Robert had to drink water from rivers and eat what food he could find. Nearly three weeks later, a man has found Robert sitting under a tree. He was tired but well.

- ١- طريق زراعي
- ٢- يسير عائداً

## Review B

"Robert has already drunk lots of water and feels better now, but he hasn't slept much yet," said a police officer. "Remember that you must tell people when you drive somewhere in the desert," he said. "You don't have to drive along small roads either. They are not always safe."



## Audioscript

SB Page (64)

### Conversation: 1

**Ola** : What's wrong, Lina? Has something bad happened? You look really unhappy.

**Lina** : It's nothing. I'm just a bit anxious, that's all.

**Ola** : Tell me about it. What are you anxious about?

**Lina** : Well, you know it's the national maths competition soon.

**Ola** : Yes. Go on.

**Lina** : I've revised for it since the beginning of the year, and my parents think I will do very well. But I'm worried that I'm going to do very badly and that my parents will be disappointed.

**Ola** : I see. Would it help to talk to the maths teacher? Perhaps she could help you revise some of the things you are less positive about.

**Lina** : Yes, I could do that. That's a good idea, Ola, thanks.

### Conversation 2

**Hany** : Hi, Tamer! I haven't seen you for a long time. Are you OK?

**Tamer** : Well...

**Hany** : I can see there's a problem. Why don't you tell me about it?

**Tamer** : I'm too embarrassed to talk about it Hany. I'm afraid I've done something wrong.

**Hany** : Go on ... maybe it will help to talk to someone else about it.

**Tamer** : One of my school friends told me a secret, and I told someone else. That was wrong. He's really angry with me now, and I can understand why.

**Hany** : I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very sad for you both. Is there anything you can do?

**Tamer** : I've tried to say I'm sorry, but he doesn't want to talk to me. He hasn't spoken to me since it happened.

**Hany** : You could try sending him an email? It's often easier to write about how you feel than to talk about it.

**Tamer** : Yes, you might be right ... thanks Hany. I think I'll try that.





## Conversation 1

**Wael** : Hi Ziad. Has the bus arrived yet?

**Ziad** : No, it hasn't. Wael.

**Wael** : How long have you been here?

**Ziad** : I've been here for twenty minutes.

**Wael** : The bus is very late. Shall we walk?

**Ziad** : Good idea.

## Conversation 2

**Nawal** : Hi Marwa. How are you?

**Marwa** : Hi Nawal I'm tired! I've not slept for hours.

**Nawal** : Have you arrived at the hotel yet?

**Marwa** : No! We've already flown for eight hours, but now we have to take a train.

**Nawal** : So you're at the train station?

**Marwa** : No, we haven't left the airport yet.

## Conversation 3

**Mother** : Hi, Hisham. Have you done well?

**Hisham** : Hi, Mum. Yes, I think I was second.

**Mother** : Well done! What an amazing achievement! Have you got a medal?

**Hisham** : No, they haven't told us who has won yet. I might be first!

**Mother** : I'm really happy for you. You did really well.

**Test** on units 4, 5 & 6**A** Language Functions

## ① Finish the following dialogue:

Amira tries to find a solution for Nada's problem

**Nada** : I've got a problem.

**Amira** : Tell me about it. ①

**Nada** : One of my school friends told me a secret, and I told someone else. ?

**Amira** : ②

**Nada** : She's really angry with me now. ?

**Amira** : I'm sorry to hear that. ③

**Nada** : I've tried to say I'm sorry, but she doesn't want to talk to me.

**Amira** : ④

**Nada** : It's a good idea. I'll try sending her an e-mail today. Thank you.

**Amira** : ⑤

**B** Reading Comprehension

## ② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

kitchen - present - use - with - on - used

I bought this kettle as a ① ..... for my parents. They are very happy ② ..... it. It looks great in their ③ ..... and it's easy to ④ ..... It also makes a really delicious cup of coffee. The delivery was quick too!

## ③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

The famous saying "knowledge is power" was said by Francis Bacon. This saying means that knowledge is really the most powerful. Knowledge is the difference that prefers man to animals. Human beings are said to be the most powerful creatures because of the power of knowledge.

Knowledge plays an important role in our lives and lets us know the ways to solve problems. Although money is important, nothing is more powerful than knowledge. However, money cannot buy knowledge. Knowledge can only be achieved through hard working and continuous practice.

Knowledge helps us improve our life. We need to share our knowledge with others for the development of the others. So, we can say that knowledge is a way to success and happiness.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
a. animals      b. Bacon      c. power      d. knowledge
- We need to ..... our knowledge with others.  
a. like      b. share      c. post      d. comment
- We are powerful ..... because of the power of knowledge.  
a. creatures      b. animals      c. ways      d. tools

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Who said the famous saying 'knowledge is power'?

5. Infer from the text what this saying means.

6. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

### **C Vocabulary and Structure**

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A / An ..... is someone who works with science.  
a. artist      b. scientist      c. musician      d. champion
- To ..... means to succeed in doing something good or that you want to do.  
a. achieve      b. discover      c. train      d. spell
- My grandfather likes to tell us about his incredible experiences when he lived in the desert. The synonym of "incredible" is .....  
a. believable      b. acceptable      c. able      d. unbelievable
- To get the adjective from "surprise", we add the suffix .....  
a. -d      b. -ous      c. -al      d. -able
- Yesterday, I called my teacher 'Dad' and everyone laughed. I felt very .....!  
a. joking      b. embarrassed      c. understanding      d. positive
- Many people were at the stadium watching the match. This means there were many .....  
a. spectators      b. organisers      c. finals      d. teams

- Test
- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
- I have entered this competition ..... (since) many years. for another one that evening
  - Hana lost her ticket to the concert, but luckily, she ..... (could) to buy
  - Maggy ..... (has) completed her university degree yet. hasn't
  - Drivers ..... (must) go fast on this road. It's against the law. mustn't
  - Munir ..... (has to) finish his science homework last night. had to

### **D Writing**

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of your role model"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Who is your role model?
- Why are you proud of him/her?
- What has he/she achieved?
- Would you like to be like him/her? Why?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- ..... is my role model.
- I'm proud of him/ her because.....
- He/She has achieved.....
- I'd like to be like him/her because.....



## Check your English

### 1. Complete the questions with these words:

- |            |            |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. mustn't | 2. if      | 3. how to   |
| 4. located | 5. used to | 6. a lot of |
| 7. which   | 8. quietly |             |

### 2. Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers.

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| a. 7 | e. 8 | b. 5 | f. 6 |
| c. 1 | g. 2 | d. 4 | h. 3 |

### 4. Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences.

- As we were walking into the museum. We saw lots of old statues.
- My sister bought a pretty, new cotton dress.
- Tarek, wants the blue shoes, but I prefer the brown ones.
- Look at those dark clouds! I think it is going to rain soon.
- Hundreds of fish are caught by the fishermen every week.

### 5. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- a. describing a photo
- c. asking for information on the phone
- d. saying how to make an omelette
- b. inviting Leila to her house
- d. buys a blue dress

### 6. Read the text, then answer the questions.

- They are made of a special material that does not burn.
- They stop them from becoming ill.
- They often wear hats and big boots.
- They wear them to stop them from being hurt if something falls on them.
- Suggested: nurses, to stop them becoming ill, police officers and soldiers, to protect them in their job, cooks usually wear white, so they can see if their clothes are not clean.

### 7. Write in your notebook about a person with a great job.

Students' own answers.

## SB Answers

### Unit 1

#### Page 2

### 1 Read where some places are.

- |                  |            |
|------------------|------------|
| 1. sports centre | 2. bank    |
| 3. café          | 4. library |
| 5. restaurant    |            |

### 2 Look through the unit. How many people live in Ismailia?

- 350,000 people

#### Page 3

### 1 Dalia wants to go to the library.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| a. 4 | b. 2 | c. 1 |
| d. 3 | e. 5 | f. 6 |

### 2 Match the phrases from Exercise 1 to the pictures.

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. b. turn left                         | 2. f. It's on the corner |
| 3. c. go straight on                    | 4. a. turn right         |
| 5. e. take the second road on the right |                          |
| 6. d. walk past the.                    |                          |

### 3 Look at the map on page 2. Samir is at the sports centre.

- |                |          |          |           |
|----------------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. straight on | 2. right | 3. right | 4. corner |
|----------------|----------|----------|-----------|

#### Page 4

### 1 Read about Ismailia and put the photos in the correct order.

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. e | 2. b | 3. a | 4. d | 5. c |
|------|------|------|------|------|

### 2 Read the text again and complete the fact file.

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. Port Said, Suez | 2. attractive |
|--------------------|---------------|

- |                                    |                  |
|------------------------------------|------------------|
| 3. interesting                     | 4. about 350,000 |
| 5. gardens, sports centre, museums |                  |
| 6. tennis, swimming                |                  |
| 7. lake Timsah                     |                  |

#### Page 5

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. on | 2. at | 3. at |
| 4. in | 5. on | 6. in |

### 6 Listen to Nader and Judy talking about where they live.

- F, it's a modern city too.
- T
- F, she likes going to a famous market.
- T
- F, there are lots of things to do.

### 7 Listen again and complete the sentences.

- |                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 1. Friday afternoon  | 2. aquarium |
| 3. Saturdays         | 4. mornings |
| 5. botanical gardens | 6. in       |

#### Page 6

### 1 Look at the information in the poster and metro map on the phone. Match to make sentences.

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a |
|------|------|

### 2 Look at the information again and answer the questions.

- It's at the Science Museum.
- It's on Saturday 30th September.
- They need to go to Museum Station.
- The journey by metro takes ten minutes.
- There are four stops by metro.

### 3 Khaled is going to the Space Exhibition from City University. Use the information from Exercise 1 to complete the chat with Fawzi.

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1. 9.30 | 2. 8.30 |
| 3. 2 pm | 4. 1.25 |

## SB / WB Answers

### Page 7

### 4 Complete the questions and sentences.

- |                 |          |
|-----------------|----------|
| 1. does, start  | 2. opens |
| 3. leaves       | 4. ends  |
| 5. does, arrive |          |

### 5 Imagine that you are in Cairo. Look at the timetables and answer the questions.

- |                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 11.30                    | 2. Platform 7                 |
| 3. 9.15                     | 4. 22.45 / quarter to eleven. |
| 5. You need the Aswan train |                               |
| 6. 9 ½ hours                | 7. Platform 6                 |

### 6 Listen to Nadia and her mother. Where are they?

They are at a station.

### 7 Listen again and answer the questions.

- |               |               |          |
|---------------|---------------|----------|
| 1. Tanta      | 2. 11.30      | 3. 13:00 |
| 4. Alexandria | 5. Platform 7 |          |

#### Page 8

### 2 Read the texts and answer the question.

- She likes looking out of the window.
- More than 800 million.
- She visits her grandparents.
- She likes to travel by tram.
- They use electricity / They are electric.
- They have two floors.

### 3 Read the texts again. Write the types of transport.

- |          |          |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. train | 2. train | 3. tram |
| 4. tram  | 5. tram  |         |

#### Page 9

### 1 Listen to the conversation.

Sports centre: He hurt his leg so he can't play sport.

The park: It's a long way to walk.

The museum: It's always busy on Saturdays.

### 2 Choose the correct words.

- |                   |            |          |
|-------------------|------------|----------|
| 1. Would          | 2. I'm not | 3. Shall |
| 4. I'd prefer     | 5. How     | 6. would |
| 7. don't you come | 8. love    |          |



## SB / WB Answers

- 3 Look at the phrases in Exercise 2 and answer the questions.

- 1 I'd love to
- 2 I'm not sure.
- 3 I'd prefer to
- 4 Shall we ...

### Page 10

- 1 Look at the brochure and find the following information.

- 1 It protects important plants and trees, it shows plants, trees and flowers that grow nowhere else in Egypt.
- 2 Khedive Ismail asked a famous French gardener to plant a forest in the nineteenth century, the Orman Garden became famous in 1910.
- 3 El-Dokki Street, Giza.

- 2 Read the email from Reem. What is Reem sending to Azza?

- 2 She is sending a map of El-Orman Garden

- 3 Read the email again and answer the questions.

- 1 It opens at 9 am.
- 2 It takes about an hour to get there by car.
- 3 They should wear comfortable shoes because the garden is very big and there is lots to see.
- 4 She could bring some food with her.
- 5 Reem can buy pottery and jewellery.

### Page 11

- 1 Match the words to the photos.

- 1 metro
- 2 ferry
- 3 tram
- 4 exhibition
- 5 platform

- 2 Look at the map. Where do these directions take you?

- 1 sports centre
- 2 café

## WB Answers

### Page 72

- 1 Match the places with what you can do there.

- 1 a
- 2 a
- 3 e
- 4 b
- 5 c

- 2 Now write sentences to say what you can do at these places.

1. You can have something to eat and drink.
2. You can catch a bus.

- 3 Look at the map and complete the sentences.

1. opposite
2. next to
3. between
4. corner

- 4 Use the map to answer these questions and give directions.

1. From the market, turn left and go straight on. Take the second road on the right. Go straight ahead. The bank is on the left, opposite the aquarium.
2. Go out of the sports centre and make sure it's to your left. Go straight on past the aquarium. Turn right and go straight on past the train station. The shopping centre is on the right opposite the station.
3. Go out of the restaurant. Make sure the restaurant is on your right. Go straight on. Turn right past the hospital before you reach the museum. Turn right and go straight on, the library is on the left opposite the sports centre.

### Page 73

- 1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. d
2. e
3. a
4. b
5. c

- 2 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. lake
2. peaceful
3. especially
4. traffic
5. monument

- 3 We often make adjectives by adding -ful to a noun. Complete the sentences with the correct form of these nouns.

1. peaceful
2. helpful
3. useful
4. careful

- 4 Choose the correct prepositions.

1. in
2. At
3. On
4. at
5. At
6. in

### Page 74

- 1 Complete the crossword.

1. platform
2. timetable
3. map
4. metro
5. exhibition

- 2 Listen and choose the correct words.

1. is
2. leaves
3. stops
4. doesn't
5. arrives

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. does, leave
2. leaves
3. is
4. leaves
5. does, arrive
6. takes
7. arrives

### Page 75

- 1 Answer the questions.

1. between two mountains.
2. It takes people across water.
3. A passenger travels in a car.
4. It uses rails like a railway.
5. It is nice to sit on.

- 2 Match the words with the opposite meaning.

1. f
2. c
3. a
4. e
5. d
6. b

- 3 Complete the text with these words.

1. comfortable
2. fast
3. peaceful
4. easy
5. interesting

### Page 76

- 1 Match to make questions and answers.

1. b
2. e
3. h
4. g
5. a
6. d
7. c
8. f

- 2 Put the dialogue into the correct order. Then listen and check.

1. d
2. g
3. c
4. b
5. f
6. e
7. a

### Page 77

- 1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. indoors
2. century
3. pottery
4. jewellery

## SB / WB Answers

- 2 Read the email reply to an invitation. Write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.

1. c
2. a
3. b

- 3 In Munir's email, he replied to four questions that Hazem wrote in his invitation.

1. Would you like to come to the lake with me?
2. Do you have some/any comfortable shoes?
3. Should we walk first or take a boat on the lake?
4. Can you bring some lunch for us?

### Page 78

- 1 Complete the table with these words. Can you add any words?

in a town	in a station	forms of transport	in a botanical garden
botanical gardens,	passenger platform,	metro	plants,
traffic,	timetable	tram, ferry	wild flowers,
monument,			lake
aquarium			

- 2 Complete the sentences with at, in or on and the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. On
2. are
3. is
4. at
5. leaves
6. in
7. doesn't take
8. in
9. At
10. goes
11. arrives
12. at

- 3 Track and his mother are at the bus station. From the bus station, turn right. Walk past the aquarium and turn left. There is a café on the corner. Then take the second road on the left. Go straight on and the market is on the right, opposite the botanical gardens.

## SB Answers

### Unit 2

### Page 12

- 1 Can you match the items in the photos to their names?

1. kettle
2. coffee machine
3. television
5. laptop



2 Which advert is from ...

1. a poster
2. a website
3. an email
4. a magazine

Look through the unit. What does it say about the leather industry?  
It is one of the oldest in Egypt.

## Page 13

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjective in brackets.

1. more expensive
2. The most useful
3. less expensive
4. easier
5. better
6. The busiest

3 Listen to the radio advert. Tick (✓) what it is advertising.

c.

4 Listen again. Complete the information.

1. red
2. black and white
3. 1500 LE

## Page 14

1 Look at the advert and discuss the questions in pairs.

1. A smart TV connects to the internet.
2. We use speakers so we can hear the TV more clearly/loudly.

2 Listen to the conversation in a shop. The man wants a big, smart TV.

3 Listen again and circle the correct words.

1. is new in the shop
2. 8,000 LE
3. free speaker
4. living room

4 Complete the sentences from the listening.

1. 'm looking
2. is
3. doesn't have
4. is
5. am offering
6. need

5 Who said the sentences in Exercise 4? Write C for the customer and SA for the shop assistant.

1. C
2. C
3. SA
4. C
5. SA
6. C

## Page 15

1 Complete the sentences from the conversation in the shop with both ...

1. Both
2. Neither
3. either, or

## Page 16

1 Read the conversation below. Who is Aya talking to? What are they talking about?

She is talking to someone who can give her help with her computer. They are talking about a problem with Aya's laptop.

2 Match the verbs from the conversation to the pictures. Listen and check.

1. d
2. c
3. a
4. b
5. e

3 Read the conversation again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. F, she thinks she lost her work.
2. F, she was charging it when it turned off.
3. T
4. F, but it says her password is wrong.
5. T

## Page 17

4 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences using the correct past form.

1. went, took, bought
2. met, showed, were walking
3. was giving, dropped
4. broke, felt, was

## Page 18

2 Read the advert again and answer the questions.

1. the wooden boxes
2. leather and carpets
3. the pots
4. the wooden boxes and the pots
5. they can phone or email

2 Now complete the email using the information from your plan.

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am interested in buying some of your pots to sell in my shop in Kenya. Can you tell me the price? Also, how much is delivery to Kenya? Do you have any special offers if I buy a lot of them?

Yours Faithfully,

Mr. Ali Ahmed

5 Work in pairs. Imagine that you work for Egyptian Handicrafts. Read your partner's email and write a reply. Remember to answer their questions.

Dear Mr. Ahmed

Thank you for your email. The pots cost from 150 LE to 400 LE. The price for delivery changes if you buy more pots. We have a %10 discount if you buy more than 50 pots. Let me know how many you want and what sizes and I will give you my best price.

Please let me know if you need any more information.

Your sincerely,

Mr. Hisham El-Shazly

## Page 19

1 Listen to Ali calling Egyptian Handicrafts about some items he ordered.

He isn't happy because his delivery didn't arrive.

2 Listen again and complete the sentences.

1. pots
2. five
3. Ahmed
4. 344538
5. Kenya
6. 254667578

3 Listen again and complete the sentences.

1. make
2. problem
3. says
4. sorry
5. will
6. Can

4 Look at the phrases in Exercise 3. Which phrases do you use for.

- making a complaint: 3, I
- answering a complaint: 5, 4, 2

## Page 20

1 Work in pairs. Look quickly at the texts and answer the questions.

1. online
2. a review of a coffee machine
3. They don't agree with each other. We know by the stars and the title.

2 Read the texts again. Tick (✓) if the review says something positive, put a cross (X) if it says something negative and put (-) if it doesn't say anything.

## Review 1 Review 2

Delivery	✓	x
How it looks	✓	✓
Coffee	✓	x
Noise	-	x
Easy to use	✓	-

## Page 21

1 Match the words to the photographs.

1. plug in
2. password
3. special offer
4. speaker
5. turn on
6. microwave

2 Look and complete the sentences about the shops using the words in brackets.

1. Neither Alexandria Electrics nor Sound and Vision sells clothes.
2. Both shops have special offers.
3. Both shops have red doors.
4. You can buy televisions at both Alexandria Electrics and Sound and Vision.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. went
2. bought
3. was shopping
4. saw
5. helped
6. is painting
7. is
8. looks

## WB Answers

## Page 79

1 Match these things from the kitchen with what you can do with them.

1. c
2. a
3. b



## SB / WB Answers

2 Now write sentences to say what you can do with these things.

- 1 You can keep food cold in this.
- 2 You can cook bread and other things in this.

3 Make sentences.

- 1 Coffee machine b is smaller than a, but coffee machine c is the smallest.
- 2 Coffee machine a is more expensive than coffee machine b, but coffee machine c is the most expensive.
- 3 Coffee machine b is taller than coffee machine c, but coffee machine a is the tallest.

### Page 80

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

- 1 sale 2 deal 3 discount
- 4 smart 5 speakers

2 Look at the information and answer the questions.

- 1 at the market
- 2 It is %50 / half price.
- 3 You can buy two kilos for the usual price of one kilo.

3 Complete the sentences with both, either or or neither ... nor.

- 1 both 2 either, or 3 Both
- 4 Neither, nor 5 either, or
- 6 neither, nor

### Page 81

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 on 2 log 3 password
- 4 in 5 charge

2 Complete the instructions with these words.

- 1 plug in, charge 2 turn 3 fill in
- 4 password 5 log in 6 off

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 You should not tell them to anyone.

- 2 Yes, I use a password for my laptop/ computer.
- 3 Yes, I charge my phone every day.
- 4 Yes, I use information about myself, for example, my name, age, address and phone number.
- 5 The kettle, the TV, the fridge, the oven, etc.
- 6 To save electricity.

### Page 82

1 Match the materials with the handicrafts.

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a

2 Can you name any objects made of these materials?

1. toys, water bottles, rulers
2. forks, spoons, knives
3. jewellery, glasses

3 Read about handicrafts in Egypt. Are the sentences below true (T) or false (F)?

1. T
2. F, they make some handicrafts from the leaves of trees.
3. T 4. T
5. F, the tourists buy the handicrafts from Egyptians.

### Page 83

1 Match the words with their meanings.

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a

2 Match the pictures a-d to the problems 4-1.

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b

3 Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.

1. Problem d
2. He is going to call the delivery company and ask them to send the correct item.

### Page 84

1 Read the reviews of two items. The two reviews are mixed up. Can you write them in the correct order?

## Review 1:

I bought this microwave as a present for my parents. They were not very happy with it. It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. However, when they used it, the food did not cook very well. It was horrible. I sent it back and will buy a different one.

## Review 2:

I bought this speaker as a present for my cousin. She is very happy with it. It looks great and it is very easy to use. You can use it on your television or to play music. There is only one problem with it: her parents think it is too loud!

### Page 85

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. charge 2. plugged in
3. turned 4. fill in
5. password 6. log in

2 Choose the correct words.

1. either 2. both 3. neither
4. nor 5. both 6. either 7. or

3 Read and correct the underlined words in these sentences.

1. the most 2. the best 3. easier
4. more colourful 5. worst

## SB Answers

### Unit 3

### Page 22

1 Discuss

- a. 2 b. 4 c. 6
- d. 1 e. 3 f. 5

2 Find

They painted the houses in "colours of happiness".

### Page 23

1 Listen to Fareed and Salah talking about the community survey. What facilities do they talk about?

## SB / WB Answers

great shops, the library, leisure activities, sports facilities, the children's playground, places outdoors

2 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 The young people are going to help the elderly learn more about technology (photo 1). The playground helps young people (photo 2). There are places where families can enjoy being outside (photo 3).
- 2 The pavements are a problem because they are not disabled-friendly (photo 4).

### Page 24

2 Read about the Decent Life Initiative. What is it doing about the problems that you discussed in Exercise 1?

buildings: it has helped to repair buildings.  
clean water: it has helped people to have clean water.  
education: it is building schools in the villages.  
health: it has sent doctors to deliver medicine and help people who are ill.  
work: it has opened new businesses and plans to find work for young people.

3 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match the words and phrases and the definitions.

- 1 neighbourhood 2 encouraged
- 3 deliver 4 making a difference
- 5 public services 6 health care

### Page 25

4 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 About 32 million people
- 2 75% of people living in villages in Upper Egypt are very poor
- 3 They are delivering medicine and helping people who are ill.
- 4 The new businesses which can give them work.
- 5 The plan to help find work for more than five million young people



# Final Exams

امتحانات الفصل الدراسي الأول من المحافظات المختلفة ٢٠٢٢

## Exam 1

محافظة القاهرة

### A Language Functions

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Two students are talking about their role model.

Hana : Can I ask you a question?

Soha : 1

Hana : 2

Soha : My mother is my role model.

Hana : 3

Soha : My mother does great efforts to help me and my family.

Hana : How do you feel towards her?

Soha : 4

Hana : I always feel proud of my parents.

Soha : 5

### B Reading Comprehension

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

flight - peaceful - when - journey - while - railway

Egypt has the oldest 1 in Africa. I like travelling by train because it is very interesting to look out of the window. I take the train 2 I want to visit my grandfather in Upper Egypt. During the 3, you can see ferries crossing the Nile, green valleys, 4 villages and busy cities.

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last birthday, I decided to celebrate it by inviting some friends out to supper. I chose a restaurant because the food there was good and the

## Final Exams

waiters were friendly. It was hardly crowded because few people knew about it, so it wasn't necessary to book a table there.

When we entered the restaurant, I was surprised to find it full. One of the waiters recognized me and explained that a party of tourists came in about half an hour ago and pointed to a corner table as the people there were about to leave. Fifteen minutes later the people at that table paid and left.

Unfortunately, all the waiters were busy with the party of the tourists. They ordered enormous quantities of food. Nearly an hour later, the tourists finished and left. The waiter came to our table and we asked for some dishes. A few minutes later, he came back and informed us that there was no meat or fish left.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about

- a my friends  
b the best dishes  
c the waiter  
d celebrating my birthday

2. The underlined "They" refers to the

- a waiters  
b tourists  
c friends  
d restaurants

3. The writer and his friends waited for about

- a 15  
b 20  
c 30  
d 60

#### B. Answer the following questions:

4. Explain why the writer didn't book a table in the restaurant. Give a reason.

5. Why didn't the waiter come back to the writer's table for nearly an hour?

6. Do you think the writer and his friends enjoyed their time? Why? Why not?

### C Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My country has a lot of attractive places. The word "attractive" means

- a ugly

- b beautiful

- c dirty

- d bad

ALT FUNK.COM موقع التفوق



2. The ..... garden is a place where you can see trees and other interesting plants.

- a** aquarium    **b** bank    **c** botanical    **d** library

3. To give the opposite of the word "possible", we can use the prefix .....

- a** un-    **b** dis-    **c** ir-    **d** im-

4. You must tell your parents or teachers if someone tries to ..... you online.

- a** cyberbully    **b** laugh    **c** joke    **d** conclude

5. My mother uses the ..... to cook things quickly.

- a** coffee machine    **b** kettle  
**c** microwave    **d** fridge

6. We can get the noun of the word "kind" by adding the suffix .....

- a** -ness    **b** -ly    **c** -less    **d** -er

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The film ..... (finish) yet! It ends at nine o'clock.
- Bicycles are ..... (expensive) than cars.
- Our football team ..... (win) the last match.
- I have lived in this house since I was ..... (bear) .
- It was very windy, so planes ..... (not able) to leave the airport.

### D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of online shopping"

### A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Nader and Maher are planning to visit the museum.

Nader : Hi Maher, would you like to visit the museum tomorrow?

Maher : Yes, it's a good idea. 1 .....

Nader : It opens at 9:00. Shall we go by metro? .....

Maher : 2 .....

Nader : 3 .....

Maher : The first metro train leaves at 8 am. ....

Nader : How long does it take to get to the station? .....

Maher : 4 .....

Nader : Oh! Is the station far from the museum? .....

Maher : 5 .....

### B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

manager - meetings - for - interesting - since - company

My uncle Ahmed is a business person. He got a job with a big ..... in Cairo. He's worked there ..... three years now. I think he's got a very important job. He's the ..... of a team of people and they have meetings every day. Sometimes, he has to meet people from companies in other countries. He has travelled to lots of ..... places.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tourists have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the wonders of the ancient world such as the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful experience for them. Tourists have also come to experience the



## Final Exams

wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

There are a lot of activities to do by the Red Sea. Some people love relaxing on the beach, while others like doing something more exciting like snorkelling. Snorkelling has been popular for many years and people have come to Egypt to swim in the Red Sea for a long time. Dahab has been a popular destination since 1960. This is because the water in Dahab is among the best in the world for snorkelling. There are beautiful coral reefs and there are some amazing sea animals, such as the dugong and the lionfish.

We have to encourage and welcome tourists to visit Egypt in the future.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- \_\_\_\_\_ are activities that people can do by the Red Sea.  
☐ a The Pyramids, temples and other monuments  
☐ b Wonderful natural world  
☐ c Relaxing on the beach and snorkelling  
☐ d The Red Sea and Dahab
- Dahab has been a popular destination since \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a 1936      ☐ b 1960      ☐ c 1906      ☐ d 1926
- The main idea of the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a When do tourists visit Egypt?      ☐ b Coral reefs  
☐ c Sea animals      ☐ d Why do tourists come to Egypt?

B. Answer the following questions:

- What are the examples of the natural world in the text?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you think that more tourists will visit Egypt in the future?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

## C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The prefix \_\_\_\_\_ gives the opposite of the word "formal".  
☐ a im-      ☐ b in-      ☐ c un-      ☐ d ex-

## Final Exams

- \_\_\_\_\_ is the opposite of "asleep."  
☐ a Walk      ☐ b Angry      ☐ c Awake      ☐ d Week
- Calm and quiet mean \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a especially      ☐ b careful      ☐ c useful      ☐ d peaceful
- A \_\_\_\_\_ person is good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something.  
☐ a creative      ☐ b volunteer      ☐ c musician      ☐ d player
- The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ is added to the verb "achieve" to make the noun.  
☐ a -sion      ☐ b -ment      ☐ c -ion      ☐ d -ness
- A/ An \_\_\_\_\_ is an electronic message.  
☐ a order      ☐ b complaint      ☐ c letter      ☐ d email

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (lived) here since I was a child.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (Neither) my sister and I like playing tennis.
- I design bridges. Last year, we \_\_\_\_\_ (build) a very long bridge in Cairo.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ (have) to take your coat. It's sunny outdoors.
- This chair is \_\_\_\_\_ (comfort). I like to sit on it.

## D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about your weekend"

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A teacher is talking to a student who is late.

Student : Good morning, sir. May I come in, please?

Teacher : Good morning. Yes, stand here. ①

Student : Sorry, sir, it is the bus which makes me late.

Teacher : ②

Student : I always leave home at quarter to eight.

Teacher : How far is your home from here?

Student : ③

Teacher : Then, you should leave home earlier.

Student : ④ Can I sit down now, sir?

Teacher : ⑤

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

depend - above - better - difficult - around - easy

Close your eyes and try to do something you do every day. You will realize how ① it is to do things if you cannot see what you are doing. Blind people face such difficulties. They ② on their other senses to learn about the world ③ them. With practice, they learn to use these senses ④ than people with sight.

## 3 Read the passage, then answer the questions:

A role model is someone who is considered to be a good example for other people to copy. My father is my role model. He is a businessman. He is very hardworking and he works day and night to give us healthy living. He protects me from all kinds of problems. My sister and I can talk about anything and everything with him.

Every night, we wait for him at the dinner table to chat with him. He also takes us for a walk after dinner and tells us interesting stories. He takes us for a picnic or a movie once a month. He understands his responsibility towards the society. At weekends, he volunteers at an old people's home. My father enjoys playing chess with his friends. He believes in regular exercise and has also taught us the same. He wants me to excel in whatever I do. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

## A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
  - A good family
  - A helpful person
  - A perfect role model
  - A successful businessman
- The underlined word "excel" means
  - spend
  - succeed
  - fail
  - worry
- At the dinner table, they
  - talk
  - play
  - listen
  - write

## B Answer the following questions:

- Why is the father considered a good role model? Mention one reason.
- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.
- How is the father helpful for his community?



## C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To form the adjective from the word "peace", we add the suffix  
a -al b -ive c -ful d -ous
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the synonym of the word "happiness".  
a Sadness b Pleasure c Regret d Initiative
- We form the opposite of "formal" by adding the prefix  
a in- b dis- c un- d im-
- The antonym of the word "local" is  
a native b countryside c national d international
- \_\_\_\_\_ are people who watch a tournament in the stadiums to enjoy it.  
a Referees b Players c Customers d Spectators
- I usually do the \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper in my free hour.  
a crossword b password c crossroad d keyword

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Mohamed Salah is an \_\_\_\_\_ (amaze) football player.
- I haven't heard the doorbell since I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a shower.
- The supermarket is the \_\_\_\_\_ (busy) shop in my town.
- Neither Ali nor I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) present last night.
- He has \_\_\_\_\_ (be) disabled all his life.

## D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of online shopping"

## A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Heba and Samar are talking about shopping and fashion.

Heba : Do you like shopping?

Samar : ① \_\_\_\_\_

Heba : ② \_\_\_\_\_

Samar : I usually go shopping at some fashion boutiques in my area.  
Heba : What's your opinion about shopping online?

Samar : ③ \_\_\_\_\_

Heba : What do you usually buy online?

Samar : ④ \_\_\_\_\_

Heba : ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_

Samar : You cannot try on the pieces of clothes when you shop online.

## B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

century - the - services - Initiative - an - Social

The Decent Life ① \_\_\_\_\_ is an exciting plan that is really making a difference to about 32 million people who live in rural areas in Egypt. It aims at improving public ② \_\_\_\_\_. It is Egypt's biggest project in the 21<sup>st</sup> ③ \_\_\_\_\_. The initiative will provide ④ \_\_\_\_\_ countryside with clean water, electricity, gas and communications.

3 Read the passage, then answer the questions:

After water, tea is the most popular drink in the world. People enjoy drinking it both hot and cold as a refreshing drink. There are many different kinds of tea. There are black tea, green tea, red tea, white tea and yellow tea. Unlike the tea we drink, green tea is not drunk with sugar or milk. Most



## Final Exams

tea comes from China. Some tea comes from India, Sri Lanka, Kenya and Japan. Indonesia also grows a lot of tea.

Strangely, in Vietnam, some people drink coffee before they drink tea. Tea can be prepared in a traditional way or by using tea bag that is easy and quick. Tea can be common medicine for stomachaches and flu. It is used to reduce the risk of heart disease and to lower cholesterol in blood. Some scientists believe that tea prevents tooth decay because it is a rich source of fluoride.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People drink coffee before they drink tea in .....  
☐ a China ☐ b Vietnam ☐ c Japan ☐ d Indonesia
2. According to the text, ..... is the second most popular drink in the world.  
☐ a water ☐ b milk ☐ c coffee ☐ d tea
3. The best synonym for the underlined word "traditional" is .....  
☐ a classical ☐ b modern ☐ c new ☐ d unusual

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What are the benefits of drinking tea?

5. What is the new way of making tea?

6. What does the fluoride in tea prevent?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a metal pot for boiling water.  
☐ a speaker ☐ b microwave ☐ c TV ☐ d kettle
2. Our teacher is kind and helpful. The synonym of "kind" is .....  
☐ a cool ☐ b unkind ☐ c friendly ☐ d hard

## Final Exams

3. The sun is a huge star. The antonym of "huge" is .....  
☐ a great ☐ b enormous ☐ c tiny ☐ d large
4. To give the adjective from the noun "health", we add the suffix .....  
☐ a -y ☐ b -ing ☐ c -ly ☐ d -less
5. We add the prefix ..... to give the antonym of the word "possible".  
☐ a in- ☐ b im- ☐ c un- ☐ d dis-
6. Friday morning is a very peaceful time. The word "peaceful" means .....  
☐ a calm and quiet ☐ b boring ☐ c ugly ☐ d ancient

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A: What time ..... (do) the train leave? B: It leaves at 7:00.
2. Smart phones are much ..... (easy) to use than the old ones.
3. I was ..... (amazing) by the number of people who came to the festival.
4. My cousins have lived in Mansoura ..... (since) six months.
5. You ..... (mustn't) know the password before you can use that computer.

## D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of how you can help your community"



## Exam 5

محافظة البحيرة

## A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Adham is talking to a tourist at a hotel.

Adham : Are you visiting Egypt on business or on holiday?

Tourist : ① .....

Adham : ② .....

Tourist : I come from London.

Adham : ③ .....

Tourist : Big Ben and the Queen's Palace are the most famous places in London.

Adham : What interests you most in Egypt?

Tourist : ④ .....

Adham : I hope you will enjoy your tour in our country.

Tourist : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

pollution - plant - will - along - going - work

We must have more trees in our cities. People in my city do their best to ① ..... evergreen trees ② ..... the streets. This is to reduce the level of ③ ..... Trees decorate our city and attract more visitors to enjoy its beauty. People who are interested in this project are ④ ..... to be awarded by the government.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One hot day, a thirsty crow flew all over the fields looking for water. For a long time, she could not find any. She felt very weak, almost giving up hope.

Then, she saw a water jug on the ground. She flew down to see if there was any water inside. Yes! She could see some inside the jug. The crow tried hard to push her head into the jug. Unluckily, she found that the neck of the jug was too narrow. Then she tried to push the jug down for the water to flow out, but it was too heavy for her.

The crow thought hard for a while. Looking around her, she saw some small stones. She suddenly had a good idea. She started picking up the stones one by one, dropping each into the jug. As more and more stones filled the jug, the water level kept rising. Soon it was high enough for her to drink. Her plan had worked!

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "Her plan had worked!" means that
  - a she succeeded at flying
  - b the water flowed out of the jug
  - c she was able to drink
  - d the jug neck broke and she drank
- The underlined word "it" refers to
  - a the water
  - b the jug
  - c the field
  - d the stone
- The best title for the passage is
  - a The Crow and the Jug
  - b The Hungry Crow
  - c The Jug with the Narrow Neck
  - d Try Hard to Drink on Hot Days

5 Answer the following questions:

- What lesson does the story want to tell you?
- What do you think would have happened to the crow if her plan hadn't worked?
- At first, the crow couldn't reach the water inside the jug. Give two reasons.

## C Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The opposite of "anxious" is
  - a aware
  - b careful
  - c relaxed
  - d worried



## Final Exams

2. The word ..... is close in meaning to the word "discount".  
**a** shopping **b** sale **c** customer **d** price
3. We add the prefix "in-" to give the ..... of the adjective "credible."  
**a** verb **b** adverb **c** meaning **d** opposite
4. We add the suffix ..... to the word "head" to mean pain in the head.  
**a** -ache **b** -ful **c** -er **d** -ness
5. A ..... is a small area of a town and the people who live there.  
**a** neighbourhood **b** square **c** field **d** port
6. The Nile runs through the city of Aswan. "Runs" here means .....  
**a** walks **b** flows **c** jumps **d** travels

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I would love ..... (go) to the Administrative Capital in Cairo.  
 2. Which of the two books is ..... (good)?  
 3. What do you ..... (must) to do when crossing the street?  
 4. I was so ..... (surprise) that you failed your exam.  
 5. Amazing! Have you done your homework ..... (yet)?

## D Writing

### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to an interesting place"

## Exam 6

محافظة المنوفية

## Final Exams

## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

- Mona is talking to her friend Amal about travelling by plane.  
 Mona : I am travelling by plane next Monday.  
 Amal : That's why you seem pleased. ① ..... ?  
 Mona : I am going to England.  
 Amal : ② ..... ?  
 Mona : To visit my uncle.  
 Amal : Does he study or work there?  
 Mona : ③ ..... He is an engineer in a factory there.  
 Amal : What time does the plane to England leave?  
 Mona : ④ .....  
 Amal : ⑤ ..... I wish you would be with me.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

shop - fast - plants - shopping - comfortable - maps

My friends and I decided to visit the Public Garden of our city. We looked at the online ① ..... of the garden. They were very helpful. It was a good idea to wear ② ..... shoes. We walked a lot; the garden is so big. There, we enjoyed seeing flowers and ③ ..... We watched a space exhibition and a museum. We went ④ ..... for handicrafts.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Adel. I am a prep-school student. I live in the town of Tala, Menofia. Last week I tried two new restaurants - Flower's and Cloud's. They're both Italian restaurants downtown. Flower's is a small place with about ten tables. The waiters and waitresses are very friendly, and the service

ALT FUNK.COM موقع النقول



## Final Exams

is excellent. I ordered chicken with rice and a salad. Then I had chocolate cake and coffee. The chicken was delicious, but the cake was too hard. The meal cost about seventy five pounds only.

Cloud's is a much bigger restaurant, and it was very busy that night. I waited twenty minutes for a table. Cloud's is noisier than Flower's, and the waiter was very slow with my meal. I ordered soup and meat with fried potatoes and vegetables. The soup wasn't very hot. The meat was OK, but the vegetables weren't very good. Then I had ice cream. The meal was really expensive - about three hundred pounds!

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a coffee and ice cream ☐ b Italy and Egypt  
☐ c two tables ☐ d two new restaurants
- ..... is not a very big restaurant.  
☐ a Cloud's ☐ b Flower's ☐ c Tala ☐ d Downtown
- Adel paid much money in ..... restaurant.  
☐ a one ☐ b two ☐ c fifteen ☐ d three hundred

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Why did Adel wait twenty minutes for a table at Cloud's?  
 .....
- What did Adel do last week?  
 .....
- What restaurant would Adel go to again? Why?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... are things like electricity and water that help the members of a community.  
☐ a Decent life ☐ b Public services  
☐ c Musical instruments ☐ d Sports facilities
- You can find comfortable shopping on the internet. "Comfortable" here is like .....  
☐ a easy ☐ b slow ☐ c boring ☐ d difficult

## Final Exams

3. This lesson is very short. It doesn't need a/an ..... time to study.

- Students were "excit-" to hear about the school trip to Aswan.  
☐ a early ☐ b much ☐ c high ☐ d long
- Eman was ..... happy when she lost the final tennis match.  
☐ a -ing ☐ b -er ☐ c -ed ☐ d -ment
- There are a lot of monuments in Luxor. "Monuments" here means ..... of the past times.  
☐ a dis- ☐ b un- ☐ c im- ☐ d in-  
☐ a old buildings ☐ b fresh buildings  
☐ c leather buildings ☐ d modern buildings

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We ..... (usual) watch television in the evening.
- I ..... (not visit) Alexandria since I was very young.
- Because it was ..... (fog) in the morning, I couldn't see the road well.
- A doctor ..... (have to) be good at science subjects.
- While I ..... (charge) the battery, my phone rang.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of something you bought online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALT FwdK.com موقع النصوص







2. We use the prefix "dis-" to give the ..... of the adjective "abled".  
 a synonym    b antonym    c verb    d adverb
3. The word ..... has the same meaning as the word "competition".  
 a contest    b champion    c staff    d creation
4. The suffix ..... changes the adjective "careful" into an adverb.  
 a -able    b -ness    c -ment    d -ly
5. Miss Dina teaches us English this year. The antonym of "teaches" is .....  
 a educates    b learns    c helps    d creates
6. There are many young people in our ....., so I have lots of friends who live near me.  
 a encouragement    b difference  
 c delivery    d neighbourhood

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (has to) tell my parents about the problem that I faced.  
 2. Different families have lived in our house ..... (since) over 200 years.  
 3. Five million new jobs is an ..... (amaze) achievement.  
 4. The first metro train ..... (leaving) at 8:20.  
 5. Adel has passed his driving test! He did really ..... (good).

**D Writing**

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of the best and worst items of technology in your house"

**A Language Functions**

**1** Finish the following dialogue:

- Reem and Amal are talking about the mid-year holiday.  
 Reem : The mid-year holiday will start next week.  
 Amal : That's right. ① .....  
 Reem : I'm going to go to Sharm El-Sheikh. .... ?  
 Amal : ② .....  
 Reem : Because it's a wonderful place for a holiday. .... ?  
 Amal : Who will you go with? ....  
 Reem : ③ .....  
 Amal : What activities can you do there? ....  
 Reem : ④ .....  
 Amal : I wish you a happy mid-year holiday. ....  
 Reem : ⑤ .....

**B Reading Comprehension**

**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

attractive - country - public - have - population - has

Luxor is a city in Upper Egypt. The ① ..... of Luxor is 422,407 people. Luxor ② ..... been described as the "world's greatest open-air museum". There are a lot of ③ ..... places that tourists can visit such as the Temple of Karnak, the Valley of the Kings and the Valley of the Queens. It has a great system of ④ ..... transport. You can get anywhere easily.

**3** Read the following, then answer the questions:

When I was young, I always loved both drawing and painting, but I could neither read nor write well. As a result, I didn't understand the lessons at school and got bad marks.



## Final Exams

My parents thought that I wasn't very clever. For this reason, they took me to some tests. They discovered that I suffered from dyslexia which means it was difficult for my brain to read and spell. To help me, my parents asked a teacher to give me special lessons which made me have good results. Later, at school, I was better and did well in exams. Also, I got a prize for my art. Then, I decided that I would like to be an artist one day. Now, I volunteer at a charity for other children with dyslexia to offer help and teach them about art.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of this passage is .....  
☐ a the problem of charities ☐ b the problem of exams  
☐ c the problem of dyslexia ☐ d drawing and painting
- The writer's parents helped me with the problem when they .....  
☐ a took me to a doctor ☐ b gave me a lot of money  
☐ c volunteered at a charity ☐ d asked a teacher to give me special lessons
- The writer was good at .....  
☐ a either reading or writing ☐ b neither drawing nor painting  
☐ c both reading and writing ☐ d both drawing and painting

### B. Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined word "They" refer to?  
 .....
- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in one sentence.  
 .....
- How do you think the writer will help other children?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A /An ..... is someone who organises or plans an event.  
☐ a dentist ☐ b engineer ☐ c organizer ☐ d teacher

## Final Exams

- He worked hard to pass the exam. The synonym of the word "pass" is  
☐ a fail ☐ b embarrass ☐ c disappoint ☐ d succeed in
- Both of us enjoyed the interesting film. The opposite of "interesting" is  
☐ a boring ☐ b exciting ☐ c frightening ☐ d bored
- The suffix ..... forms the adjective of the word "tradition".  
☐ a -ly ☐ b -al ☐ c -ive ☐ d -ness
- We add the prefix ..... at the beginning of "able" to get its antonym.  
☐ a in- ☐ b im- ☐ c ir- ☐ d dis-
- It's a place for looking after orphan children. It's a/an .....  
☐ a orphanage ☐ b aquarium ☐ c garden ☐ d station

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Mona has just ..... (clean) the house.
- It is ..... (good) to buy clothes in shops than online.
- What are you going ..... (do) at the weekend?
- I never go to school ..... (at) Fridays.
- Neither the laptop nor the microwave ..... (are) in the sale.

## D Writing

- Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:  
 "A biography about a famous person"



## Exam 9

محافظة الإسكندرية

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Noha is in the library. She has a CD and wants to listen to music.

Noha : Good morning, Mrs Ola.

Mrs Ola : Good morning, Noha. 1

Noha : I need a computer, please.

Mrs Ola : Why do you need a computer?

Noha : 2

Mrs Ola : Sorry, our computer is not working. 3

Noha : 4

Mrs Ola : The computer lab is next to the library.

Noha : Thank you, Mrs Ola.

Mrs Ola : 5

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

are - cold - countries - money - is - them

Tourism is very important for Egypt. Tourists spend a lot of their 1 in Egypt. They come from different 2 to enjoy its mild weather and have a look at its wonderful monuments. They 3 received with a smile from everyone. Many Egyptians speak English and it's easy for 4 to communicate with tourists.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A student and his professor saw a pair of old shoes lying in the path. It belonged to a poor man who worked in a field nearby. The student wanted to play a trick on him, but the professor refused. They agreed on putting a coin

into each shoe and hide themselves to watch how that would affect the poor man. The man soon came to the place where he had put his shoes. While slipping his foot into one of his shoes, he felt the coin. The man put it into his pocket. When he proceeded to put on the other shoe, he found the other coin. His feelings overcame him and he jumped over with joy thanking God. The man spoke of his sick wife and his hungry children. The student was deeply affected and his eyes filled with tears. "Now," said the professor, "isn't it much better than playing your trick?" The student said that his professor had taught him a lesson to remember.

## A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The lesson behind this passage is to
  - play a trick on the poor
  - put a coin in each shoe
  - speaking of your sick wife
  - try to help poor people
- The \_\_\_\_\_ owned the old shoes.
  - student
  - professor
  - poor man
  - rich man
- When the poor man found the two coins he was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - sad
  - pleased
  - angry
  - unhappy

## B Answer the following questions:

- How was the student deeply affected?
- Why did the professor refuse to play a trick on the man?
- What do you think the poor man will do with the money?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A \_\_\_\_\_ is something that you use in the kitchen to boil water.
  - kettle
  - knife
  - television
  - headphone
- The synonym of "modern" is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - old
  - ancient
  - famous
  - new
- To give the opposite of "comfortable", we add the prefix \_\_\_\_\_.
  - im-
  - un-
  - ir-
  - co-



## Final Exams

4. When we arrived at my grandparents' house, they came outside to ..... us.

- a** greet      **b** great      **c** guess      **d** reach

5. The antonym of "awake" is .....

- a** aware      **b** asleep      **c** conscious      **d** alive

6. The suffix ..... gives a noun of the verb "achieve."

- a** -est      **b** -ship      **c** -ment      **d** -tion

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you ever ..... (be) in Luxor?
2. Both of the children ..... (likes) ice-cream.
3. The book was really ..... (bore) and I didn't even finish reading it.
4. My mother told me I ..... (not able to) walk until I was about three.
5. We ..... (finish) our science project last week.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of something you bought online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Exam 10

محافظة بورسعيد

## Final Exams

## A Language Functions

**1** Finish the following dialogue:

- Samy is at a computer shop making a complaint.
- Samy : I want to make a complaint.
- Assistant : Oh dear! **1** .....
- Samy : I have bought a laptop and it doesn't work well. .... ?
- Assistant : **2** .....
- Samy : Yes, I have read the instructions well. .... ?
- Assistant : Would you like us to replace it for you?
- Samy : **3** .....
- Assistant : How much did you pay for it? .... I want another one.
- Samy : **4** .....
- Assistant : **5** .....
- ..... Thank you for your help.

## B Reading Comprehension

**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

start - started - expensive - facilities - noticeboard - peaceful

I don't like living in a big city. Most things are very **1** ..... I live in a very **2** ..... area. We try to improve the **3** ..... for disabled people. We **4** ..... building a new library last week. The library is very important for us. We can read and borrow books there.

**3** Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the past, people travelled on foot or on horseback and suffered many troubles. The journey might take days to reach their destination. Nowadays, they travel by air, by land or by sea. People do not travel for the same reasons. Some people go on business. This means that they are busy about something, and they have work to do. Some people travel for their health;



## Final Exams

perhaps the doctor has told them that they must go to a warmer country or perhaps they have to go to a cooler one for the summer.

In some places there are health springs. The water of these springs is special water which is very good for health. People from faraway places come to drink the water of these springs, or to bathe. Perhaps people are recovering from illness and the doctor has ordered them to have a change of air. Some other people travel for other reasons such as pleasure, exploration, politics and study.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The best title for the passage is .....  
☐ a Reasons for travelling ☐ b Sick people  
☐ c The dangers of the sea ☐ d Business is necessary
- Travelling in the past was .....  
☐ a easier ☐ b more comfortable  
☐ c more expensive ☐ d more difficult
- People who travel for ..... are busy.  
☐ a pleasure ☐ b recovering ☐ c business ☐ d a change of air

### B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do people come to health springs?  
 .....
- Summarize the first paragraph of the passage in one sentence.  
 .....
- How do you think people will travel in the future?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is a form of transport that carries people or cars.  
☐ a ferry ☐ b plane ☐ c metro ☐ d tram
- The opposite of the word "interesting" is .....  
☐ a enjoyable ☐ b boring ☐ c exciting ☐ d wonderful

## Final Exams

- To make the noun of the word "pave", we add the suffix  
☐ a -ment ☐ b -sion ☐ c -tion ☐ d -ness
- If something is ..... , it means very bad or unpleasant.  
☐ a positive ☐ b attractive ☐ c grateful ☐ d horrible
- To give the antonym of the word "credible", we add the prefix  
☐ a dis- ☐ b im- ☐ c in- ☐ d un-
- Sara worked hard to clean her room and the ..... were  
 amazing. ☐ a competitions ☐ b results ☐ c teams ☐ d organisers

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The morning train ..... (leave) at seven o'clock every day.
- I like this TV, but I think the smart one is the ..... (good) one in the shop.
- I ..... (have) a bike since I was twelve years old.
- Ayman ..... (meet) his friends next week. It is arranged.
- I got up late yesterday, but I ..... (able to) reach school on time.

## D Writing

- Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:  
 "A review of using social media"



## Exam 11

محاضرة الاسماعيلية

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Samy is asking Ali about things he has achieved.

Samy : What important things have you achieved in life?

Ali : ① .....

Samy : When did you learn that?

Ali : ② .....

Samy : ③ .....

Ali : My father taught me that.

Samy : Wow, that's great. Would you please teach me?

Ali : ④ .....

Samy : ⑤ .....

Ali : Let's start tomorrow.

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

filling - collection - hobbies - games - corner - filled

One of the ① ..... that people like is to collect things such as stamps, books, old coins and ancient pictures. But the strangest ② ..... I have ever seen belongs to a man who owns four hundred clocks. There are clocks in every ③ ..... of his house. The living room is surrounded by shelves which had been ④ ..... with clocks.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I am Mary, I am from England. Last summer, I visited Egypt for the first time. My friends advised me to go to Ismailia. The city is situated on the west bank of the Suez Canal. It is known as the City of Beauty and Enrichment. The guidebook said that I should visit Lake Timsah that lies between the Red

Sea and the Mediterranean Sea. Egypt is full of **gorgeous** lakes, but Lake Timsah is one of the most famed spots for is wonderful blue water. I also visited the Ismailia Museum. It is a small museum but it contains numerous objects that are really worth seeing. Most of the things that you want to know about Egypt, especially history, can be found there. Travelers consider Al-Salam Bridge and Ismailia Stadium as the best of four tourist attractions in Ismailia. I enjoyed visiting all these places during my stay **there**. I hope I will visit Egypt again and again.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mary visited Egypt .....  
☐ a once ☐ b twice ☐ c three times ☐ d four times
- The word "gorgeous" means .....  
☐ a huge ☐ b beautiful ☐ c boring ☐ d tiny
- The underlined word "there" refers to .....  
☐ a Lake Timsah ☐ b Ismailia Museum  
☐ c Ismailia Stadium ☐ d Ismailia City

## B. Answer the following questions:

- What is Ismailia known as?
- Why do you think Ismailia Museum is important to visit?
- Where is Lake Timsah situated?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A large open area where scientists study plants and trees, and people can visit is called a/an .....  
☐ a wild flower ☐ b aquarium  
☐ c botanical garden ☐ d ferry
- The synonym of "embarrassing" is .....  
☐ a bored ☐ b uncomfortable ☐ c happy ☐ d relaxed



3. The antonym of ..... is "noisy".  
 a peaceful    b crowded    c strong    d weak
4. We add the suffix ..... to make the adjective from "understand".  
 a -ing    b -ed    c -ful    d -ness
5. We add the prefix ..... to the word "encourage" to give the opposite.  
 a ir-    b mis-    c im-    d dis-
6. He switched on the mobile. This means he ..... on the mobile.  
 a lost    b broke    c turned    d bought

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He was born ..... (at) March, 15<sup>th</sup>, 2006.  
 2. Ahmed is ..... (more good) than Ali.  
 3. My parents ..... (live) in the same house since 2012.  
 4. Sorry Mum, I ..... (not able to) do the shopping because the shops were closed when I got there.  
 5. My father ..... (want) to be a champion when he was young.

**D Writing**

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of the person you like most and why you consider him your role model"

**A Language Functions**

**1** Finish the following dialogue:

- Ashraf and his friend Omar are talking about Omar's new mobile phone.
- Ashraf : Congratulations! Have you bought a new mobile phone?  
 Omar : ① .....  
 Ashraf : ② .....  
 Omar : It's 4000 L.E.  
 Ashraf : ③ .....  
 Omar : Not yet. Let's check it together.  
 Ashraf : Look! It doesn't charge.  
 Omar : Oh! What shall I do?  
 Ashraf : ④ .....  
 Omar : OK. I'll change it now. Thanks for your advice.  
 Ashraf : ⑤ .....

**B Reading Comprehension**

**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Life - treasure - pollution - outdoor - traffic - outdoors

Nader enjoys doing many activities ① ..... He likes walking and camping in the desert to avoid air ② ..... These activities help him escape from the heavy ③ ..... of the city. He finds such activities very interesting because he is not used to doing them during his everyday ④ .....

**3** Read the following, then answer the questions:

Noha and her mother were flying to Brazil. Suddenly, there was a storm and it became foggy. The plane crashed. Noha woke up to find herself in the middle of a thick jungle. She wasn't badly hurt, but there were parts of the plane around her. She discovered that she was alone in the jungle. She



## Final Exams

called out her mother, but she couldn't see or hear anyone. She didn't see animals or birds, but she heard them. She shouted and shouted for help. She was scared. She thought that she would die.

Noha remembered some advice her father had given her many years before. He had said, "If you are lost in a jungle, you should find a river and follow it." Noha had a terrible night. It was like a bad dream. The next day she started to walk to find a river. After walking for seven days, she came to a small town where people looked after her.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Noha stayed in the jungle for ..... days.  
a 18      b 80      c 800      d 8
- The best title for the text is .....  
a A bad dream      b A sunny day  
c Lost in the jungle      d A terrible night
- The word "foggy" in the passage means .....  
a sunny      b cloudy      c rainy      d snowy

### B. Answer the following questions:

- In two sentences, summarize what happened to the plane and its passengers.  
.....
- Why do you think Noha's mother didn't reply when Noha called out?  
.....
- What will you do if you find yourself alone in a jungle?  
.....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you have ....., it is difficult for your brain to read and spell.  
a headache      b cold      c dyslexia      d flu
- The word "contest" is the synonym of the word .....  
a champion      b campaign      c composition      d competition
- The antonym of the word "ill" is .....  
a well      b will      c wall      d wool

## Final Exams

- To make a name of a job from the word "music", we add the suffix .....  
a -ist      b -ian      c -ion      d -er
- To get the opposite of the word "happy", we add the prefix .....  
a dis-      b in-      c un-      d il-
- A large park or open area where scientists study plants and trees is a .....  
a kindergarten      b botanical garden  
c public garden      d city garden

- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
- Nowadays, it is ..... (good) to shop online than going to the shops.
  - The train ..... (arrive) in Luxor at 8:20 in the morning.
  - Hazim ..... (be) in France a week ago.
  - The football match was quite .....
  - Salim ..... (know) his best friend since he was four.

## D Writing

- 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:  
"A biography of a person you like most"

AltFwk.com موقع القوي



## Exam 13

محافضة بنى سويف

## A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking with his friend Hatem about their favourite hobbies.

Ahmed : How are you, Hatem?

Hatem : Fine, thank you. What do you do in your spare time?

Ahmed : 1 .....

Hatem : Reading is really useful. 2 .....

Ahmed : I like reading scientific books. 3 .....

Hatem : I usually do sports.

Ahmed : What kind of sport do you do?

Hatem : 4 .....

Ahmed : Karate is good, but dangerous. Why don't you play football?

Hatem : 5 .....

## B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

two - better - spend - twice - best - hobbies

My name is Sama. I am a third-year prep school student. My 1 ..... are drawing and making small models of things. I do not have many friends. So I prefer to 2 ..... most of my time studying. My grandmother is my 3 ..... friend. So I visit her 4 ..... a week. I'm not very good with social media, so I don't use the internet so much.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Encouragement is one of the most important keys of success in life. Years ago, an old poor man lived in a small village in Beni-Suef. He had a small family: his wife and three sons. He worked day and night to earn money for his family to live on. He worked hard and hard to send all his sons to good

schools. He faced a lot of difficulties and problems. His honest, encouraging wife did her best to help him. They could bring up their sons well. She helped her husband to be successful. Their sons grew up and went to different universities. With the right support and encouragement, the three boys became great men in society. The first was a famous doctor who worked in Qasr El-Eini Hospital. The second was a well-known businessman who has his own projects. The third got a high position in the city factory. They were so successful persons because of their parents' help and support. All the family lived a comfortable life then.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
 a Discouragement is important      b Encouragement is unimportant  
 c Discouragement is useful      d Encouragement is important
- The underlined word "They" refers to .....  
 a the husband and his wife      b the boys  
 c the people around them      d the daughters
- This story took place in .....  
 a Egypt      b France      c England      d America

B. Answer the following questions:

- What was the wife's role in this story?
- Was it easy for the man to send his sons to good schools? Why / Why not?
- What do you think their grandsons will be?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... means cars, lorries and motorbikes that use a road.  
 a Traffic      b Ports      c Parts      d Stations
- Sarah is interested in modern art. The synonym of "modern" in this sentence is .....  
 a old      b aged      c recent      d near



## Final Exams

3. Man cannot live without clean water. The adjective "clean" is an antonym of .....  
**a** nice      **b** clear      **c** pure      **d** dirty
4. We add the suffix ..... to make a noun from the word "achieve."  
**a** -ness      **b** -ment      **c** -tion      **d** -able
5. We put the prefix ..... to the word "credible" to give the opposite.  
**a** in-      **b** dis-      **c** mis-      **d** ir-
6. Last night, I had a strange dream. I thought I was flying! "Strange" means .....  
**a** regular      **b** unusual      **c** usual      **d** boring

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- You must watch this film. It ..... (start) at nine this evening.
- This is ..... (bad) film I've ever seen!
- He was ..... (surprise) to see the Pyramids for the first time.
- He ..... (have) a headache since last Monday.
- They ..... (visit) us at home last week.

## D Writing

### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of what can we do to make life at our community better."

## Exam 14

محافظة المنيا

## Final Exams

## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Maryam and Hend are talking about the mid-year holiday.  
 Maryam : Hello, Hend! Pleased to meet you.

Hend : 1 .....

Maryam : Where are you going this mid-year holiday?

Hend : 2 .....

Maryam : Really! Aswan is beautiful in winter. 3 .....

Hend : We will stay at my uncle's house.

Maryam : 4 .....

Hend : Yes, I will visit the tourist places there.

Maryam : 5 .....

Hend : Thanks a lot my dear friend.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

for - encouraged - understand - in - dyslexia - cleverness

Salma is a good young woman. When she was young, she had 1 .....  
 It wasn't easy for her to 2 ..... her lessons. Her teachers and parents  
 always 3 ..... her to do well and she got good results 4 ..... the  
 end. Now she helps other children with the same problem.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mr Ali used to travel by train to work every day. He used to put his bag on  
 the empty seat beside him to be in comfort.

One day he did this when the train was too busy. The travellers sat on all  
 the seats except that beside Mr Ali. An old man arrived and said to Mr Ali,



## Final Exams

"Is this somebody's seat?" "Yes," replied Mr Ali, "my friend has gone to buy something and he will come soon." "All right," said the old man, "I'll sit here and I will leave when your friend comes." Mr Ali could say nothing. Other travellers were listening and watching.

As soon as the train moved, the old man said, "It seems that your friend has missed the train sir, he shouldn't leave his bag here". The old man threw the bag from the train window. Mr Ali was surprised but he could say nothing.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea in this passage is that people .....  
☐ a shouldn't travel by train ☐ b should tell the truth  
☐ c should carry bags ☐ d shouldn't travel alone
- The underlined word "that" refers to the .....  
☐ a friend ☐ b bag ☐ c seat ☐ d train
- Mr Ali is truly a .....  
☐ a liar ☐ b good ☐ c helpful ☐ d friendly

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did Mr Ali use to put his bag on the empty seat beside him?  
 .....
- What lesson did Mr Ali learn in the end?  
 .....
- How did the old man surprise Mr Ali in the end?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is something that you make when you aren't happy about something.  
☐ a plan ☐ b conclusion ☐ c complaint ☐ d fortune
- The word champion is the same meaning as .....  
☐ a winner ☐ b famous ☐ c brave ☐ d volunteer
- We always ..... our shopping on Fridays.  
☐ a go ☐ b do ☐ c save ☐ d bake

## Final Exams

- We add ..... to the adjective "clever" to make a noun.  
☐ a -ly ☐ b -ing ☐ c -less ☐ d -ness
- The prefix ..... gives the opposite of "possible".  
☐ a in- ☐ b il- ☐ c im- ☐ d un-
- We use sign language to make Noha understand us as she is deaf. Here "deaf" means .....  
☐ a she can't see ☐ b she can't hear  
☐ c she can't read ☐ d she can't write

- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
- She ..... (go) travel tomorrow. That's her plan.
  - We were ..... (amaze) to hear this news.
  - She ..... (be) abroad since 2020.
  - Although he was tired, he ..... (able) play the match.
  - This is the ..... (easy) exam I have ever done.

## D Writing

- 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:  
 "A short story about a visit to Cairo"



احجز نسختك من

# المراجعة النهائية

الصف الثالث الإعدادي  
تدريبات - امتحانات



## Exam 15

محافظة الوادي الجديد

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mariam is talking to Nada who has bought a new smart TV.

Mariam : What a nice TV! When did you buy it?

Nada : ① .....

Mariam : How much is it?

Nada : ② .....

Mariam : ③ .....

Nada : I bought it from Cairo Mall.

Mariam : ④ .....

Nada : Yes, it has a 30% discount.

Mariam : Can you come with me to get one?

Nada : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

interested - at - attractive - exhibitions - of - outdoors

My name is Arwa. I live in Elkharga. It's a big, beautiful and peaceful city. It's in the southwest of Egypt. There are lots of ① ..... parks, museums, buildings and some ② ..... My favourite place is Hibis Temple. I prefer to go there ③ ..... the weekend. I prefer being ④ ..... to being at home.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

You probably have a fridge in your house to keep your food cool, but have you ever thought about what people did in the past? People have used ice to keep food cool for thousands of years.

In the north of Europe in winter, people were able to use snow or ice which they kept underground for many months. In 1842, an American doctor called John Gorrie invented a machine to make ice. He used it to keep people cool when they got an illness called "yellow fever". By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges and today nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchen.

7. We continue to use the same technology for fridges that we have used for a century. The problem is that a room with a fridge in it is a lot noisier and hotter than other rooms. Now people are designing modern fridges that are neither hot nor noisy. These are going to use less energy, too, so they will be more efficient.

## A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Modern fridges are going to .....
 

a be more funny	b be cheaper
c use less energy	d make more noise
- John Gorrie invented a machine that .....
 

a made people ill	b kept food cool
c made ice	d made ice cream
- The word "efficient" means .....
 

a quick and calm	b cool
c hot and noisy	d expensive

## B Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- Do you think fridges are important invention? Why? Why not?
- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence from your own.

## C Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/ An ..... is something that people build to remember an important person or event.
 

a mountain	b minute	c monument	d aquarium
------------	----------	------------	------------



## Final Exams

2. The synonym of the word "usual" is  
 a strange b normal c unusual d straight
3. The antonym of the word "free" is  
 a expensive b open c unpaid d paid
4. We can add the prefix \_\_\_\_\_ to "formal" to give the opposite.  
 a in- b un- c re- d dis-
5. We add the suffix \_\_\_\_\_ to "create" to form the adjective.  
 a -ful b -able c -ing d -ive
6. I've repaired the chair that was broken. The underlined word means  
 a minded b fixed c broke d put

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mr Rami has been at this school \_\_\_\_\_ (for) 2020.
2. The book is really \_\_\_\_\_ (bore) and I didn't even finish reading it.
3. Last year my brother Ahmed \_\_\_\_\_ (reads) lots of books about space science.
4. Neither Omnia nor Nora ever \_\_\_\_\_ (shop) online.
5. I have never \_\_\_\_\_ (drove) a car.

## D Writing

## 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to 30 June Park"

## Exam 16

محافظة مطروح

## Final Exams

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is meeting a British tourist who is visiting Egypt.

Ahmed : Hello, it's a pleasure to meet you.

A tourist: 1

Ahmed : 2

A tourist: I'm from Britain.

Ahmed : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

A tourist: 3

Ahmed : 4 I came here last year.

A tourist: I visited the Egyptian Museum and the Pyramids.

Ahmed : 5

A tourist: Thanks.

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

of - at - traffic - quite - peaceful - places

Matrouh is a beautiful city. There are a lot of attractive 1 \_\_\_\_\_ here in the city. The 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in Matrouh is slow and there isn't much pollution. Matrouh is 3 \_\_\_\_\_, but it isn't boring. There are a lot of things to do especially 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the weekends.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last April, I went with my family to Hurgada. We went there to spend some enjoyable time. My father drove us there. It was a long drive, but we enjoyed watching the beautiful sceneries. We stayed there for three weeks. We did a lot of interesting activities there.



## Final Exams

We went swimming and snorkeling in the sea. Under water we saw many beautiful kinds of fish. The water of the Red Sea is warm and pure. I also went windsurfing with my brother. At first, I was frightened, but quickly I felt safe as my brother was careful and he encouraged me to feel safe.

Every evening, we went shopping and visited some wonderful bazaars. A bazaar is a place where visitors such as tourists can buy wonderful souvenirs for their families and friends. There, I bought some souvenirs for my friends.

I think it was a good experience for all of us, so we're looking forward to visiting Hurghada next year.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This passage is about .....  
☐ a shopping ☐ b snorkling  
☐ c an interesting visit ☐ d windsurfing
- The family went to Hurghada by .....  
☐ a plane ☐ b ship ☐ c train ☐ d car
- The family went to Hurghada in the .....  
☐ a summer ☐ b autumn ☐ c spring ☐ d winter

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?  
 .....
- How long did the writer and his / her family stay in Hurghada?  
 .....
- Do you think the family will visit Hurghada again? Why or why not?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The word "winners" gives the same meaning as .....  
☐ a competitors ☐ b champions ☐ c organisers ☐ d fans
- The verb "help" can be an adjective by adding the suffix .....  
☐ a -ess ☐ b -ment ☐ c -ion ☐ d -ful

## Final Exams

- To ..... is to become comfortable and less worried.  
☐ a shout ☐ b study ☐ c relax ☐ d jump
- The word ..... is the opposite of "asleep".  
☐ a awake ☐ b start ☐ c mind ☐ d agree
- A ..... is a person who pays for a room in a house.  
☐ a manager ☐ b winner ☐ c lodger ☐ d farmer
- To give the opposite of the word "usual", we add the prefix .....  
☐ a un- ☐ b im- ☐ c in- ☐ d dis-

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Sara ..... (do) her homework yet.
- Neither the smart TV ..... (and) the large TV suited the customer.
- I'm ..... (interest) in reading science books.
- The train to Luxor ..... (leave) at 7:00 in the morning.
- I ..... (must) go to the stadium but I'm not sure.

## D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of someone you like"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALT FUNK.COM  
موقع الفنون



## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A tourist is talking to a policeman.

Tourist : Can you help me, please?

Policeman : ① .....

Tourist : How can I go to the Egyptian Museum?

Policeman : ② .....

Tourist : ③ .....

Policeman : No, it isn't very far.

Tourist : ④ .....

Policeman : You can see many ancient objects there.

Tourist : Thanks.

Policeman : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

aquarium - sports centre - go - weekends - goes - cinema

My name's Yousif. I live in Hurghada with my mum, dad and two sisters. Hurghada is a peaceful city. There are a lot of things to do here, especially at the ① ..... On Friday afternoon, I often ② ..... swimming. On Saturday, I have tennis lessons at the ③ ..... Sometimes I go to the ④ ..... where I enjoy watching fish.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sports are very important for all people of all ages. There are many kinds of sports, such as football, tennis, volleyball, handball and karate. People practise sports for many different reasons. Some people want to be fit and

keep healthy. Other people would like to spend their spare time in a very useful way.

Although there are many people, who like to do different kinds of sports, but they can't because of their busy lives. It's a fact that most of the people all over the world like football. Most of us play this sport outdoors, and they prefer to play it in clubs.

There are many great and famous football players around the world. It's clear that professional players earn a lot of money because they are very good at scoring goals for their teams.

It is also clear that practising team sports helps us to learn many good things like cooperating with each other and to be positive people.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is about .....  
☐ a scientists ☐ b friends ☐ c sports ☐ d tourists
- The underlined words "spare time" mean .....  
☐ a free time ☐ b work time  
☐ c bedtime ☐ d study time
- ..... people like playing football.  
☐ a Few ☐ b Not many ☐ c Some ☐ d Many

## B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think there are many people who can't practise sports?  
 .....
- What do you think we can learn when we practise sports?  
 .....
- What are the best places to play football?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An ..... is something that you don't want other people to know.  
☐ a situation ☐ b secret ☐ c event ☐ d advice



2. The word "staff" gives the same meaning as  
 a spectators b puzzles c workers d hotels
3. The book isn't interesting, it's  
 a wonderful b good c nice d boring
4. We add the prefix \_\_\_\_\_ to the word "agree" to give the opposite.  
 a mis- b im- c dis- d ir-
5. To get the noun from the word "kind", we add the suffix \_\_\_\_\_  
 a -ness b -ly c -ful d -ing
6. They arrived at school at 7 o'clock. The underlined word "arrived" means \_\_\_\_\_  
 a thought b reached c bought d played

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The volunteers are going to \_\_\_\_\_ (cleaning) up the park.
2. Please, be \_\_\_\_\_ (care) when you carry those eggs.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (has) lived in the same house since I was born.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ (should) say unkind things to people on social media.
5. This shop is \_\_\_\_\_ (either) interesting nor cheap. Let's go to a different one.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography about a person you see as a role model or you like most."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ali and Samir are talking about the favourite sport.

Ali : What's your favourite sport, Samir?

Samir : 1

Ali : 2

Samir : Because it's exciting.

Ali : 3

Samir : Mohammed Salah is my favourite footballer.

Ali : Do you watch his matches?

Samir : 4

Ali : Why are you proud of him?

Samir : 5

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

amazed - tram - countryside - monuments - Museum - amazing

A lot of tourists prefer spending their holidays in Egypt as it has a lot of  
 1 ..... They also like to go to the Egyptian 2 ..... to see our old  
 Treasures. Some of them prefer going to the 3 ..... to enjoy the fresh  
 air and the clean environment. Finally, they are 4 ..... to see such  
 these wonderful places.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Heba is a very good girl. She is always energetic. She is not tall. Ten  
 years ago, Heba, who was seven years old then, went into her father's



## Final Exams

library and asked him if she could borrow some books. This made him very happy. Heba's father thought that his daughter was interested in reading. He asked her to take any books. She did what her father told her. She chose many big books and took them to the garden outside the house and put them under an orange tree. Heba's father and mother followed her to see what she would do with the books. They tried not to let her see them. They were surprised when they saw their daughter standing on the big books and picking some oranges. Her father helped her to pick some oranges and told her not to stand on the books again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Heba is ..... years old now.  
☐ a fifteen ☐ b five ☐ c seven ☐ d seventeen
- Heba's father and mother were ..... to see their daughter standing on the books.  
☐ a usual ☐ b amazed ☐ c ill ☐ d tired
- Heba's father followed her to the .....  
☐ a library ☐ b kitchen ☐ c garden ☐ d school

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Heba put big books under an orange tree?

5. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

6. How many people are there in Heba's family?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... is a learning disability which affects reading and writing.  
☐ a Experience ☐ b Leaflet ☐ c Dyslexia ☐ d Delivery
- The synonym of the word "elderly" is .....  
☐ a old ☐ b safe ☐ c dangerous ☐ d young

## Final Exams

- The antonym of the word "noisy" is  
☐ a boring ☐ b slow ☐ c difficult ☐ d peaceful
- To change the word "kind" from an adjective into a noun, we put at the end of the word.  
☐ a -less ☐ b -ness ☐ c -ity ☐ d -able
- We can add the prefix ..... to change the word "credible" to its opposite.  
☐ a un- ☐ b dis- ☐ c im- ☐ d in-
- Samar travelled to the USA to receive an award. The word "award" here means .....  
☐ a profit ☐ b prize ☐ c souvenir ☐ d loss

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The train to Port Said ..... (leave) this station at 3:15.
- Tomer is the ..... (tall) student in the class.
- He ..... (haven't) met her for a long time.
- I ..... (see) him two weeks ago.
- Tarek ..... (have to) go to the dentist yesterday because his teeth hurt.

## D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of your city"



## Exam 19

محافظة جنوب سيناء

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Basant is at the train station. She is asking about the train to Aswan.

Clerk : Can I help you?

Basant : Yes, please. What time does the next train to Aswan leave?

Clerk : ① .....

Basant : ② .....

Clerk : It takes about 7 hours.

Basant : Great! Can I book a ticket, please?

Clerk : ③ ..... Single or return?

Basant : Return, please. ④ .....

Clerk : It's two hundred pounds.

Basant : ⑤ .....

Clerk : Thank you. Here's the ticket.

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

turns - fill in - password - plugged - turned - passport

Nora is very excited because she has got a new phone. First, she needed to charge the battery. To do this, she ① ..... in the phone and ② ..... it on. Then she left it for a few hours. Next, she needed to ③ ..... some information about herself. After that, she made a ④ ..... for it.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My friend Tarek likes farming so much. He lives in a very nice house with a small garden. In the garden, his father plants different kinds of fruits and vegetables. One day he invited me and seven of our friends to his birthday party.

I arrived at my friends' house at eight in the evening. There, I found all my friends sitting with Tarek in the garden. One of our friends brought a nice book about farming. Tarek's mother prepared lots of nice cakes for us. We ate, drank and sang songs. Tarek got lovely presents, and he was so happy. After the party, we played some computer games in Tarek's bedroom. It was a very wonderful evening and we went back home at ten. It was one of the best days in my life.

## A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Tarek's friends enjoyed his .....  
☐ a birthday party ☐ b his success ☐ c his wedding ☐ d his jokes
- Tarek's friends played computer games in his .....  
☐ a garden ☐ b living room ☐ c bedroom ☐ d sitting room
- The underlined word "went back" means .....  
☐ a enjoyed ☐ b travelled ☐ c slept ☐ d returned

## B Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think that Tarek's friends gave him a book about farming?
- How was Tarek's mother a nice person?
- What does the underlined word "he" refer to?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is a large area of water with land around it.  
☐ a market ☐ b lake ☐ c mountain ☐ d city
- Ismailia is a peaceful city. The word "peaceful" means .....  
☐ a ugly ☐ b dirty ☐ c quiet ☐ d noisy
- The word ..... can be the opposite of "boring".  
☐ a near ☐ b interested ☐ c excited ☐ d interesting



4. To give the opposite of the word "formal", we add the prefix  
☐ a un-      ☐ b in-      ☐ c im-      ☐ d dis-
5. The word "wood" can be an adjective by adding the suffix  
☐ a -en      ☐ b -able      ☐ c -ion      ☐ d -ous
6. To succeed in your exams means to ..... them.  
☐ a taste      ☐ b test      ☐ c pass      ☐ d fail

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The shopping center is ..... (opposite) to the station.  
 2. Tourists are always pleased with the ..... (kind) of the Egyptians.  
 3. It's ..... (good) to buy clothes in shops than online.  
 4. My parents have lived in the same house ..... (when) 2012.  
 5. We ..... (move) to the city three years ago.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about a holiday that you enjoyed a lot."

Azhar Exam 20

منطقة القاهرة الأزهرية

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

- Adam : Are you enjoying that book, Amr?  
 Amr : ① ..... In fact it's quite boring.  
 Adam : ② .....?  
 Amr : I like exciting stories.  
 Adam : Last year, I read one. The ending was surprising.  
 Amr : Well, I should ③ .....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

- 1- You ask someone about his job.

- 2- You are asked where you have been last summer.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, don't ..... the teacher when he is talking.  
☐ a join      ☐ b listen      ☐ c sleep      ☐ d interrupt
2. Guess what! I have good .....  
☐ a new      ☐ b news      ☐ c now      ☐ d know
3. We have lived in Cairo ..... many years.  
☐ a for      ☐ b yet      ☐ c already      ☐ d since
4. .... me about it. What happened?  
☐ a Tall      ☐ b Till      ☐ c Tell      ☐ d Tail
5. What time does the lesson ..... ?  
☐ a spend      ☐ b start      ☐ c arrive      ☐ d leave

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tarek has enjoyed windsurfing for about two years. He usually goes with his older brother. A few months ago, he decided to windsurf alone. He did not tell his brother this. It was windy, but that is good if you want to windsurf. The wind took Tarek far from the beach because it was strong. Some people in a boat came to help Tarek and took him back. Tarek has not windsurfed alone since that time. He has learned an important lesson.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Tarek decide to do?  
 .....  
 2. Who helped Tarek?  
 .....  
 3. What lesson did Tarek learn?  
 .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Some people in a ..... came to help Tarek.  
☐ a ferry      ☐ b ship      ☐ c canoe      ☐ d boat
5. Tarek learnt to windsurf .....  
☐ a with an older brother      ☐ b lonely  
☐ c with a young brother      ☐ d alone



## 5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"An interesting place you visited"

## Azhar Exam 21

منطقة الجيزة الأزهرية

## 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Adam : What type of transport do you like?

Omar : 1

Adam : Why do you like trains?

Omar : 2 . What about you?

Adam : 3

## 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Your brother suggested going to the library. You like the idea.

2- You meet someone for the first time.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children played \_\_\_\_\_ today because it was very hot outside.

a indoor b indoors c outdoor d outdoors

2. This shop is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting \_\_\_\_\_ cheap. Let's go to a different one.

a either / or b both / and c neither / nor d half / of

3. My phone is not working. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ the battery.

a charge b charger c turn d plug

4. Tourists are always pleased with the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Egyptians.

a rudeness b carelessness c kindness d homeless

5. Basel has known his best friend \_\_\_\_\_

a for

b ago

c as

he was four.

d since

## 4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference to about 32 million people who live in **rural** areas in Egypt. The initiative aims to improve the quality of public services. It provides more health care, better education and better job opportunities. Since 2019, The Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help people who are ill.

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the initiative aim to?

2. When has the initiative begun?

3. Why has it sent doctors to the villages?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The initiative is for a \_\_\_\_\_ life.

a humble b better c bad d poor

5. The word "**rural**" refers to the \_\_\_\_\_ life.

a country b city c urban d desert

## 5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your city"





1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

- Emad : Would you like to go to Alexandria together?  
 Hossam : That would be great! ① .....?  
 Emad : That's a good idea. The train is fast and safe.  
 Hossam : ② .....?  
 Emad : It leaves at 7:00 in the morning.  
 Hossam : OK. ③ .....?  
 Emad : We will meet in front of the station.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- You want to greet your teacher in the morning.

2- Your friend tells you that he has passed the exam.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can make a hot drink with a .....  
 a coffee machine      b fridge  
 c telephone      d pencil
2. Televisions are ..... expensive than kettles.  
 a most      b more      c the most      d the least
3. Deaf children can't ..... and need help.  
 a see      b watch      c hear      d walk
4. I like ..... the blue shirt and the green shirt.  
 a either      b both      c neither      d nor
5. I haven't finished my homework .....  
 a just      b ago      c for      d yet

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Munir was born in Cairo and he has lived there all his life. When he was little, he found reading and writing very difficult. So he thought he wasn't very clever. He had dyslexia. When he got enough help at school, he started to understand more. Now, he gets prizes and helps other students.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

2. Where was Munir born?

3. What did Munir find difficult?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Munir had ..... when he was little.

- a headache      b dyslexia      c toothache      d cold

5. Dyslexia is a learning ..... which affects reading and writing.

- a ability      b enable      c able      d disability

5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your favourite hobby"





أبناءنا بالخارج

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Adham and Heba are talking about their plans for the weekend.

Adham : Hello, Heba. What are you going to do next weekend?

Heba : Hi, Adham. We are going to the club. ① .....

Adham : I haven't decided yet. ② .....

Heba : Isn't it very cold in Alex now?

Adham : Yes, it is, but ③ .....

Heba : Why don't you come with us to the club?

Adham : ④ .....

Heba : We can do a lot of things.

Adham : OK, I will go with you.

Heba : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

make - volunteer - difference - Initiative - making - pollution

The Decent Life ① ..... is an ambitious project which aims at making a ② ..... to people who live in rural areas. I'd like to ③ ..... at it. I can teach children. I think ④ ..... people happy is really great.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, I slept early. I woke up in horror when I heard people screaming. I went out and saw: my neighbours' house was on fire! My dad called the firemen. In less than 10 minutes they arrived and fought against the fire until they made it. They are really brave! One of them entered the house and saved the baby that was trapped in the fire. Our neighbour forgot to turn off the oven which started the fire. This accident taught me that we should check the electric sets and ovens before we go to sleep. It made me decide that when I grow up, I want to be a fireman. I'll be strong and brave enough to be suitable for the job. I will fight against the fire, to save people's lives. If you have a relative works as a firefighter, you should be proud of them. They really do a great job.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The firemen arrived ..... after they got the call.

☐ a slowly ☐ b nervously ☐ c quickly ☐ d cowardly

2. If the firemen had arrived late, the baby would have ..... in the fire.

☐ a died ☐ b slept ☐ c played ☐ d lived

3. Although firemen save us from the danger of fire, we need to be .....

☐ a careless ☐ b careful ☐ c lazy ☐ d crazy

## B. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

5. How long did the firemen take to reach the place of fire?

6. What made the writer wake up?



### C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My shopping list ..... vegetables and bread.  
☐ a composes    ☐ b includes    ☐ c consists    ☐ d considers
- These shoes are made of expensive .....  
☐ a leather    ☐ b laser    ☐ c leaves    ☐ d loaves
- A /An ..... is something you make when you are unhappy about something.  
☐ a order    ☐ b request    ☐ c complaint    ☐ d offer
- The match was exciting. We all enjoyed it. It was not .....  
☐ a interesting    ☐ b good    ☐ c excited    ☐ d boring
- A ..... is some pieces of wood put together so that they can float on water.  
☐ a raft    ☐ b canoe    ☐ c candle    ☐ d kettle
- Sending unkind messages on social media is .....  
☐ a kind    ☐ b legal    ☐ c cyberbullying    ☐ d anxious

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Don't worry, both answers ..... (is) correct.
- When I knew the exam result, I was ..... (disappoint).
- My father has ..... (be) in Paris for 3 years.
- The train to Aswan ..... (leave) at 6 o'clock a.m.
- I have ..... (ever) done my homework. It's easy.

### D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"The importance of reading for everyone"

### End of Term Practice Answers

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- Hello. Yes, please. I have a problem.
- What is it, Sir?
- It was charged up.
- When can I take it?
- The battery will be OK.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- since
- discovered
- dyslexia
- results

3. Read the following text. Then answer the questions:

- b. how to keep food cool
- a. made ice
- b. noisy and making the room hot
- To keep their food cool
- I think that they wanted to keep meat for a long time.
- Yes, I think so. Many other home machines (washing machines)

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- b. rest
- c. -able
- d. asleep
- c. pays rent for a room in a house
- b. made
- c. group of people working in our school

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- boring
- driven
- don't have to
- more useful
- is

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on one of the following:  
 Students' own answers



- 3-c exit                      4-a -ness  
5-c bio -                    6-a teenagers

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- worked                      2- don't have to  
3- already                      4- had to  
5- was able to

**Final Exams Answers**

**Exam 1** محافظة القاهرة

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Yes, you can. Go on.  
2- Who is your role model?  
3- Why?  
4- I'm proud of my mother.  
5- That's great!

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- railway                      2- when  
3- journey                      4- peaceful

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- d. celebrating my birthday  
2- b. tourists                      3- a. 15  
4- Because It was hardly crowded because few people knew about it.  
5- All the waiters were busy with the party of the tourists.  
6- No, they don't. They waste their time waiting for the table and food. In the end, they don't get the food they want.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b. beautiful                      2- c botanical  
3- d im-                              4- a cyberbully  
5- c microwave                      6- a. -ness

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- hasn't finished                      2- less expensive  
3- won4- born                              5- weren't able

**Exam 2** محافظة الجيزة

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- What time does it open?  
2- That's a great idea.  
3- When does the first metro train leave?  
4- About 30 minutes.                      5- Yes it is.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- company                      2- for  
3- manager                      4- interesting

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c. Relaxing on the beach and snorkelling  
2- b. 1960  
3- d. Why do tourists come to Egypt?  
4- The desert and the Red Sea.  
5- Tourists come to Egypt to see the wonders of the ancient world and the wonderful natural world. They like snorkelling near the Red Sea.  
6- Yes, I think so.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b in-                      2- c Awake                      3- d peaceful  
4- a creative                      5- b -ment                      6- d email

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- have lived                      2- Both                      3- built  
4- don't have                      5- comfortable

**Exam 3** محافظة الشرقية

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Why do you come late?  
2- When do you leave your home?  
3- It's about 15 minutes' walk.  
4- OK. 5- Yes, you can.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- difficult                      2- depend  
3- around                      4- better

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c. A perfect role model  
2- b. succeed                      3- a. talk  
4- He protects his children from all kinds of problems.  
5- The father plays chess with his friends and exercises and teaches the writer to be successful.  
6- He is very hardworking and works day and night.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- c -ful2- b Pleasure  
3- a in- 4- d international  
5- d Spectators                      6- a crossword



**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- amazing      2- had      3- busiest  
4- am      5- been

**Exam 4** محافظة الدقهلية

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Yes, I do.  
2- Where do you usually go shopping?  
3- Shopping online is great.  
4- I usually buy clothes online.  
5- What is the bad thing about shopping online?

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- Initiative      2- services  
3- century      4- the

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- b. Vietnam      2- d. tea      3- a. classical  
4- It can be common medicine for stomachaches and flu and it is used to reduce the risk of heart disease and to lower cholesterol in blood. It prevents tooth decay because it is a rich source of fluoride.  
5- Green tea is not drunk with sugar or milk.  
6- It prevents tooth decay.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- d. kettle      2- c. friendly      3- c. tiny  
4- a. -y      5- b. im-  
6- a. calm and quiet

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- does      2- easier      3- amazed  
4- for      5- must

**Exam 5** محافظة البحيرة

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- I am visiting Egypt on holiday.  
2- Where do you come from?  
3- What are the most famous places in London!  
4- The Pyramids and Sphinx.  
5- Thank you very much.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- plant      2- along

- 3- pollution      4- going

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c. she was able to drink  
2- b. the jug  
3- a. The Crow and the Jug  
4- Do the best to achieve your goals.  
5- She will still be thirsty.  
6- The neck of the jug was too narrow and it was too heavy.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- c relaxed      2- b sale  
3- d opposite      4- a -ache  
5- a neighbourhood      6- b flows

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- to go      2- better      3- have  
4- surprised      5- already

**Exam 6** محافظة المنوفية

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Where are you going?  
2- Why?      3- He works there.  
4- It leaves at 7 am      5- Maybe next time.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- maps      2- comfortable  
3- plants      4- shopping

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- d. two new restaurants  
2- b. Flower's      3- a. one  
4- It was very busy that night.  
5- Last week he tried two new restaurants - Flower's and Cloud's.  
6- He will go to Flower's because it is cheaper and not as noisy as Cloud's.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b. Public services      2- a. easy  
3- d. long      4- c. -ed  
5- b un-      6- a. old buildings

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- usually      2- haven't visited  
3- foggy      4- has to  
5- was charging



**Exam 7** محافظة كفر الشيخ**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Take the second road on the right.
- 2- How long does it take to go there?
- 3- No, I haven't.
- 4- Where do you stay?
- 5- It's a very lovely country.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1- because  | 2- blood   |
| 3- feelings | 4- develop |

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c travelling                      2- d b and c
- 3- c. It helps people get a greater understanding of themselves.
- 4- It's important to learn some necessary words such as: hello, goodbye, please, thank you, and bathroom.
- 5- Travelling enables you to do things different. Travelling enabled you to communicate with different persons. Travelling is important for human happiness and mental health.
- 6- Yes. Because travelling gives a great amount of information about different cultures.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- |                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1- c. aquarium | 2- b. antonym       |
| 3- a. contest  | 4- d. -ly           |
| 5- b. learns   | 6- d. neighbourhood |

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- |            |         |            |
|------------|---------|------------|
| 1- have to | 2- for  | 3- amazing |
| 4- leaves  | 5- well |            |

**Exam 8** محافظة دمياط**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Where are you going to spend it?
- 2- Why?
- 3- I will go with my family.
- 4- I can go diving and windsurfing.
- 5- Thank you very much.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- |               |        |
|---------------|--------|
| 1- population | 2- has |
|---------------|--------|

3- attractive

4- public

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c the problem of dyslexia
- 2- d. asked a teacher to give me special lessons
- 3- d both drawing and painting
- 4- The parents.
- 5- When the writer was young, he could draw and paint, but he couldn't read or write.
- 6- He will teach them how to read and write.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1- c. organizer | 2- d. succeed in |
| 3- a. boring    | 4- b. -al        |
| 5- d. dis-      | 6- a. orphanage  |

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- |            |           |          |
|------------|-----------|----------|
| 1- cleaned | 2- better | 3- to do |
| 4- on      | 5- is     |          |

**Exam 9** محافظة الاسكندرية**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- What do you want?
- 2- I want to log into the internet.
- 3- You can go to the computer lab.
- 4- Where is the computer lab?
- 5- You are welcome.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- |          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| 1- money | 2- countries |
| 3- are   | 4- them      |

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- d. try to help poor people
- 2- c. poor man                      3- b. pleased
- 4- His eyes filled with tears.
- 5- Because it is not polite.
- 6- He will help his sick wife and his hungry children.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- |             |              |             |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1- a kettle | 2- b ancient | 3- b. un-   |
| 4- a. greet | 5- b. asleep | 6- c. -ment |

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- |                   |             |           |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1- been           | 2- like     | 3- boring |
| 4- wasn't able to | 5- finished |           |



**Exam 10** محافظة بورسعيد**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- What is the matter?  
 2- Have you read the instructions well?  
 3- Yes, please. 4- 3500 L.E.  
 5- You are welcome.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- expensive 2- peaceful  
 3- facilities 4- started

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- a. Reasons for travelling  
 2- d. more difficult  
 3- c. business  
 4- People come to drink the water of these springs, or to bathe.  
 5- Travelling in the past was very difficult and there are many reasons for travelling.  
 6- Maybe they will travel by rockets.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- a. ferry 2- b. boring 3- a. -ment  
 4- d. horrible 5- c. in- 6- b. results

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- leaves 2- best 3- have had  
 4- is meeting 5- was able to

**Exam 11** محافظة الاسماعيلية**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- I've learn how to drive cars.  
 2- A month ago.  
 3- Who taught you how to drive cars.  
 4- Sure.  
 5- When can we start?

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- hobbies 2- collection  
 3- corner 4- filled

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- a. once 2- b. beautiful  
 3- d. Ismailia City 4- The City of Beauty  
 5- Because it contains numerous objects.  
 6- Between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- c. botanical garden 2- b. uncomfortable  
 3- a. peaceful 4- a. -ing  
 5- d. dis- 6- c. turned

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- on 2- better 3- have lived  
 4- I wasn't able to 5- wanted

**Exam 12** محافظة الفيوم**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Yes, I have 2- How much is it?  
 3- Have you used it yet?  
 4- You can use the charger.  
 5- You're welcome.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- outdoors 2- pollution  
 3- traffic 4- life

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- d. 8  
 2- c. Lost in the jungle  
 3- b. cloudy  
 4- The plane crashed. Noha didn't find any of the passengers.  
 5- She might have been somewhere else.  
 6- I'll walk to a nearby village or city.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- c. dyslexia 2- d. competition  
 3- a. well 4- b. -ian  
 5- c. un- 6- b. botanical garden

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- better 2- arrives 3- was  
 4- exciting 5- has known

**Exam 13** محافظة بني سويف**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- I read books.  
 2- What kind of books do you like reading?  
 3- What about you?  
 4- I like playing karate.  
 5- I'm not good at it.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- hobbies 2- spend  
 3- best 4- twice



**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- d. Encouragement is important  
 2- b. the boys                      3- a. Egypt  
 4- She did her best to help her husband to be successful.  
 5- No, it wasn't. Because it costs a lot of money.  
 6- They will be great men in society.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- a. Traffic    2- c. recent    3- d. dirty  
 4- b. -ment    5- a. in-    6- b. unusual

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- starts    2- the worst    3- surprised  
 4- has    5- visited

**Exam14** محافظة المنيا**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Pleased to meet you, too.  
 2- I'm going to Aswan.  
 3- Where will you stay?  
 4- Will you visit any tourist places?  
 5- I hope you enjoy your stay there.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- dyslexia                      2- understand  
 3- encouraged                4- in

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- b. should tell the truth    2- c. seat  
 3- a. liar                      4- To be in comfort.  
 5- He learned not to lie again.  
 6- The old man threw the bag from the train window.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- c. complaint                2- a. winner  
 3- b. do                          4- d. -ness  
 5- c. im-                          6- b. she can't hear

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- is going to                      2- amazed  
 3- has been                      4- was able to  
 5- easiest

**Exam15** محافظة الوادى الجديد**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- I bought it yesterday.  
 2- It's 3000 pounds.  
 3- Where did you buy it?  
 4- Does it have a discount?  
 5- Yes, sure.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- attractive                      2- exhibitions  
 3- at                                  4- outdoors

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c use less energy  
 2- b kept food cool  
 3- a quick and calm  
 4- The history of fridges.  
 5- Yes, they are, because they keep our food cool.  
 6- People have used ice to keep food cool for a long time.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- c. monument                2- b. normal  
 3- d. paid                          4- a. in-  
 5- d -ive                          6- b. fixed

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- since    2- boring    3- read  
 4- shops    5- driven

**Exam16** محافظة مطروح**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- It's a pleasure to meet you, too  
 2- Where are you from?  
 3- No, it isn't.  
 4- What places did you visit?  
 5- Have a nice time

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- places                          2- traffic  
 3- peaceful                      4- at

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c. an interesting visit    2- d. car  
 3- a. summer                4- The brother  
 5- Three weeks



6- Yes, I think so because it was a good experience.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b. champions      2- d. -ful  
3- c. relax      4- a. awake  
5- c. lodger      6- a. un-

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- hasn't done      2- nor  
3- interested      4- leaves  
5- might

**Exam 17** محافظة البحر الأحمر

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- Yes, I can.  
2- Walk past the shopping centre and take the second road on the right.  
3- Is it far?  
4- What can I see there?  
5- You are welcome.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- weekends      2- go  
3- sports centre      4- aquarium

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c. sports      2- a. free time  
3- d. Many  
4- Because of their busy lives.  
5- Cooperating and to be positive people.  
6- In clubs.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b secret      2- c workers      3- d boring  
4- c dis-      5- a -ness      6- b reached

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- 1- clean      2- careful      3- have  
4- shouldn't      5- neither

**Exam 18** محافظة شمال سيناء

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- I like football.  
2- Why do you like football?  
3- Who's your favourite footballer?  
4- Yes, of course  
5- Because he scores many goals.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- monuments      2- Museum  
3- countryside      4- amazed

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- d. seventeen      2- b. amazed  
3- c. garden  
4- To pick some oranges  
5- The books.      6- Three

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- c. Dyslexia      2- a. old      3- d. peaceful  
4- b. -ness      5- d. in-      6- b. prize

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- leaves      2- tallest      3- hasn't  
4- saw      5- had to

**Exam 19** محافظة جنوب سيناء

**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- It leaved at 3 p.m.  
2- How long does it take to Aswan?  
3- Yes, sure.      4- How much is it?  
5- Here you are.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- plugged      2- turned  
3- fill in      4- password

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- a birthday party      2- c bedroom  
3- d returned  
4- To help him in farming He likes farming very much.  
5- She prepared lots of nice cakes for them.  
6- Tarek.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b lake      2- c quiet      3- d interesting  
4- b in-      5- a -en      6- c pass

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- next      2- kindness      3- better  
4- since      5- moved



**Exam20** منطقة القاهرة الأزهرية**1- Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

- 1- No, I am not.
- 2- What kind of books do you like?
- 3- borrow this story from you.

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

- 1- What do your do?
- 2- I have been to Luxor.

**3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- d interrupt                      2- b. news
- 3- a for                              4- c. Tell
- 5- b start

**4- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- He decided to windsurf alone.
- 2- Some people in a boat came to help Tarek and took him back.
- 3- He learned not to windsurf alone.
- 4- d boat
- 5- a with an older brother

**Exam21** منطقة الجيزة الأزهرية**1- Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

- 1- I like trains.
- 2- Because they are fast and comfortable.
- 3- I like trams.

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations::**

- 1- That's a great idea.
- 2- Pleased to meet you.

**3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b. indoors                      2- c. neither / nor
- 3- a. charge                      4- c. kindness
- 5- d. since

**4- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- The initiative aims to improve the quality of public services.
- 2- It has begun since 2019.
- 3- It has sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help people who are ill.
- 4- b. better                      5- a country

**Exam22** منطقة الغربية الأزهرية**1- Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

- 1- What about going by train?
- 2- What time does the first train leave?
- 3- Where will we meet?

**2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

- 1- Good morning!                      2- Well done!

**3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- a. coffee machine                      2- b. more
- 3- c. hear                      4- b. both                      5- d. yet

**4- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- Cairo.                      2- He was born in Cairo.
- 3- When he was little, he found reading and writing very difficult.
- 4- b. dyslexia                      5- d. disability

**Exam 23** أبناؤنا بالخارج**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

- 1- What about you?
- 2- I think I will travel to Alex.
- 3- it is very interesting.
- 4- What do you do there?
- 5- We'll spend great time there.

**2- Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- 1- Initiative                      2- difference
- 3- volunteer                      4- making

**3- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- 1- c quickly                      2- a died
- 3- b. careful                      4- A house on fire!
- 5- They took less than 10 minutes.
- 6- He woke up in horror when he heard people screaming.

**4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- b includes                      2- a leather
- 3- c complaint                      4- d boring
- 5- a raft                      6- c cyberbullying

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- are                      2- disappointed
- 3- been                      4- leaves
- 5- already



### Test (1)

#### A Language Functions

##### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking Rana about the way to the bank.

**Tourist** : Excuse me, can you help me find a bank, please?

**Rana** : Yes, of course. ① .....

**Tourist** : Good. ② ..... ?

**Rana** : It takes about 15 minutes to get there.

**Tourist** : ③ ..... ?

**Rana** : No, You can go on foot.

**Tourist** : Do you think it's open now?

**Rana** : ④ .....

**Tourist** : Great! ⑤ .....

**Rana** : You're welcome.

#### B Reading Comprehension

##### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

is - since - decorated - was - top - famous

The Leaning Tower of Pisa, in Italy, is ① ..... because it looks like it might fall over. It ④ ..... 187 feet high and has 8 floors. Over 293 steps lead to 7 bells at the ② ..... The outside is ③ ..... with beautiful paintings. Over the years, the tower has been one of the most important buildings in Italy and an important tourist attraction.

##### 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

It is said that books are our one and best friend, because other friends may leave us and go, but what we read in books helps us in life in one way or other and books always stay with us. When we read a book, we can easily find a solution to many problems. Reading teaches children about the world around them. Books can easily





## Final Revision

entertain them if they are bored.

Reading can provide information, which can help us with our projects or home tasks. Reading is fun, and as a book is easy to carry anywhere, one can easily read it anywhere.

A person who reads is smarter than the one who doesn't read. A person can learn to understand situations. Reading is an excellent practice as it helps in building the personality of a person.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....  
**a** book                      **b** information                      **c** fun                      **d** solution
- When you are ....., you can read a book to entertain you.  
**a** poor                      **b** rich                      **c** hungry                      **d** bored
- The passage is mainly about .....  
**a** reading                      **b** smart people  
**c** people who don't read                      **d** why we shouldn't read

### B. Answer the following questions:

- Where can we find solutions to many problems?  
.....
- How can reading help children?  
.....
- Do you think people will continue to read? Why / Why not?  
.....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is a form of transport that uses rails like a railway to travel along roads, usually in cities.  
**a** map                      **b** station                      **c** ferry                      **d** tram
- The party is getting noisy. The word "noisy" is a synonym of .....  
**a** mute                      **b** loud                      **c** calm                      **d** quiet
- Their son will start to study at 7. The verb "start" is an antonym of .....  
**a** finish                      **b** bring                      **c** begin                      **d** reach
- The prefix ..... changes the verb "sleep" into an adjective.  
**a** un-                      **b** dis-                      **c** a-                      **d** im-









## Test (2)

**A** Language Functions**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Nada and Menna are going to the sports centre.

Nada : Where are you going, Menna?

Menna : ① .....

Nada : ② ..... ?

Menna : It's next to the aquarium.

Nada : What sport do you play there?

Menna : ③ .....

Nada : ④ ..... ?

Menna : No, it's not hard to do karate.

Nada : How often do you go there?

Menna : ⑤ .....

**B** Reading Comprehension**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

share - during - while - poor - went - honest

Once, there was a bad man. He liked everything to be his own. He could not ① ..... his things with anyone, not even his friends or the ② ..... One day, the man lost thirty gold coins. He went to his friend's house and told him how he lost his gold coins. His friend was a/an ③ ..... man. Fortunately, he told the bad man that he found his coins ④ ..... he was walking home.

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My name is Imad. Birthdays are very exciting for me. My parents give me presents. Last year, I got a bicycle, and it is my favourite gift. They also have a party on every birthday. All my friends and other relatives come together to celebrate.

At school, I am allowed to wear a coloured T-shirt for my birthday. I always wear the prettiest of my clothes and take a lot of chocolate with me to school. My class sing "Happy Birthday" to me. Then the teacher allows me to hand out chocolate. In the evening, everyone comes to my house. I cut the cake, and my mother cooks dinner. I play with my friends and get a lot of presents, too.



My grandparents also come and visit us. I enjoy my birthdays and always wait for the next one.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The passage is mainly about .....  
 a T-shirts                      b chocolate                      c birthdays                      d clothes
- Last year, Imad got a ..... as a present.  
 a bicycle                      b car                      c toy                      d T-shirt
- Imad's mother cooks ..... for his birthday.  
 a breakfast                      b lunch                      c chocolate                      d dinner

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- What does Imad have every birthday?  
 .....
- What song do the friends sing on Imad's birthday?  
 .....
- What is Imad allowed to wear at school for his birthday?  
 .....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- A/An ..... is a place where people can go to see paintings, photographs, etc.  
 a jewellery                      b exhibition                      c pottery                      d timetable
- She's worried about her husband's health. "worried" has the same meaning as .....  
 a anxious                      b famous                      c cool                      d unpleasing
- The post office is not so far from here. "far" is the opposite of .....  
 a distant                      b above                      c near                      d next
- I'll do the exercise again. This means that I'll ..... it.  
 a undo                      b doer                      c do                      d redo
- We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of the word "music".  
 a -al                      b -y                      c -ment                      d -ache
- Something strange happened to me yesterday. This means that I had a strange ..... yesterday.  
 a experience                      b exercise                      c experiment                      d expert



5

- Both the boy \_\_\_\_\_ (or) the girl were happy.
- While Dalia \_\_\_\_\_ (read), her mum called her.
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the maths test start?
- Laptops are \_\_\_\_\_ (most) expensive than tablets.
- The government \_\_\_\_\_ (build) a new school. Everything is arranged.

## D

## 6

## A review of a visit to Tanta



## Test (3)

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking the tour guide about a place to visit.

**Tourist** : Excuse me, could you suggest a place to visit tomorrow?

**Guide** : ① ..... ?

**Tourist** : ② ..... How can I get there?

**Guide** : You can take a taxi.

**Tourist** : ③ ..... ?

**Guide** : It would be nice to come with you.

**Tourist** : Shall we go to Khan El Khalili after visiting the museum?

**Guide** : ④ .....

**Tourist** : When can we meet?

**Guide** : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

monument - checked - on - tourists - moved - in

The Taj Mahal is a beautiful ① ..... that is found in India. Jahan, the fifth emperor, needed the Taj Mahal to be a tomb for his second wife. She died ② ..... 1630 after giving birth to their 14<sup>th</sup> child. When her remains were ③ ..... to the Taj Mahal, she became known as Mumtaz Mahal. The Taj Mahal is now visited by thousands of ④ ..... every year.

## 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The camel is called the ship of the desert because it has the ability to stay alive in the desert without food and water for six to ten days. Camels are able to stand the loss of about one third of their body liquid without feeling tired. Their noses, ears and eyes are formed in such a way that they are least affected by the dust of the desert. It is a very useful animal for desert travellers and they can carry enormous loads. It is commonly believed that a camel does not need food very regularly, but this is not correct. Because of its amazing body, it can store food and water for many days.





## Final Revision

The camel has a big hump on its back. As a matter of fact, this hump is a store house of fats. The camel uses the fat as a source of energy during its long journeys in the desert. When it does not get water, it uses the stored water in its body.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a Camels      ☐ b Water      ☐ c Deserts      ☐ d Bodies
- The camel can ..... food and water for many days in its body.  
☐ a steal      ☐ b start      ☐ c study      ☐ d store
- The underlined word "it" refers to the .....  
☐ a camel      ☐ d desert      ☐ c energy      ☐ d journey

### B. Answer the following questions:

4. How long can a camel stay alive without food and water?

5. Where does a camel store its food and water?

6. How do you think we will use camels in the future?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is someone who is travelling on a plane, train, etc. and is not driving it.  
☐ a passenger      ☐ b platform      ☐ c station      ☐ d metro
- It will be fun to go to the circus. The word "fun" is a synonym of .....  
☐ a unpleasing      ☐ b ugly      ☐ c enjoyable      ☐ d noisy
- The players were very unlucky not to win. The verb "win" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a lose      ☐ b gain      ☐ c deal      ☐ d score
- He never understands me correctly. This means that he always ..... me.  
☐ a misunderstands      ☐ b understanding  
☐ c disunderstands      ☐ d ununderstands
- The noun of the verb "achieve" is .....  
☐ a achievable      ☐ b achievement      ☐ c achieves      ☐ d achieved



6. This is a school for students who can't hear. This means that it's a school for \_\_\_\_\_ students.

**a** dumb

**b** blind

**c** healthy

**d** deaf

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (going) to buy a modern car next year.

2. The story is \_\_\_\_\_ (bored).

3. The film \_\_\_\_\_ (starting) tomorrow at 9.

4. You \_\_\_\_\_ (must) smoke in hospitals.

5. Muhammad arrived home \_\_\_\_\_ (during) his wife was cooking.

## **D** Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A review of a visit to El-Orman Gardens

Handwriting practice lines for the writing task.



Test (4)

**A Language Functions**

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Amir and Hany are talking about where to spend their holiday.

Amir : Do you have any plans for the weekend?

Hany : 1 .....

Amir : I have a good idea. 2 .....

Hany : 3 ..... ?

Amir : We can enjoy the beautiful scenery of Wadi El-Rayan waterfalls.

Hany : Where can we meet?

Amir : 4 .....

Hany : How will we go there?

Amir : 5 .....

**B Reading Comprehension**

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

buy - pay - artist - pays - art - sell

Many people like to collect old things. Some old things are very expensive. Some very rich people collect works of 1 ..... They often 2 ..... millions of dollars for a painting by a famous 3 ..... These paintings usually become more expensive as time passes, so people buy them hoping to 4 ..... them for more than they paid for them.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Trees are the best gift of nature for us. They make the environment beautiful and clean. Water and sunlight are very important to help trees grow.

Trees can be called the best friend to mankind. People get food from trees. Many animals get their food from leaves, vegetables and fruits grown on trees. They also live near the shadow of trees. We should stop cutting down trees to save nature. They take in sunlight, carbon dioxide and water to produce oxygen which helps to support all forms of life on earth.



Wood from trees is used to make paper, furniture and other goods of daily use. As a result, a large number of trees are cut down every day to cover these needs.

Trees also give us wood and shade. Houses, chairs and toys are made from wood we get from trees. Different kinds of trees provide us with materials for food, clothing and medicines.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a the air      ☐ b trees      ☐ c what we eat      ☐ d the shade
- A ..... number of trees are cut down every day to cover people's needs.  
☐ a small      ☐ b large      ☐ c tiny      ☐ d few
- People and animals breathe in .....  
☐ a sunlight      ☐ b water      ☐ c oxygen      ☐ d carbon dioxide

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Why are trees helpful to people?

.....

5. How do trees produce oxygen?

.....

6. In your opinion, how can we protect trees in the future?

.....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- A ..... is something you make when you are unhappy about something.  
☐ a deal      ☐ b password      ☐ c complaint      ☐ d toaster
- He's the champion of the last match. "champion" gives the meaning of .....  
☐ a loser      ☐ b winner      ☐ c competitor      ☐ d spectator
- He is so rude that nobody likes him. "nobody" is the opposite of .....  
☐ a everyone      ☐ b anybody      ☐ c anyone      ☐ d no one
- The prefix ..... is related to space.  
☐ a bio-      ☐ b aero-      ☐ c hyper-      ☐ d astro-
- Ali writes computer programs. He is a programm- .....  
☐ a -er      ☐ b -ist      ☐ c -or      ☐ d -ing



6. Ziad succeeded in reaching his goal. This means that he \_\_\_\_\_ it.

- a** achieved      **b** connected      **c** managed      **d** entered

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We have sold the family house \_\_\_\_\_ (for) 2005.
2. Has Fareeda \_\_\_\_\_ (never) joined a sports club?
3. We travelled to Luxor \_\_\_\_\_ (on) March.
4. When does the bus to Suez \_\_\_\_\_ (leaves)?
5. While Mo'men was studying English, the phone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring).

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

## How you could be a community hero



## Test (5)

**A Language Functions****1** Finish the following dialogue:

Sally is inviting Nora to spend the day with her.

**Sally** : Why don't you come to my house to have dinner tomorrow?

**Nora** : ① .....

**Sally** : What about having it in the club?

**Nora** : ② .....

**Sally** : ③ ..... ?

**Nora** : We can go to Pizza Hut.

**Sally** : ④ ..... ?

**Nora** : We can meet at the bus stop.

**Sally** : Shall I invite Mona?

**Nora** : ⑤ .....

**B Reading Comprehension****2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

less - locally - modern - especially - least - subjects

Sara is 15 and she goes to prep school. She goes to one of the biggest and most ① ..... schools in Giza with 2700 students and 220 teachers. Her lessons begin at 08:00 and finish at 02:35. She has eight ② ..... Science is her favourite. Maths is the subject she likes the ③ ..... She likes all her friends, ④ ..... Mariam.

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A zoo is a place where many animals and birds live. They live in closed areas in the zoo and the visitors can see the animals from particular places. There are people who take care of the zoo. They provide the animals and birds with the best care. Zookeepers make sure that the animals or the visitors of the zoo are not hurt in any way.

Zoos are one of the most favourite places for kids to visit on any holiday. They give them a chance to see the animals which they read about in books or watch on TV. Children as well as adults can learn a lot about the animals and birds at zoos.





## Final Revision

Zookeepers make sure that visitors don't offer any food to animals or birds. The food may make the animals sick. So, visitors shouldn't try to feed animals because it may be harmful for them. Zookeepers provide proper food for all animals. This food is prepared according to the needs of the animals. When the animals are given proper food, they are healthy.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a zoos      ☐ b birds      ☐ c visitors      ☐ d zookeepers
- At the zoo, it is a good chance to see the animals which you watch in .....  
☐ a streets      ☐ b walls      ☐ c TV      ☐ d houses
- The underlined word "**them**" refers to the .....  
☐ a animals      ☐ b people      ☐ c zookeepers      ☐ d visitors

### B. Answer the following questions:

- Where can people learn about the animals and birds?  
 .....

- What can live in the zoo?  
 .....

- Why shouldn't visitors try to feed the animals?  
 .....



## Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is something that is a good price or free to encourage people to buy it.  
☐ a microwave      ☐ b special offer      ☐ c kettle      ☐ d coffee machine
- This archaeologist made an incredible discovery. The word "incredible" is a synonym of .....  
☐ a really good      ☐ b really bad      ☐ c terrible      ☐ d unknown
- The two results are equal. "equal" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a different      ☐ b the same      ☐ c a like      ☐ d known
- It's an interesting biography. The prefix "bio-" in the word "biography" means ".....".  
☐ a death      ☐ b job      ☐ c appearance      ☐ d life
- The person who works with science is a scient-.....  
☐ a -er      ☐ b -ist      ☐ c -or      ☐ d -y



6. There are many people watching the match. They are around 80,0000

- a** organizers      **b** players      **c** spectators      **d** competitors

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I wrote an email to my friend a moment \_\_\_\_\_ (since).
2. The bus \_\_\_\_\_ (has) arrived yet.
3. Golf is less popular \_\_\_\_\_ (then) football.
4. I fell asleep \_\_\_\_\_ (while) the film.
5. You should \_\_\_\_\_ (driving) slowly.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

## A review of the leisure and sports facilities in your town







Test (6)

**A** Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Samy is talking to Ali about a microwave that he bought online

Ali : When did you last buy something online?

Samy : 1 .....

Ali : 2 ..... ?

Samy : I bought a kettle and a microwave.

Ali : Did the kettle work well?

Samy : 3 .....

Ali : 4 ..... ?

Samy : Unfortunately, it was really noisy.

Ali : What did you do?

Samy : 5 .....

**B** Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

in - moved - artists - moves - earn - on

Ali was born in Tanta, 1 ..... 2<sup>nd</sup> December 1988. His parents were 2 ..... As his parents weren't rich, he worked eleven hours a day to 3 ..... enough money. After he finished school, he 4 ..... to Cairo where he worked at a famous bank. He joined a club and started doing his favourite sport.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Population means the total number of people living in a particular area. The world population right now stands at more than 7.8 billion. China and India are more than 35% of this population. China has the most populated country and India is taking the second position.

It was expected that the world population would reach one billion for the first time in 1804. It was 1927 before it reached two billion, but it took only 33 years to reach three billion in 1960. Now it only takes 12 to 13 years to add one billion people to the world. The food produced every year isn't enough for all people, and it becomes expensive.



Because of that, the prices of useful items increase. It leads to the pollution of water and air. To control the rate of population, different governments have taken a lot of steps around the world.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a governments    ☐ b billions    ☐ c pollution    ☐ d population
- Before 1804, the world population was ..... one billion.  
☐ a above    ☐ b up    ☐ c over    ☐ d under
- India is the ..... populated country in the world.  
☐ a first    ☐ b second    ☐ c third    ☐ d forth

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Which country has the most number of people?  
 .....
- After 12 to 13 years, how many people will add to the world population?  
 .....
- Why does the food become expensive every year?  
 .....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- To ..... is to complete information on a piece of paper or online.  
☐ a log in    ☐ b plug in    ☐ c turn on    ☐ d fill in
- The garden is really attractive. The word "attractive" has the same meaning as .....  
☐ a beautiful    ☐ b ugly    ☐ c unattractive    ☐ d terrible
- The view is really incredible. The word "incredible" gives the opposite of .....  
☐ a fantastic    ☐ b really good    ☐ c amazing    ☐ d terrible
- The prefix "re-" in "recycle" means that we use something .....  
☐ a again    ☐ b more    ☐ c once    ☐ d a lot
- We add the suffix "....." to the verb "work" to refer to the person.  
☐ a -er    ☐ b -or    ☐ c -ist    ☐ d -ed
- I like reading about people's lives. I like reading .....  
☐ a applications    ☐ b competitions    ☐ c biographies    ☐ d awards



**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The students have \_\_\_\_\_ (yet) written the lesson.
2. Sama is \_\_\_\_\_ (short) than Hadeer.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (Has) you ever climbed a mountain?
4. She doesn't have to \_\_\_\_\_ (bought) milk. We already have enough.
5. They are coming back to Egypt \_\_\_\_\_ (at) January the 1<sup>st</sup>.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

### Your favourite hobby



## Test (7)

### A Language Functions

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Lamia is talking to her mother about changes in the kitchen.**

**Lamia** : Why don't we buy a microwave and a coffee machine?

**Mother** : Can the microwave really help me?

**Lamia** : ① .....

**Mother** : What about the coffee machine?

**Lamia** : ② .....

**Mother** : ③ ..... ?

**Lamia** : Yes, it is easy to use.

**Mother** : ④ ..... ?

**Lamia** : You can order them online.

**Mother** : ⑤ .....

### B Reading Comprehension

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

make - boring - bored - Unluckily - have - fishing

I have always wanted to go ① ..... Last summer, I went on a trip to Sharm El-Sheikh. On the last day of my trip, I went fishing. ② ..... , I didn't catch any fish and I got ③ ..... So I decided to ④ ..... a swim. When I took off my clothes, my wallet fell out of my pocket into the water and I couldn't get it back. It was such a terrible day.

#### 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Education is the important thing for our life. Education is important to understand the universe around us. With the help of knowledge, we can develop a new way for our life. If people are educated, they can know their duties and rights quite well. First of all, education gives us the ability to read and write to anyone. A good education is extremely essential for everyone to grow and succeed in life.

Everyone has their own dream of doing something important in life. Sometimes parents also dream that their kids will be at high professions like doctors, engineers,





officers, or any other high-level professions. All our goals can be achieved by education only.

Everyone has the right to a good education to achieve their goals in life. Education does not only offer a good job but also supports the ability to understand life from a new point of view.

Education is very important and with the help of it, anyone can change their life in a better way.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a life                      ☐ b education                      ☐ c professions                      ☐ d universe
- Everyone has the ..... to a good education to achieve goals in life.  
☐ a light                      ☐ b night                      ☐ c sight                      ☐ d right
- Most parents dream that their kids will be ..... at professions.  
☐ a low                      ☐ b high                      ☐ c bad                      ☐ d cruel

### B. Answer the following questions:

4. What can education give people?

.....

5. How can people achieve their goals?

.....

6. Why is a good education essential for everyone?

.....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A ..... is a board that people put on a wall to put messages on.  
☐ a noticeboard                      ☐ b bench                      ☐ c graffiti                      ☐ d neighbourhood
- The two boys look very similar. The word "similar" has the same meaning as .....  
☐ a alike                      ☐ b negative                      ☐ c different                      ☐ d positive
- The food was horrible. The word "horrible" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a known                      ☐ b terrible                      ☐ c bad                      ☐ d wonderful
- To change the adjective "happy" into the opposite, add the prefix ".....".  
☐ a un-                      ☐ b dis-                      ☐ c im-                      ☐ d a-









## Test (8)

**A** Language Functions**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Maha is talking to Dina who has bought a new smart TV.

**Maha** : What a nice TV! When did you buy it?

**Dina** : ① .....

**Maha** : How much is it?

**Dina** : ② .....

**Maha** : ③ ..... ?

**Dina** : I bought it from City Mall.

**Maha** : ④ ..... ?

**Dina** : Yes, it has a 40% discount.

**Maha** : Can you come with me to get one?

**Dina** : ⑤ .....

**B** Reading Comprehension**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sad - in - join - pleased - on - succeed

My name is Nasser. I was born in Cairo but I live in Aswan. I go to prep school. I will go to secondary school when I ① ..... I'm very much interested ② ..... my study. I am ③ ..... because I always get high marks in English. This will help me when I ④ ..... the university because many interesting subjects are taught in English.

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Time is man's friend. Some people have no respect for it, so they are the enemy of time. The value of time in our lives is important. Our activities show if we realize the value of time or not. People who are careless, people who do not respect dates, people who do things later than expected do not understand the value of time. Some people continue to waste time even after knowing the importance of it. Some people tend to do things in a hurry if they have a lot of time. This is because they always think they have time and put off their work to the next day. Before they leave their work,



they are in a hurry to complete their work. If you know the value of time, you'll have success in your life.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a work      ☐ b time      ☐ c study      ☐ d health
- Time is very ..... in our lives.  
☐ a unimportant      ☐ b important      ☐ c careless      ☐ d useless
- Some people don't ..... the value of time.  
☐ a leave      ☐ b respect      ☐ c study      ☐ d complete

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What is man's friend?

.....

5. Why don't some people realize the value of time?

.....

6. How can we help students know the importance of time?

.....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- A ..... is someone who pays to live in a house.  
☐ a leaflet      ☐ b pavement      ☐ c tenant      ☐ d building
- My parents always support me to get better at school. "support" is a synonym of .....  
☐ a hinder      ☐ b discourage      ☐ c help      ☐ d involve
- We must be mindful of the danger of fire. The word "mindful" gives the opposite of .....  
☐ a relaxed      ☐ b unmindful      ☐ c negative      ☐ d aware
- The worker has to .....-connect the machine before he leaves.  
☐ a im-      ☐ b dis-      ☐ c un-      ☐ d. pre-
- Many people use soc- ..... media to communicate with their friends.  
☐ a -ial      ☐ b ive      ☐ c -ing      ☐ d -ness
- The bad results of his exams made his dad unhappy. His dad was .....  
☐ a upset      ☐ b relaxed      ☐ c unkind      ☐ d disabled







## Test (9)

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A customer is talking to a shop assistant before buying a new computer.

**Customer :** How can I use this computer?

**Assistant :** First, ① .....

**Customer :** ② ..... ?

**Assistant :** No, using it isn't difficult.

**Customer :** ③ ..... ?

**Assistant :** Yes, it's advisable to make a strong password.

**Customer :** Can I use letters and numbers?

**Assistant :** ④ .....

**Customer :** What should I do if I need help?

**Assistant :** ⑤ .....

**Customer :** Thank you for your great help.

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

comfortable - country - in - lake - at - reviews

My family and I are looking forward to going on a trip to Al Huda Gardens! They are open ① ..... 9 am, and it takes about an hour to get there by car. The online ② ..... are fantastic. The gardens have lots to see. We will make sure that we wear ③ ..... shoes! We can see a lot flowers and plants from all over the country. There is also a small ④ ..... and a museum.

## 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Dolphins have been a popular attraction at zoos in recent years. They are more interesting than tigers and lions because they are more active and perform tricks, like circus animals. Although they want to do as the trainer wants, they get bored when they are asked to do the same trick twice. This is one reason that makes scientists believe that they are intelligent. Dolphins are believed that they are the nicest creatures in the sea.

There are stories about dolphins that helped sailors who were going to drown in the





## Final Revision

sea. In Africa, there are two dolphins that are trained to help sailors swim and frighten sharks away. Some people like to watch dolphins. They enjoy watching their tricks, actions and movements. Really dolphins are very interesting and funny animals.

Children also love seeing dolphins as they like their fast actions and funny way of playing, jumping or running. They are very nice creatures and good animals.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a dolphins      ☐ b tigers      ☐ c sharks      ☐ d people
- The underlined word "**recent**" means .....  
☐ a new      ☐ b old      ☐ c bad      ☐ d good
- Dolphins are ..... animals.  
☐ a bad      ☐ b stupid      ☐ c sad      ☐ d smart

### B. Answer the following questions :

4. Why do children love seeing dolphins?

5. Where do dolphins live?

6. How are dolphins useful?

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... is the quality of being kind and helpful towards other people.  
☐ a Darkness      ☐ b Illness      ☐ c Weakness      ☐ d Kindness
- He works hard to improve his skills. "improve" has the same meaning as .....  
☐ a hurt      ☐ b damage      ☐ c discourage      ☐ d develop
- Mr Hossam always teaches us how to be positive. "positive" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a negative      ☐ b different      ☐ c mindful      ☐ d relaxed
- This man is not kind. This means that he is .....-kind.  
☐ a in-      ☐ b il-      ☐ c dis-      ☐ d un-
- To change the adjective "calm" into an adverb, we add the suffix ".....".  
☐ a -ly      ☐ b -ing      ☐ c -ed      ☐ d -ous









## Test (10)

### A Language Functions

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Nora is talking about her mobile that isn't working.

Nora : My mobile isn't working.

Magdy : When did you last charge it?

Nora : ① .....

Magdy : Do you charge your phone overnight?

Nora : ② ..... Is that wrong?

Magdy : Yes, it is. I think you need to buy a new battery.

Nora : ③ ..... ?

Magdy : It's about 100 LE.

Nora : ④ ..... ?

Magdy : I'll get it tomorrow.

Nora : ⑤ .....

### B Reading Comprehension

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

tomorrow - now - guess - on - yesterday - in

I bought a new laptop ① ..... First, I plugged ② ..... the laptop. To charge the battery, I left it for three hours. Then, I turned it ③ ..... I typed my name and chose a password that nobody could ④ ..... I started using it and watched my favourite videos. I enjoyed using the internet and visited websites in different languages.

#### 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Dear Mona,

I'm sorry I didn't write to you last week. I was busy with my second term exams. Unluckily, they were very difficult and I had to study very hard. The first exam was an Arabic exam. It was long and difficult, but I did well. The second exam was the English exam. It was very hard, too. Then I had science, maths and social studies



but they were a little easier. I finished all my exams last Thursday. I write to tell you that we arrange to come to Alex. Please, wait for me at the station. We are coming next Friday. We like Alex very much and they look forward to coming with us.

I'm looking forward to seeing you soon.

Yours,

Sara

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The passage is mainly about .....  
☐ a exams      ☐ b families      ☐ c songs      ☐ d days of the week
- The writer is coming to Alex by .....  
☐ a car      ☐ b bike      ☐ c train      ☐ d plane
- The Arabic exam was so .....  
☐ a easy      ☐ b hard      ☐ c nice      ☐ d simple

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Who wrote the letter? To whom?

.....

5. Why was it written?

.....

6. Why was the writer busy?

.....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A/An ..... is a large house where children who are orphans live and are taken care of.

- ☐ a dyslexia      ☐ b orphanage      ☐ c dream      ☐ d experience

2. "The weather was fine and we had a pleasant holiday." "pleasant" is similar in meaning to .....

- ☐ a general      ☐ b different      ☐ c secure      ☐ d nice

3. "It's interesting to climb to the top of a mountain." "interesting" is an antonym of .....

- ☐ a boring      ☐ b exciting      ☐ c beautiful      ☐ d attractive

4. The prefix "aqua-" in "aquarium" means .....

- ☐ a land      ☐ b water      ☐ c rock      ☐ d air





## Final Revision

5. The word "kind" can be changed into a noun by adding the suffix "\_\_\_\_\_".
- a** -ness                      **b** -ly                      **c** -er                      **d** -ence
6. The boys stayed inside the house because it was raining heavily. This means that the boys stayed \_\_\_\_\_.
- a** indoor                      **b** indoors                      **c** outdoor                      **d** outdoors

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They are \_\_\_\_\_ (visited) the Great Pyramids next week.
2. Has your sister \_\_\_\_\_ (bake) a cake for us?
3. We need to have this report ready \_\_\_\_\_ (at) 15 minutes.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ (shouldn't) be kind to other people.
5. Neither Ali \_\_\_\_\_ (or) Ahmed is working hard today.

## D Writing

Your role model

Handwriting practice lines for the writing section.



## Test (11)

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Nada is asking Farah about her new leather bag.

Nada : Hi, Farah. How are you?

Farah : Hi, Nada. ① .....

Nada : What do you think of that leather bag, Farah?

Farah : ② .....

Nada : ③ ..... ?

Farah : I bought it online.

Nada : ④ ..... ?

Farah : It's made in Egypt.

Nada : Why do you like online shopping?

Farah : ⑤ .....

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

courts - benches - playing - fresh - facilities - play

There are many leisure activities and sports ① ..... in my town. We all love our Town Club. It is really big. I usually ② ..... handball with my friends. We also love our Town Park. It is full of wonderful trees and long ③ ..... It is a nice place where we can breathe ④ ..... air. I sometimes play chess there.

## 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The best way to improve the reading skill is by reading a lot. Reading is like sport or music. It needs a lot of practice. The best readers are people who love to read and who read a lot.

Reading for pleasure is different from reading you do for study. When you read for pleasure, you will not be tested for what you have read. You will not have to remember every detail. All you have to do is to enjoy what you have read. When you read for pleasure, you choose the book that you read. You can read mysteries, adventure novels, science fiction, biographies or whatever you want. It is not what you read, but





your enjoyment that matters. Reading also widens our knowledge and increases our information. It also tells us more information about many different subjects.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 - The main idea of the passage is .....  
☐ a reading has different types                      ☐ b reading novels  
☐ c widening our knowledge                      ☐ d going to libraries
- 2 - Reading for ..... is more enjoyable.  
☐ a playing                      ☐ b travel                      ☐ c pleasure                      ☐ d study
- 3 - You ..... remember every detail in reading for pleasure.  
☐ a are asked to                      ☐ b have to                      ☐ c don't have to                      ☐ d need to

## B. Answer the following questions :

- 4 - What does the underlined word "It" refer to?  
 .....
- 5 - How many types of reading are there in the passage?  
 .....
- 6 - Is there any difference between these types?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ..... is to find out something that people didn't know before.  
☐ a discover                      ☐ b achieve                      ☐ c snorkel                      ☐ d windsurf
2. "Equal" and "....." are synonyms.  
☐ a different                      ☐ b local                      ☐ c the same                      ☐ d safe
3. "As everybody knows, Tanta is a peaceful country." Here, "peaceful" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a quiet                      ☐ b calm                      ☐ c noisy                      ☐ d great
4. We can use the suffix "....." to change the word "warm" into an adverb.  
☐ a -ly                      ☐ b -ness                      ☐ c -er                      ☐ d -ment
5. The word "comfortable" can be changed into the opposite by adding the prefix ".....".  
☐ a im-                      ☐ b un-                      ☐ c dis-                      ☐ d aqua-
6. My car doesn't use petrol. This means that my car is .....  
☐ a fast                      ☐ b electric                      ☐ c slow                      ☐ d careful



**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) the manager tomorrow morning.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (In) Monday evening, I often watch a film.
3. Planes are \_\_\_\_\_ (fastest) than trains.
4. Two years ago, we \_\_\_\_\_ (have bought) a new house.
5. How long have you \_\_\_\_\_ (practising) sport?

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

## A review about teenagers' problems with social media





## Test (12)

**A** Language Functions**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Sally and Randa are talking about online shopping.

Sally : Hello! What are you doing, Randa?

Randa : Hello! Sally. **1** .....

Sally : **2** ..... ?

Randa : I am ordering headphones online.

Sally : **3** ..... ?

Randa : Because it is easier to buy what I need.

Sally : Do they deliver it on time?

Randa : **4** .....

Sally : How long does it take?

Randa : **5** .....

**B** Reading Comprehension**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

easy - books - gives - technology - giving - speaker

There are some items of **1** ..... in my house. The best item is the smart **2** ..... It looks great and it is **3** ..... to use. We can use it on our television or to play music. It **4** ..... us excellent sounds. The worst item in my house is the toaster. It looks good in the kitchen but it burns the bread.

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In England, people know that autumn arrives when apples begin to turn red in early September. Both red and golden apples are delicious. All through September and October the smell of apples fills the air on sunny days. You can get a fresh smell of apples and enjoy autumn scenery.

Adults pick the apples. Children shouldn't climb up on trees and risk hurting themselves and damaging the trees. The picking may not take long time just two hours at most. Many people like to watch the apple picking event as it is very interesting and they enjoy seeing fresh apples with their different colours. Young children also like to



watch this event. Some young children work in collecting apples although sometimes there are dangerous accidents when some of them fall while picking the apples.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
 a adults shouldn't pick the apples  
 b picking apples in England  
 c children are good in picking apples  
 d the colours of apples
- Apples are best picked by .....  
 a adults  
 b kids  
 c children  
 d babies
- Apples turn ..... in September.  
 a green  
 b red  
 c golden  
 d fellow

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. How do people know that autumn arrives?

.....

5. What two colours are in the passage?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

.....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- A/An ..... is pieces of wood that are put together so they can float on water.  
 a adventure  
 b tent  
 c instrument  
 d raft
- "Free tickets are available only for students." In this sentence, the word "free" can be replaced by .....  
 a paid  
 b unpaid  
 c cheap  
 d expensive
- "Attractive" and "....." are antonyms.  
 a beautiful  
 b cheerful  
 c nice  
 d ugly
- The word "enter" can be changed into a noun by adding the suffix ".....".  
 a -er  
 b -ance  
 c -ness  
 d -ly



5. The prefix “\_\_\_\_\_” can be added to the word “doors” to make a new word.

- a** in-      **b** un-      **c** dis-      **d** aqua-

6. I have bought a device that can help me boil water easily. This means I have bought a \_\_\_\_\_.

- a** coffee machine    **b** kettle    **c** smart TV    **d** speaker

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (try) sushi yesterday.
2. The students \_\_\_\_\_ (have to) do an exam yesterday.
3. I haven't go out \_\_\_\_\_ (since) four days. I'm so busy.
4. Have you answered all questions right \_\_\_\_\_ (yet)? You're so clever.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ (will buy) a car tomorrow. I have had the money already.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A short story about someone wants to find happiness



## Test (13)

**A** Language Functions**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Khaled and Salma are talking about a problem in their street.

**Khaled** : Oh! Our street is full of rubbish, Salma.

**Salma** : Yes. It's too bad.

**Khaled** : What can we do, Salma?

**Salma** : ① .....

**Khaled** : ② ..... ?

**Salma** : Yes, we can ask them to help us.

**Khaled** : ③ ..... ?

**Salma** : ④ ..... We'll need some equipment.

**Khaled** : Why don't we plant some trees?

**Salma** : ⑤ .....

**B** Reading Comprehension**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

learn - competitions - review - learned - view - hobby

Reading is my favourite ① ..... I go to the school library twice a week. There, I choose some books and stories to read. I prefer adventure stories. When I get a new book, I read it and write a ② ..... about it. I tell my friends about all new things I have ③ ..... I usually enter reading ④ ..... in my school

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Bees are very good insects. They are always busy doing some task or another. They are not lazy insects. Every one of the bees has something to do. Bees live in hives; they are small holes under the ground. Bees have a big queen which is a very big bee. They give us honey, so they are very useful. We need to care for them as they give us clean and healthy food that is needed by all people all over the world. Their honey is so useful compared to black honey.

There are two kinds of bees, males and females. Male bees are asked to do more difficult tasks. They go around flowers and get food from flowers. But female bees





## Final Revision

have different jobs to do. They organize the collected honey.

We learn from bees many lessons like hard work and order.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
☐ a honey is very useful                      ☐ b bees are important insects  
☐ c people dislike bees                      ☐ d insects in our world
- Bees live in .....  
☐ a hives                      ☐ b ovens                      ☐ c nests                      ☐ d fridges
- Bees get food from .....  
☐ a trees                      ☐ b hives                      ☐ c bees                      ☐ d flowers

### B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?

.....

5. Why are bees busy insects?

.....

6. What do we learn from bees?

.....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An ..... is a competition to find the best team or player in a sport.  
☐ a application                      ☐ b championship                      ☐ c award                      ☐ d speech
- "Turn off the lights when you leave, boys." In this sentence, the phrasal verb "turn off" is similar in meaning to .....  
☐ a turn on                      ☐ b switch on                      ☐ c switch off                      ☐ d plug in
- "We got a horrible feeling when our car stopped in the desert". In this sentence, "horrible" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a nice                      ☐ b bad                      ☐ c terrible                      ☐ d dirty
- We can use the suffix "....." to change the word "sweet" into a noun.  
☐ a -ness                      ☐ b -er                      ☐ c -ly                      ☐ d -ment
- The prefix "....." can be added to the word "agree" to get a verb with the opposite meaning.  
☐ a un-                      ☐ b dis-                      ☐ c in-                      ☐ d aqua-



6. That shop always offers good and cheap price. This means that the shop offers good \_\_\_\_\_.

**b deals**

boards

**d buyers**

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The film was \_\_\_\_\_ (amazed).

2. **A:** When \_\_\_\_\_ (do) you get married?

**B:** Last year.

3. Look at this car! It \_\_\_\_\_ (going to) crash.

4. You \_\_\_\_\_ (must) cross the street here. It's dangerous.

5. I want to eat \_\_\_\_\_ (either) fish and potatoes.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

### A review of a film you have watched





## Test (14)

**A** Language Functions**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Farah is going to the community meeting to improve the sports centre.

Nada : Hi Farah, Where are you going?

Farah : **1** .....

Nada : What are you going to discuss?

Farah : **2** .....

Nada : **3** ..... ?

Farah : We are going to paint it.

Nada : **4** ..... ?

Farah : Sure, many young people need a place to do activities.

Nada : Can I join you?

Farah : **5** .....

**B** Reading Comprehension**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

leave – After - leaves - plane - before - exhibition

My family and I are travelling to Luxor tomorrow. We are visiting a famous **1** ..... We are travelling there by **2** ..... It **3** ..... at 9 from Cairo Airport. It arrives in Luxor at about 10. The exhibition starts at 12 and ends at 5. **4** ..... that, we are taking a plane to get back to Cairo. It leaves at 7 from Luxor Airport.

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Elephants are the largest land animals. Whales are the largest sea animals. The shape of an elephant's head is similar to that of a whale. Elephants are excellent swimmers. Like whales, elephants use sounds to show anger or for communication. Female elephants behave like female whales.

Elephants' trunk is not just a large nose or upper lip. It is very important. It can do many very important jobs. The trunk is also used as if it is a kind of hand. At the end of the trunk are two muscles shaped like fingers. These muscles can pick up food



and water and carry them to the elephant's mouth. If an elephant's trunk is seriously injured, the elephant may die. Without its trunk, the elephant has great difficulty getting enough to eat.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
☐ a sea animals are dangerous  
☐ b showing the similarity between elephants, and whales  
☐ c describing whales  
☐ d describing elephants
- At the end of the trunk there are two muscles shaped like .....  
☐ a toes                      ☐ b noses                      ☐ c fingers                      ☐ d foots
- If an elephants' trunk is injured, he can't .....  
☐ a walk                      ☐ b run                      ☐ c swim                      ☐ d eat

**B. Answer the following questions :**

- What are the largest sea animals?  
 -----
- In what way are elephants similar to whales?  
 -----
- Why is an elephant's trunk important?  
 -----

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- A ..... is a book or text about someone's life.  
☐ a bubble                      ☐ b pandemic                      ☐ c biography                      ☐ d competition
- "Lucky" and "....." are synonyms.  
☐ a unlucky                      ☐ b famous                      ☐ c rich                      ☐ d fortunate
- "The flowers were colourful and the scenery was wonderful." In this sentence, "colourful" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a coloured                      ☐ b colourless                      ☐ c bright                      ☐ d shiny
- The word "work" can be changed into a noun by adding the suffix ".....".  
☐ a -ness                      ☐ b -er                      ☐ c -ence                      ☐ d -ly





## Final Revision

5. The prefix “\_\_\_\_\_” can be added to the word “word” to get a noun with a new meaning.

**a** dis-

**b** hand-

**c** pass-

**d** micro-

6. When I meet Mr Hossam, I always say hello to him. This means I always \_\_\_\_\_ him.

**a** leave

**b** greet

**c** decorate

**d** charge

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Muhammad is going to \_\_\_\_\_ (travelling) to New York next month.

2. I have \_\_\_\_\_ (yet) cleaned my room.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ (Does) you meet a friend yesterday?

4. How \_\_\_\_\_ (often) has Ali been a doctor?

5. I have many lessons \_\_\_\_\_ (on) school today.

## D Writing

### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A biography of an important person

Handwriting practice lines for the writing task.



## Test (15)

## A Language Functions

## 1 Complete the following dialogue

Soha and Maged are buying a new mobile for Maged.

**Soha** : Let's go into this mobile phones shop.

**Maged** : OK. There are a lot of different ones.

**Soha** : Do you like this one, Maged?

**Maged** : ① \_\_\_\_\_, but it is expensive.

**Soha** : ② \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Maged** : I have only 3000 pounds.

**Soha** : ③ \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Maged** : It's cheaper, but ④ \_\_\_\_\_.

**Soha** : Oh! You want a bigger one.

**Maged** : ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_.

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sailing - like - holidays - relax - likes - selling

We all like going on ① \_\_\_\_\_. After a long time of hard work, people all over the world like spending their holidays on beaches. They ② \_\_\_\_\_ the sunny weather. Visiting the sea makes them enjoy snorkelling and diving. People can do other water sports. They can go ③ \_\_\_\_\_ or go fishing. Holidays are our best way to ④ \_\_\_\_\_.

## 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

There is a very dangerous problem that faces the world today. This very dangerous problem is pollution. This problem has appeared recently because of the increasing gases and smoke. When these dangerous gases and smoke get into the air, they cause the temperature to increase.

There are many dangers of pollution. First, the level of temperature is high, which makes the weather very hot for a very long time. Second, such dangerous gases and smoke pollute the air and cause so many diseases. We must try to solve this problem





## Final Revision

by many ways. First, by reducing the use of chemicals in farming. Next, by using environmental friendly machines. Third, we must reduce the number of factories that use such old machines.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
☐ a talking about diseases  
☐ b showing the dangers of pollution  
☐ c talking about gases and smoke  
☐ d helping the environment
- We must use ..... machines to stop pollution.  
☐ a old                      ☐ b ancient                      ☐ c modern                      ☐ d bad
- Harmful ..... get into the air.  
☐ a gases                      ☐ b liquids                      ☐ c people                      ☐ d waste

### B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined word "**they**" refer to?

.....

5. Why is pollution dangerous?

.....

6. Is pollution a modern problem or an ancient one?

.....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An ..... is someone who watches a sport or an event.  
☐ a spectator                      ☐ b campaigner                      ☐ c organiser                      ☐ d role model
- "The company is trying to improve customer care." In this sentence, the word "customer" can be replaced by .....  
☐ a seller                      ☐ b buyer                      ☐ c assistant                      ☐ d worker
- "Sell" and "....." are antonyms.  
☐ a leave                      ☐ b sign                      ☐ c advise                      ☐ d buy
- We can use the suffix "....." to change the word "wood" into an adjective.  
☐ a -ly                      ☐ b -ment                      ☐ c -en                      ☐ d -er



5. The word “wave” can be changed into a new noun by adding the prefix “\_\_\_\_\_”.

- a** im-      **b** un-      **c** micro-      **d** aqua-

6. The walls of the city were full with pictures that people paint. This means there was a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on the walls.

- a** medicine      **b** milk      **c** water      **d** graffiti

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think Mohamed Salah will \_\_\_\_\_ (scoring) next match.
2. The new film is \_\_\_\_\_ (amazed). I watched it many times.
3. I failed the exam. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) to study well.
4. I always get up \_\_\_\_\_ (in) 7 am.
5. I travelled to Aswan many years \_\_\_\_\_ (since).

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

a short story you've just read







## Test (16)

**A** Language Functions**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Nahla is talking to Emad about online shopping.

**Nahla** : Hello! Emad. Where're you going?

**Emad** : Hello! Nahla. **1** .....

**Nahla** : **2** ..... ?

**Emad** : I want to buy a T-shirt.

**Nahla** : **3** ..... ? It's easier.

**Emad** : I know, but the last time they delivered the wrong size.

**Nahla** : What did you do, then?

**Emad** : **4** .....

**Nahla** : Did they send the right one?

**Emad** : **5** .....

**B** Reading Comprehension**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

interested - married - interesting - rule - excellent - role

My father is a teacher of English. He always says that his job is very **1** ..... He enjoys dealing with his students. They all love him so much. They say he is an **2** ..... teacher. My father started his job before he got **3** ..... I'd like to be a teacher like him. He is my **4** ..... model.

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Children are very dear to us. We all work hard and do our best to make them feel happy. So we must bring them up well to be good people. Bringing up children is a very hard task. There are three stages in bringing up children. The first stage is that just after birth. This stage needs good food and good cleanliness. The second stage is that of early childhood. It is very important and hard at the same time. This second stage needs playing games and making children learn new ways of life. The third stage is that of teenage. This third stage is very dangerous and critical as it needs to be accurate in dealing with children at that time. Any mistake made in any stage means a battle lost in the future.



When children are well brought up, they will be good people that are useful to society. On the other hand, if children were neglected, many problems will appear in society later on. So we must be very careful when we bring our children up.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
☐ a bringing up children      ☐ b working hard  
☐ c teaching children      ☐ d talking about teenagers
- ..... are very difficult to bring up.  
☐ a Babies      ☐ b Little      ☐ c Old      ☐ d Teenagers
- ..... bringing up causes problems in society in the future.  
☐ a Bad      ☐ b Good      ☐ c Great      ☐ d Useful

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

.....

5. What does hard work lead to?

.....

6. How many stages of bringing up children are there?

.....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- ..... is the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people.  
☐ a Cyberbullying      ☐ b Social life  
☐ c Mental health      ☐ d Understanding
- "I think we need some careful planning before we start." In this sentence, the word "careful" is similar in meaning to .....  
☐ a cautious      ☐ b careless      ☐ c helpless      ☐ d useless
- "The project aims to improve public services, especially education." In this sentence, "public" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a general      ☐ b real      ☐ c private      ☐ d local
- The word "tradition" can be changed into an adjective by adding the suffix ".....".  
☐ a -al      ☐ b -cal      ☐ c -er      ☐ d -ed





“ ”

- a** un-

**b in-**

**c** im-

**d** aqua-

**b** customer

**c** password



5

1. How \_\_\_\_\_ (many) has your uncle been abroad?

2. What time \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the film start?

3. The internet has become \_\_\_\_\_ (most) useful these days than before.

4. Most boys are \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting) in playing football.

5. They've been \_\_\_\_\_ (marrying) for 20 years.

## D

## Writing

6



## Test (17)

### A Language Functions

#### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mr Ahmed is introducing Kareem who is helping poor people.

**Mr Ahmed:** Good morning, class I want to introduce a hero to you.

**Kareem :** Good morning. ① .....

**Mr Ahmed:** ② ..... ?

**Kareem :** I started a charity to give clothes to poor people.

**Mr Ahmed:** ③ ..... ?

**Kareem :** I used the social networking to invite everyone to share.

**Mr Ahmed:** How do you feel about it?

**Kareem :** ④ .....

**Mr Ahmed:** What do you advise your friends to do?

**Kareem :** ⑤ .....

### B Reading Comprehension

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**Teenagers - meet - Friends - embarrassed - can - meeting**

Teenagers ① ..... face a lot of problems. They usually get worried about their exams. They feel ② ..... about failing an exam. They don't want to disappoint their parents. They find it difficult to study some subjects. They are usually worried about doing a lot of homework. ③ ..... should know how to cope with their problems. They should try to ④ ..... up with each other.

#### 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My grandmother says that I am very lucky to have so many useful devices that make life easy. When she was a teenager, there was no digital technology. She didn't have a mobile phone. She used a landline to call her friends. Now, she has a smartphone so she can make calls and send texts. There was no internet, so she couldn't go online or send emails. She had to send everything by the post office. When she sent letters to her cousins in England, the letters took a long time to arrive. Recently, she bought a laptop and uses the internet to communicate





with her family and friends overseas. She says it's amazing that she can **click** "Send" and her mail can go anywhere in the world. She checks her email every day. She's a very modern woman!

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
☐ a Technology in our life    ☐ b sending emails    ☐ c old people    ☐ d mobile phones
- The underlined word "**click**" means .....  
☐ a meet    ☐ b recharge    ☐ c disconnect    ☐ d select
- The writer's grandmother seems to be ..... with modern technology.  
☐ a pleased    ☐ b dissatisfied    ☐ c angry    ☐ d bored

## B. Answer the following questions :

- Why did grandmother have to send letters by the post office?  
 .....
- How did the writer's grandmother use to call her friends in the past?  
 .....
- Do you think that nowadays life became easier?  
 .....

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... are what you feel, such as happy, upset, etc.  
☐ a Mindfulness    ☐ b Abilities    ☐ c Interests    ☐ d Feelings
- "Free" and "....." are synonyms.  
☐ a ugly    ☐ b beautiful    ☐ c difficult    ☐ d unpaid
- "The project wants to encourage young people to start their own projects." In this sentence, "encourage" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a support    ☐ b help    ☐ c remove    ☐ d discourage
- We can use the suffix "....." to change the word "sell" into a noun.  
☐ a -ly    ☐ b -ment    ☐ c -ness    ☐ d -er
- The word "well" can be changed into a new word by adding the prefix ".....".  
☐ a im-    ☐ b un-    ☐ c dis-    ☐ d micro-
- The customer wasn't unhappy about the service in the restaurant. This means that the customer had a/an .....  
☐ a delivery    ☐ b complaint    ☐ c order    ☐ d competition



**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ (never) won a race before?
2. We had a wonderful holiday \_\_\_\_\_ (on) 2020.
3. I found this question \_\_\_\_\_ (more) difficult one.
4. Hana \_\_\_\_\_ (gets) married. Everything has been arranged.
5. **A:** Has she done her homework \_\_\_\_\_ (just)? **B:** No, not yet.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A review about a project in your community





## Test (18)

**A** Language Functions**1** Finish the following dialogue:

Mona is talking to her teacher about a problem.

**Mona** : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions?

**Teacher** : Certainly. **1** ..... ?

**Mona** : I want to help people who don't have enough food.

**Teacher** : **2** .....

**Mona** : **3** ..... ?

**Teacher** : You can use posters so people will donate.

**Mona** : What else can I do?

**Teacher** : **4** .....

**Mona** : Can you help me?

**Teacher** : **5** .....

**B** Reading Comprehension**2** Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

smartphones - must - headmaster - rules - uniform - mustn't

There are many **1** ..... in my school! We mustn't listen to music. We **2** ..... run in the corridors. We mustn't eat in the classroom. We mustn't take our **3** ..... to school. We must arrive at school on time. We must wear a **4** ..... We must listen to our teachers. We must be polite. We must do our homework.

**3** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The form of money used by a country is called currency. The currency is used for two purposes either to buy goods or to get a service. The most common two types of currencies are the note or paper money and the coin which is used when it includes very few units of money. In Egypt, we use the Egyptian pound. In Saudia Arabia, they use the Saudy Rial (S/R). In America, they use the American dollar. In Japan, they use the Yen. In France, they use the Franc. In the United Arab Emirates, they use the Derhm. In Iraq, they use the Derhm. In Germany, they use the Franc.



There are other forms of money in the shape of cheques or bills. They are formal documents that are equal to money and that can be exchanged for money from banks. Money is very useful in our life.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
☐ a the forms of money                      ☐ b buying and selling  
☐ c wasting money                              ☐ d saving money
- In Egypt, we use the .....  
☐ a pound                      ☐ b rial                      ☐ c dollar                      ☐ d derham
- The ..... is the form of money that is made of metal.  
☐ a paper                      ☐ b coin                      ☐ c currency                      ☐ d bill

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

.....

5. How many countries are mentioned in the passage?

.....

6. What do we use currency for?

.....

**C Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- To ..... is to help and encourage someone.  
☐ a joke                      ☐ b include                      ☐ c support                      ☐ d breathe
- "Planting trees is good for the environment." In this sentence, the phrase "good for the environment" can be replaced by .....  
☐ a useful                      ☐ b polluting                      ☐ c useless                      ☐ d boring
- "They're doing exercise to improve their fitness." In this sentence, "improve" is an antonym of .....  
☐ a manage                      ☐ b develop                      ☐ c weaken                      ☐ d mend
- The adjective "sudden" can be changed into an adverb by adding the suffix ".....".  
☐ a -ness                      ☐ b -er                      ☐ c -ence                      ☐ d -ly





## Final Revision

5. The prefix “\_\_\_\_\_” can be added to the word “agree” to get a new meaning.

**a** im-

**b** un-

**c** dis-

**d** aqua-

6. The people who live in the room next to yours are kind. This means that the \_\_\_\_\_ who live in the room next to yours are kind.

**a** workers

**b** lodgers

**c** supporters

**d** fans

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ (never) seen a lion?

2. We've decided that we \_\_\_\_\_ (going) to buy a house.

3. I usually do exercise \_\_\_\_\_ (on) the sports centre.

4. **A:** Can we smoke here?

**B:** No, you \_\_\_\_\_ (must) smoke here.

5. I had to \_\_\_\_\_ (getting) up early. I've missed the bus.

## D Writing

### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A review about facilities in your town

Handwriting practice lines for the writing task.



## Test (19)

الأزهر الشريف

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

- Tarek** : Hello! Omar. What are you doing these days?
- Omar** : Hello! Tarek. ① .....
- Tarek** : Great! What are you doing in this charity?
- Omar** : ② ..... disabled people.
- Tarek** : Really! ③ ..... ?
- Omar** : Sure. You can join us.
- Tarek** : Thank you. It's great work.

## 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

- 1- Your friend asks you how long you have enjoyed your favourite hobby.  
.....
- 2- You ask a friend which musical instrument she has played.  
.....

## B Usage

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I plan to get a perfect body, so I often go to the ..... centre.  
☐ a shopping      ☐ b computer      ☐ c mobile      ☐ d sports
2. The tourists were amazed to see the gold and silver ..... at the museum.  
☐ a paper      ☐ b plastic      ☐ c jewellery      ☐ d rock
3. The train to Tanta ..... tomorrow at 11: 30 a.m.  
☐ a leaves      ☐ b leaving      ☐ c left      ☐ d is left
4. Judy sometimes goes shopping ..... Friday mornings.  
☐ a at      ☐ b on      ☐ c from      ☐ d in
5. Ali finished his study, he ..... off the lights and went to sleep.  
☐ a changed      ☐ b charged      ☐ c tricked      ☐ d turned



**C Reading Comprehension**

**4** Read the passage, then answer the questions:

We live in the age of the computer. Computers are used in all fields of life. They are used in scientific and practical fields to give exact quick results for operations that used to take a long time to be done.

Beginning with your electronic watch and your personal calculator and ending with the rockets, life has become much easier than before. These inventions help us live a comfortable life and make our houses and cities better places to live in. What's more, travelling from one place to another has become enjoyable and comfortable.

The radio, the television and the internet have connected the world and made it a small village. Modern inventions save time, effort and money to make life easier, more comfortable and enjoyable. No one knows what may happen afterwards.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- Why are computers useful?

2- How has the world become a small village?

3- How has travelling from one place to another changed?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4- Computers are ..... used in modern life.

**a** rarely

**b** not

**c** no longer

**d** widely

5- Life has become much easier than before because of using .....

**a** modern inventions

**b** many fields

**c** operations

**d** practical fields

**D Writing**

**5** Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

Your favourite hobby



## Test (20)

الأزهر الشريف

## A Language Functions

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Amal : Where are you going, Huda?

Huda : ① .....

Amal : ② ..... ?

Huda : I'll buy a new dress.

Amal : Do you have a special occasion.

Huda : ③ .....

Amal : Really! Happy birthday to you.

Huda : Thanks.

## 2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Your friend doesn't keep another friend's secret.

.....

2- Your brother has a problem. What do you say?

.....

## B Usage

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm ..... now than I was yesterday.

a good

b better

c best

d as good

2. .... of the four boys played on the beach.

a None

b Neither

c Either

d Both

3. The school is in a peaceful .....

a factory

b library

c laboratory

d neighbourhood

4. Scientists really ..... a great difference to our life.

a build

b do

c make

d hurt

5. Mr Hossam always ..... us to use our minds to do sums.

a encourages

b writes

c types

d hurts



**C Reading Comprehension****4** Read the passage, then answer the questions:

Pollution is a very dangerous problem. It makes us unable to breathe well. Every day it gets worse. There are many causes of pollution. Smoke that comes out of buses, trains and other kinds of vehicles and fumes that come out of factories cause pollution.

We should try to solve this problem by many ways. For example, cars should use modern engines that don't send out harmful gases or smoke. Next, we must use environment friendly machines that use gases and fumes that don't harm the environment. Finally, more trees and plants must be grown to give us more clean oxygen and help us breathe well. It is the duty of both people and the government to try to stop all causes of pollution.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. What are the causes of pollution?

.....

2. Why is pollution dangerous?

.....

3. How can we face pollution?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Pollution is a ..... problem.

**a** easy

**b** simple

**c** big

**d** small

5. Fumes come from .....

**a** factories

**b** cars

**c** trees

**d** a and b are correct

**D Writing****5** Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

Helping the community

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....